

University of Mississippi

eGrove

Industry Guides (AAGs), Risk Alerts, and
Checklists

American Institute of Certified Public
Accountants (AICPA) Historical Collection

5-1-2013

Construction contractors, May 1, 2013; Audit and accounting guide

American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA)

Follow this and additional works at: https://egrove.olemiss.edu/aicpa_indev



Part of the [Accounting Commons](#)



**Construction
Contractors**



AAGCON13P

Construction Contractors

May 1, 2013



AUDIT & ACCOUNTING GUIDE

Construction Contractors

MAY 1, 2013



AICPA American Institute of CPAs®

aicpa.org | cpa2biz.com

AICPA®

AUDIT & ACCOUNTING GUIDE

Construction Contractors

MAY 1, 2013

12847-359

AICPA[®]

Copyright © 2013 by
American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, Inc.
New York, NY 10036-8775

All rights reserved. For information about the procedure for requesting permission to make copies of any part of this work, please e-mail copyright@aicpa.org with your request. Otherwise, requests should be written and mailed to the Permissions Department, AICPA, 220 Leigh Farm Road, Durham, NC 27707-8110.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 AAP 1 9 8 7 6 5 4 3

ISBN 978-1-93735-274-5

Preface

This Audit and Accounting Guide presents recommendations of the AICPA Construction Contractors Guide Committee on the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) to audits of financial statements of construction contractors. This guide also presents the committee's recommendations on, and descriptions of, financial accounting and reporting principles and practice for construction contractors.

About AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides

This AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide has been developed by the AICPA Construction Contractors Guide Committee to assist management in the preparation of their financial statements in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) and to assist practitioners in performing and reporting on their audit engagements.

The Financial Reporting Executive Committee (FinREC) is the designated senior committee of the AICPA authorized to speak for the AICPA in the areas of financial accounting and reporting. Conforming changes made to the financial accounting and reporting guidance contained in this guide are approved by the FinREC Chair (or his or her designee).

This guide does the following:

- Identifies certain requirements set forth in the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification*[™] (ASC).
- Describes FinREC's understanding of prevalent or sole industry practice concerning certain issues. In addition, this guide may indicate that FinREC expresses a preference for the prevalent or sole industry practice, or it may indicate that FinREC expresses a preference for another practice that is not the prevalent or sole industry practice; alternatively, FinREC may express no view on the matter.
- Identifies certain other, but not necessarily all, industry practices concerning certain accounting issues without expressing FinREC's views on them.
- Provides guidance that has been supported by FinREC on the accounting, reporting, or disclosure treatment of transactions or events that are not set forth in FASB ASC.

Accounting guidance for nongovernmental entities included in an AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide is a source of nonauthoritative accounting guidance. As discussed later in this preface, FASB ASC is the authoritative source of U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). Accounting guidance for governmental entities included in an AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide is a source of authoritative accounting guidance described in category b of the hierarchy of GAAP for state and local governmental entities and has been cleared by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board. AICPA members should be prepared to justify departures from GAAP as

discussed in Rule 203, *Accounting Principles* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 203 par. .01).

Auditing guidance included in an AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide is recognized as an interpretive publication pursuant to AU-C section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). Interpretive publications are recommendations on the application of GAAS in specific circumstances, including engagements for entities in specialized industries. An interpretive publication is issued under the authority of the Auditing Standards Board (ASB) after all ASB members have been provided an opportunity to consider and comment on whether the proposed interpretive publication is consistent with GAAS. The members of the ASB have found the auditing guidance in this guide to be consistent with existing GAAS.

Although interpretive publications are not auditing standards, AU-C section 200 requires the auditor to consider applicable interpretive publications in planning and performing the audit because interpretive publications are relevant to the proper application of GAAS in specific circumstances. If the auditor does not apply the auditing guidance in an applicable interpretive publication, the auditor should document how the requirements of GAAS were complied with in the circumstances addressed by such auditing guidance.

The ASB is the designated senior committee of the AICPA authorized to speak for the AICPA on all matters related to auditing. Conforming changes made to the auditing guidance contained in this guide are approved by the ASB Chair (or his or her designee) and the Director of the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards Staff. Updates made to the auditing guidance in this guide exceeding that of conforming changes are issued after all ASB members have been provided an opportunity to consider and comment on whether the guide is consistent with the Statements on Auditing Standards (SASs).

Attestation guidance included in an AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide is recognized as an attestation interpretation as defined in AT section 50, *SSAE Hierarchy* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). Attestation interpretations are recommendations on the application of Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAEs) in specific circumstances, including engagements for entities in specialized industries. Attestation interpretations are issued under the authority of the ASB. The members of the ASB have found the attestation guidance in this guide to be consistent with existing SSAEs.

A practitioner should be aware of and consider attestation interpretations applicable to his or her attestation engagement. If the practitioner does not apply the guidance included in an applicable AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide, the practitioner should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the SSAE provisions addressed by such attestation guidance.

The ASB is the designated senior committee of the AICPA authorized to speak for the AICPA on all matters related to attestation. Conforming changes made to the attestation guidance contained in this guide are approved by the ASB Chair (or his or her designee) and the Director of the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards Staff. Updates made to the attestation guidance in this guide exceeding that of conforming changes are issued after all ASB members have been provided an opportunity to consider and comment on whether the guide is consistent with the SSAEs.

Purpose and Applicability

Limitations

This guide does not discuss the application of all GAAP, GAAS, or Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB) standards that are relevant to the preparation and audit of financial statements of construction contractors. This guide is directed primarily to those aspects of the preparation and audit of financial statements that are unique to construction contractors or those aspects that are considered particularly significant to them.

Recognition

AICPA Senior Committees

Auditing Standards Board

Kim L. Tredinnick
Bruce Webb, *Chair*

Financial Reporting Executive Committee

Rich Paul, *Chair*

AICPA Staff

Dave Arman
Senior Technical Manager
Accounting and Auditing Publications

The AICPA gratefully acknowledges those who reviewed and otherwise contributed to the development of this guide: Kevin Cole, Michael Feinstein, Timothy Landry, Robert Mercado, James Miller, Joseph Natarelli, Don Pfulger, Bret Rutter, Robert Schroell, Anthony Scillia, and Paul Tucci.

Guidance Considered in This Edition

This edition of the guide has been modified by the AICPA staff to include certain changes necessary due to the issuance of authoritative guidance since the guide was originally issued and other revisions deemed appropriate. Authoritative guidance issued through May 1, 2013, has been considered in the development of this edition of the guide.

Authoritative guidance that is issued and effective for entities with fiscal years ending on or before May 1, 2012, is incorporated directly into the text of this guide. Authoritative guidance issued but not yet effective for fiscal years ending on or before May 1, 2012 is being presented as a guidance update. A guidance update is a shaded area that contains information on the guidance issued but not yet effective and a reference to appendix A, "Guidance Updates," where appropriate. The distinct presentation of this content is intended to aid the reader in differentiating content that may not be effective for the reader's purposes.

This includes relevant guidance issued up to and including the following:

- FASB Accounting Standards Update No. 2013-07, *Presentation of Financial Services (Topic 205): Liquidation Basis of Accounting*

- SAS No. 127, *Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—2013* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*)
- AU-C section 9265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit: Auditing Interpretations of Section 265* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*)
- Statement of Position 13-1, *Attest Engagements on Greenhouse Gas Emissions Information* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, AUD sec. 14,460)
- SSAE No. 17, *Reporting on Compiled Prospective Financial Statements When the Practitioner's Independence Is Impaired* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, AT sec. 301 par. .23)
- Interpretation No. 8, "Including a Description of Tests of Controls and Other Procedures, and the Results Thereof, in an Examination Report," of AT section 101, *Attest Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, AT sec. 9101 par. .70–.72)

Users of this guide should consider guidance issued subsequent to those items listed previously to determine their effect on entities covered by this guide. In determining the applicability of recently issued guidance, its effective date should also be considered.

The changes made to this edition of the guide are identified in appendix M, "Schedule of Changes Made to the Text From the Previous Edition." The changes do not include all those that might be considered necessary if the guide were subjected to a comprehensive review and revision.

Defining Professional Responsibilities in AICPA Professional Standards

AICPA professional standards applicable to audit engagements use the following two categories of professional requirements, identified by specific terms, to describe the degree of responsibility they impose on auditors:

- *Unconditional requirements.* The auditor must comply with an unconditional requirement in all cases in which such requirement is relevant. GAAS use the word *must* to indicate an unconditional requirement.
- *Presumptively mandatory requirements.* The auditor must comply with a presumptively mandatory requirement in all cases in which such a requirement is relevant except in rare circumstances. GAAS use the word *should* to indicate a presumptively mandatory requirement.

In rare circumstances, the auditor may judge it necessary to depart from a relevant presumptively mandatory requirement. In such circumstances, the auditor should perform alternative audit procedures to achieve the intent of that requirement. The need for the auditor to depart from a relevant presumptively mandatory requirement is expected to arise only when the requirement is for a specific procedure to be performed and, in the specific circumstances of the audit, that procedure would be ineffective in achieving the intent of the requirement.

Prior to SAS No. 122, *Statements on Auditing Standards: Clarification and Recodification* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), the phrase *is required to* or

requires was used to express an unconditional requirement in GAAS (equivalent to *must*). With the issuance of SAS No. 122, the phrases *is required to* and *requires* do not convey a requirement or the degree of responsibility it imposes on auditors. Instead those terms are used to express that a requirement exists. The terms are typically used in the clarified auditing standards to indicate that a requirement exists elsewhere in GAAS.

Applicability of U.S. Generally Accepted Auditing Standards and PCAOB Standards

Audits of the financial statements of *nonissuers* (those entities not subject to the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 or the rules of the SEC—that is, private entities, generally speaking) are conducted in accordance with GAAS as issued by the ASB, the designated senior committee of the AICPA with the authority to promulgate auditing standards for nonissuers. The ASB develops and issues standards in the form of SASs through a due process that includes deliberation in meetings open to the public, public exposure of proposed SASs, and a formal vote. The SASs and their related interpretations are codified in the AICPA's *Professional Standards*. Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 202 par. .01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct requires an AICPA member who performs an audit to comply with the standards promulgated by the ASB. Failure to follow GAAS and any other applicable auditing standards is a violation of that rule.

Audits of the financial statements of *issuers*, as defined by the SEC (those entities subject to the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 or the rules of the SEC—that is, public entities, generally speaking), are conducted in accordance with standards established by the PCAOB, a private sector, nonprofit corporation created by the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 to oversee the audits of issuers. The SEC has oversight authority over the PCAOB, including the approval of its rules, standards, and budget.

References to Professional Standards

In citing GAAS and their related interpretations, references use section numbers within the codification of currently effective SASs and not the original statement number, as appropriate.

AICPA.org Website

The AICPA encourages you to visit the website at www.aicpa.org and the new Financial Reporting Center at www.aicpa.org/FRC. The Financial Reporting Center supports members in the execution of high-quality financial reporting. Whether you are a financial statement preparer or a member in public practice, this center provides exclusive member-only resources for the entire financial reporting process, and provides timely and relevant news, guidance and examples supporting the financial reporting process, including accounting, preparing financial statements and performing compilation, review, audit, attest or assurance and advisory engagements. Certain content on the AICPA's websites referenced in this guide may be restricted to AICPA members only.

Select Recent Developments Significant to This Guide

ASB's Clarity Project

To address concerns over the clarity, length, and complexity of its standards, the ASB has made a significant effort to clarify the SASs. The ASB established clarity drafting conventions and undertook to redraft all of its SASs in accordance with those conventions, which include the following:

- Establishing objectives for each clarified SAS
- Including a definitions section, where relevant, in each clarified SAS
- Separating requirements from application and other explanatory material
- Numbering application and other explanatory material paragraphs using an A- prefix and presenting them in a separate section that follows the requirements section
- Using formatting techniques, such as bulleted lists, to enhance readability
- Including, when appropriate, special considerations relevant to audits of smaller, less complex entities within the text of the clarified SAS
- Including, when appropriate, special considerations relevant to audits of governmental entities within the text of the clarified SAS

In addition, as the ASB redrafted standards for clarity, it also converged the standards with the International Standards on Auditing (ISAs), issued by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board. As part of redrafting the standards, they now specify more clearly the objectives of the auditor and the requirements which the auditor has to comply with when conducting an audit in accordance with GAAS.

With the release of SAS Nos. 117–120 and Nos. 122–127, the project is near completion. As of the date of this guide, the only SAS remaining to be clarified is SAS No. 65, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, AU-C sec. 610).

Note that SAS No. 122 withdraws SAS No. 26, *Association With Financial Statements*, as amended, from *Professional Standards*.

SAS Nos. 122–127 are effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012. Refer to individual AU-C sections for specific effective date language.

As part of the clarity project, current AU section numbers have been renumbered based on equivalent ISAs. Guidance is located in "AU-C" section numbers instead of "AU" section numbers. "AU-C" is a temporary identifier to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which will remain in *Professional Standards* through 2013. The "AU-C" identifier will revert to "AU" in 2014, by which time substantially all engagement for which the extant standards were still effective are expected to be completed. Note that AU-C section numbers for clarified SASs with no equivalent ISAs have been assigned new

numbers. The ASB believes that this recodification structure will aid firms and practitioners that use both ISAs and GAAS.

All auditing interpretations corresponding to a SAS have been considered in the development of a clarified SAS and incorporated accordingly, and have been withdrawn by the ASB except for certain interpretations that the ASB has retained and revised to reflect the issuance of SAS No. 122. The effective date of the revised interpretations aligns with the effective date of the corresponding clarified SAS.

International Financial Reporting Standards

The AICPA governing council voted in May 2008 to recognize the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) as an accounting body for purposes of establishing international financial accounting and reporting principles. This amendment to appendix A of Rule 202 and Rule 203 of the AICPA's Code of Professional Conduct gives AICPA members the option to use International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) as an alternative to U.S. GAAP. As a result, private entities in the United States can prepare their financial statements in accordance with U.S. GAAP as promulgated by FASB; a special purpose framework (such as an other comprehensive basis of accounting); or IFRS, among others. However, domestic issuers are currently required to follow U.S. GAAP and rules and regulations of the SEC. In contrast, foreign private issuers may present their financial statements in accordance with IFRS as issued by the IASB without a reconciliation to U.S. GAAP, or in accordance with non-IFRS home-country GAAP reconciled to U.S. GAAP as permitted by Form 20-F.

The growing acceptance of IFRSs as a basis for U.S. financial reporting could represent a fundamental change for the U.S. accounting profession. Acceptance of a single set of high-quality accounting standards for worldwide use by public companies has been gaining momentum around the globe for the past few years. See appendix K, "International Financial Reporting Standards," for a discerning look at the status of convergence with IFRS in the United States and the important issues that accounting professionals need to consider now.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter		Paragraph
1	Industry Background	.01-.52
	Nature and Significance of the Industry .....	.02-.05
	Features of the Business Environment .....	.06-.37
	Characteristics Common to Contractors .....	.07-.08
	Types of Contracts .....	.09-.10
	Contract Modifications and Changes .....	.11-.12
	Bonding and the Surety Underwriting Process .....	.13-.19
	Project Ownership and Rights of Lien .....	.20-.21
	Financing Considerations .....	.22-.30
	Joint Ventures .....	.31-.34
	Reporting for Financial and Income Tax Purposes .....	.35-.37
	Typical Industry Operations .....	.38-.50
	Preparing Cost Estimates and Bids .....	.39-.45
	Entering Into the Contract .....	.46
	Planning and Initiating the Project .....	.47-.50
	Variations in Size and Methods of Operation .....	.51
	Project Management .....	.52
2	Accounting for Performance of Construction-Type Contracts	.01-.31
	Basic Accounting Policy for Contracts .....	.03-.08
	Percentage-of-Completion Method .....	.04-.06
	Completed-Contract Method .....	.07-.08
	Determining the Profit Center .....	.09
	Measuring the Extent of Progress Toward Completion .....	.10-.11
	Income Determination—Revenue .....	.12-.16
	Impact of Change Orders on Revenue .....	.13-.14
	Impact of Claims on Revenue .....	.15-.16
	Income Determination—Cost Elements .....	.17-.23
	Accounting for Contract Costs .....	.18
	Cost Attributable to Claims .....	.19
	Precontract Costs .....	.20
	Cost Adjustments for Back Charges .....	.21-.22
	Estimated Cost to Complete .....	.23
	Computation of Earned Income .....	.24
	Revised Estimates .....	.25
	Provisions for Anticipated Losses on Contracts .....	.26
	Selecting a Measure of Extent of Progress .....	.27
	Costs of Equipment and Small Tools .....	.28-.31

Chapter		Paragraph
3	Accounting for and Reporting Investments in Construction	
	Joint Ventures	.01-.49
	Joint Venture Accounting	.03-.44
	Accounting Methods	.03-.07
	Capital Contributions to Joint Ventures and Initial	
	Measurement of Investments in Joint Ventures	.08-.15
	Sales to a Venture	.16-.19
	Subsequent Measurement and Presentation of Investments	
	in Joint Ventures	.20-.44
	Determining Venturers' Percentage Ownership	.45
	Conforming the Accounting Principles of the Venture	.46
	Losses in Excess of a Venturer's Investment, Loans,	
	and Advances	.47
	Disclosures in a Venturer's Financial Statements	.48-.49
4	Financial Reporting by Affiliated Entities	.01-.12
	Combined Financial Statements	.05-.07
	Presentation of Separate Financial Statements of Members of	
	an Affiliated Group	.08-.11
	Presentation of Separate Financial Statements of Members of	
	an Affiliated Group That Constitute an Economic Unit	.12
5	Other Accounting Considerations	.01-.71
	Fair Value Measurements	.02-.31
	Definition of <i>Fair Value</i>	.04-.11
	Valuation Techniques	.12-.14
	Present Value Techniques	.15-.17
	The Fair Value Hierarchy	.18-.21
	Additional Guidance For Fair Value Measurement in	
	Special Circumstances	.22-.26
	Disclosures	.27
	Fair Value Option	.28-.31
	Impairment of Long-Lived Assets	.32-.49
	Property, Plant, and Equipment	.32-.37
	Intangibles—Goodwill	.38-.46
	Intangibles—Other	.47-.49
	Asset Retirement Obligations	.50-.56
	Mandatorily Redeemable Stock	.57-.59
	Differences Between Financial Accounting and Income Tax	
	Accounting	.60-.67
	Accounting Methods Acceptable for Income Tax Purposes	.68-.71
	Cash Method	.69-.70
	Accrual Method	.71

Chapter		Paragraph
6	Financial Statement Presentation	.01-.51
	Balance Sheet Classification .....	.01-.05
	Guidelines for Classified Balance Sheets .....	.06-.18
	General Guidance .....	.07-.11
	Retentions Receivable and Payable .....	.12-.13
	Investments in Construction Joint Ventures .....	.14
	Equipment .....	.15
	Liabilities .....	.16
	Excess Billings .....	.17
	Deferred Income Taxes .....	.18
	Offsetting or Netting Amounts .....	.19-.24
	Disclosures in Financial Statements .....	.25-.35
	Significant Accounting Policies .....	.26
	Revised Estimates .....	.27
	Backlog on Existing Contracts .....	.28
	Receivables .....	.29-.35
	Accounting by Creditors for Impairment of a Loan .....	.36-.37
	Disclosures of Certain Significant Risks and Uncertainties .....	.38-.39
	Accounting for Weather Derivatives .....	.40
	Disclosures of Multiemployer Pension Plans .....	.41-.51
	Multiemployer Plans That Provide Pension Benefits .....	.42-.49
	Multiemployer Plans That Provide Postretirement Benefits Other Than Pensions .....	.50
	Sample Disclosure for Plans That Provide Pension Benefits .....	.51
7	Auditing Within the Construction Industry	.01-.08
	Audit Focus .....	.02-.07
	Scope of Auditing Guidance Included in This Guide .....	.08
8	Controls in the Construction Industry	.01-.29
	Estimating and Bidding .....	.04-.07
	Project Administration and Contract Evaluation .....	.08-.10
	Job Site Accounting and Controls .....	.11-.14
	Billing Procedures .....	.15-.18
	Contract Costs .....	.19-.21
	Contract Revenues .....	.22-.23
	Construction Equipment .....	.24-.25
	Claims, Extras, and Back Charges .....	.26
	Joint Ventures .....	.27
	Internal Audit Function .....	.28-.29

Chapter		Paragraph
9	Planning the Audit, Assessing and Responding to Audit Risk, and Additional Auditing Considerations	.01-.101
	Scope of This Chapter	.01-.02
	Planning and Other Auditing Considerations	.03-.32
	Planning the Audit	.04-.06
	Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance	.07-.19
	Audit Risk	.20-.24
	Materiality	.25-.32
	Use of Assertions in Obtaining Audit Evidence	.33-.34
	Understanding the Entity, Its Environment, and Its Internal Control	.35-.60
	Risk Assessment Procedures	.38-.39
	Discussion Among the Audit Team	.40
	Understanding the Entity and Its Environment	.41-.43
	Understanding of Internal Control	.44-.60
	Assessment of Risks of Material Misstatement and the Design of Further Audit Procedures	.61-.83
	Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement	.62-.67
	Designing and Performing Further Audit Procedures	.68-.83
	Evaluating Misstatements	.84-.86
	Audit Documentation	.87-.96
	Identifying and Evaluating Control Deficiencies	.97-.101
10	Major Auditing Procedures for Contractors	.01-.65
	Job Site Visits and Interim Audit Procedures	.02-.07
	Accounts Receivable	.08-.26
	Unbilled Receivables	.12
	Retentions	.13-.14
	Unapproved Change Orders and Claims	.15-.18
	Contract Scope Changes	.19
	Contract Guarantees and Cancellation or Postponement Provisions	.20-.24
	Collectibility	.25-.26
	Liabilities Related to Contracts	.27-.31
	Contract Costs	.32-.38
	Costs Incurred to Date	.35
	Estimated Cost to Complete	.36-.38
	Income Recognition	.39-.59
	Evaluating the Acceptability of Income Recognition Methods	.42-.48
	The Percentage-of-Completion Method	.49-.51
	The Completed-Contract Method	.52-.53
	Combining and Segmenting	.54

Chapter		Paragraph
10	Major Auditing Procedures for Contractors—continued	
	Review of Earned Revenue .....	.55-.57
	Analysis of Gross Profit Margins .....	.58-.59
	Review of Backlog Information on Signed Contracts and Letters of Intent .....	.60-.64
	Management Representations .....	.65
11	Other Audit Considerations	.01-.30
	Affiliated Entities .....	.02-.10
	Participation in Joint Ventures .....	.03-.09
	Auditing Affiliated Entities and Related Party Transactions ...	.10
	Participation in a Group Audit .....	.11-.13
	Capitalization and Cash Flow .....	.14-.16
	Types of Auditor’s Reports on Financial Statements .....	.17
	Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole .....	.18-.24
	Auditor’s Communications Related to Internal Control Matters .....	.25
	Legal and Regulatory Considerations .....	.26-.30
	State Statutes Affecting Construction Contractors .....	.26-.27
	Governmental Prequalification Reporting .....	.28-.30
12	Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement	.01-.37
	The Importance of Exercising Professional Skepticism .....	.03
	Discussion Among Engagement Personnel Regarding the Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud .....	.04-.09
	Obtaining the Information Needed to Identify the Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud .....	.10-.13
	Considering Fraud Risk Factors .....	.12-.13
	Identifying Risks That May Result in a Material Misstatement Due to Fraud .....	.14-.23
	A Presumption That Improper Revenue Recognition Is a Fraud Risk .....	.16-.22
	Key Estimates .....	.23
	Assessing the Identified Risks After Taking Into Account an Evaluation of the Entity’s Programs and Controls That Address the Risks .....	.24
	Responding to the Results of the Assessment .....	.25-.28
	Evaluating Audit Evidence .....	.29
	Responding to Misstatements That May Be the Result of Fraud .....	.30-.33
	Communicating About Possible Fraud to Management, Those Charged With Governance, and Others .....	.34
	Documenting the Auditor’s Consideration of Fraud .....	.35-.37

Appendix

A	Guidance Updates
B	Mapping and Summarization of Changes—Clarified Auditing Standards
C	Illustrations of Segmenting Criteria
D	Computing Income Earned Under the Percentage-of-Completion Method
E	Examples of Computation of Income Earned
F	Example of Change in Accounting Estimate
G	Sample Financial Statements Percentage Contractors, Inc.
H	Sample Financial Statements Completed Contractors, Inc.
I	The Auditor’s Report
J	Reporting on Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole
K	International Financial Reporting Standards
L	Information Sources
M	Schedule of Changes Made to the Text From the Previous Edition

Glossary

Index of Pronouncements and Other Technical Guidance

Subject Index



Chapter 1

Industry Background

1.01 This chapter is intended as background for the presentation of recommendations and guidance on financial reporting and auditing in the industry. It does not contain recommendations or guidance on the technical application of generally accepted accounting or auditing standards. Recommendations and guidance on technical accounting and auditing issues are presented in the chapters that follow and include the guidance from subtopic 35, "Construction-Type and Production-Type Contracts," in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 605, Revenue Recognition*.

Nature and Significance of the Industry

1.02 The construction industry consists of individuals and entities that are engaged in diverse types of activities defined as construction in the North American Industry Classification System (NAICS). The 2012 U.S. NAICS Manual *North American Industry Classification System—United States* classifies construction establishments into a wide variety of subcategories. These subcategories include: Construction of Buildings (residential and nonresidential), Heavy and Civil Engineering Construction (including Utility System Construction, Land Subdivision, and Highway, Street and Bridge Contractors), and several different classes of Specialty Trade Contractors (such as Foundation, Structure, and Building Exterior Contractors, Building Equipment Contractors, Building Finishing Contractors, and Other Specialty Trade Contractors). Data from the Bureau of Economic Analysis indicates that construction industry is a significant factor in the U.S. economy, contributing over 3.5 percent of the gross domestic product in 2011. It represents hundreds of billions of dollars of economic activity, consists of several hundred thousand business entities widely dispersed throughout the country, and employs a large labor force.

1.03 Construction contractors may be distinguished by their size, the type of construction activity they undertake, and the nature and scope of their responsibility for a construction project. Although the construction industry also encompasses large, multinational contractors that undertake construction of billion-dollar projects, most business entities in the industry are small, local businesses whose activities are limited to a small geographical area. The large number of small entities in the industry may be attributed to the ease of entry into many phases of the construction industry and to the limited amount of capital required. The diverse types of business activities conducted by construction contractors include construction of buildings, highways, dams, and bridges; installation of machinery and equipment; dredging; and demolition. Many entities are able to meet the demands of large construction projects by combining their efforts in joint ventures.

1.04 A contractor may engage in those activities as a general contractor, a subcontractor, or a construction manager. A *general contractor* is a prime contractor who enters into a contract with the owner of a project for the construction of the project and who takes full responsibility for its completion, although he or she may enter into subcontracts with others for the performance of specific parts or phases of the project. A *subcontractor* is a second-level contractor who enters into a contract with a prime contractor or an upper-tier contractor

to perform a specific part or phase of a construction project. A subcontractor's performance responsibility is to the general contractor, with whom the subcontractor's relationship is essentially the same as that of the prime contractor to the owner of the project. A *construction manager* is a contractor who enters into an agency contract with an owner of a construction project to supervise and coordinate the construction activity on the project, including negotiating contracts with others for all the construction work.

1.05 The organizational structure, resources, and capabilities of contractors tend to vary with the type of activity. Each type of contractor can pose unique accounting and auditing problems.

Features of the Business Environment

1.06 Contractors operate in a business environment that differs in some respects from that of other types of businesses. The features of the business environment are discussed in this section in terms of characteristics common to contractors, types of contracts, bonding and surety underwriting, project ownership and rights of lien, contract changes, financing considerations, the use of joint ventures to accomplish objectives, and reporting for financial and income tax purposes.

Characteristics Common to Contractors

1.07 Although the construction industry is difficult to define because of its diversity, as explained in FASB ASC 910-10-15-3, certain characteristics are common to companies in the industry. The most basic characteristic is that work is performed under contractual arrangements with customers. A contractor, regardless of the type of construction activity or the type of contractor, typically enters into an agreement with a customer to build or to make improvements on a tangible property to the customer's specification. The contract with the customer specifies the work to be performed, specifies the basis of determining the amount and terms of payment of the contract price, and generally requires total performance before the contractor's obligation is discharged. Unlike the work of many manufacturers, the construction activities of a contractor are usually performed at job sites owned by customers, rather than at a central place of business, and each contract usually involves the production of a unique property rather than repetitive production of identical products.

1.08 As noted in FASB ASC 910-10-15-4, other characteristics common to contractors and significant to accountants and users of financial statements include the following:

- A contractor normally obtains the contracts that generate revenue or sales by bidding or negotiating for specific projects.
- A contractor bids for or negotiates the initial contract price based on an estimate of the cost to complete the project and the desired profit margin, although the initial price may be changed or renegotiated.
- A contractor may be exposed to significant risks in the performance of a contract, particularly a fixed-price contract.
- Customers (usually referred to as *owners*) frequently require a contractor to post a performance and payment bond as protection against the contractor's failure to meet performance and payment

requirements. Most governmental owners, by law, are required to have the contractor post these bonds; other owners have the option of either having the contractor post the bonds or not.

- The costs and revenues of a contractor are typically accumulated and accounted for by individual contracts or contract commitments extending beyond one accounting period, which complicates the management, accounting, and auditing processes.

Types of Contracts

1.09 The nature of a contractor's risk exposure varies with the type of contract. As identified in FASB ASC 605-35-15-4, the four basic types of contracts used in the construction industry based on their pricing arrangements are fixed-price or lump-sum contracts, cost-type (including cost-plus) contracts, time-and-materials contracts, and unit-price contracts, which are defined in the FASB ASC glossary and further described as follows:

- A *fixed-price contract*, also known as a *lump-sum contract*, provides for the contractor's performance of all work to be performed under the contract for a stated price. The stated price may be subsequently adjusted, as deemed necessary by the parties to the contract, via a *change order*, which is a written agreement between the contractor and owner to adjust the terms of the contract. This type of contract is usually the safest option for the owner, but the riskiest for the contractor.
- A *cost-type* (including a *cost-plus*) *contract* provides for reimbursement of allowable or otherwise defined costs incurred plus a fee for the contractor's services that represents profit. Usually, the contract only requires that the contractor's best efforts be used to accomplish the scope of the work within some specified time and stated dollar limitation. Cost-type contracts take a variety of forms, including *guaranteed max* contracts, which are "cost plus a fee" up to a certain maximum price contract, and are gaining popularity in practice. The contracts often contain terms specifying reimbursable costs, overhead recovery percentages, and fees. The fee may be fixed or based on a percentage of reimbursable costs. These types of projects can pose a higher risk for contractors, based on whether a cost is reimbursable or not.
- A *time-and-materials contract* is similar to a cost-plus contract and generally provides for payments to the contractor on the basis of direct labor hours at fixed hourly rates (the rates cover the costs of indirect labor and indirect expenses and profit) and cost of materials or other specified costs. This type of contract is usually the safest option for the contractor, but the riskiest for the owner. Some time-and-material contracts have provisions in the contract that convert the contracts from a time-and-material to a guaranteed maximum contract, in essence the contract becomes a fixed-price contract.
- A *unit-price contract* provides for the contractor's performance of a specific project at a specified price per each unit of output. Unit-price contracts are seldom used for an entire major construction project, but are frequently used for agreements with sub-contractors. This type of contract is commonly associated with

road building and it is not unusual to combine a unit-price contract for parts of the project with other types of contracts.

1.10 Although not specifically defined in the FASB ASC glossary, the number of *design-build contracts*, over the last two decades, has dramatically increased. Design-build contracts differ from traditional contracts because one entity works under a single contract to provide both the design of the work and the performance of the construction services. This combination of the design work and actual construction work is commonly accomplished via a joint venture, a corporation or limited-liability company comprised of two separate specialty entities.

Contract Modifications and Changes

1.11 All types of contracts may be modified by target penalties and incentives relating to factors such as completion dates, plant capacity on completion of the project, and underruns and overruns of estimated costs.

1.12 Management control of change orders, claims, extras, and back charges is of critical significance in construction activity. Modifications of the original contract frequently result from change orders that may be initiated by either the customer or the contractor. The nature of the construction industry, particularly the complexity of some types of projects, is conducive to disputes between the parties that may give rise to claims or back charges. Claims may also arise from unapproved change orders. In addition, customer representatives at a job site sometimes authorize the contractor to do work beyond contract specifications, and this gives rise to claims for extras. The ultimate profitability of a contract often depends on control, documentation, and collection of amounts arising from such items.

Bonding and the Surety Underwriting Process

1.13 Contractors bidding on or negotiating a contract may be required to make a deposit for the use of the plans and specifications for the project. Before they are allowed to submit bids, those seeking prime contracts may be required to post a bid bond or make a deposit, usually in the form of a bank-guaranteed check, equal to a percentage of the total cost estimated in the feasibility study. On virtually all public work and on some private work, bid security is usually required to provide some assurance that only qualified, responsible contractors submit bids. In the construction industry, bid bonds, as well as performance bonds and payment bonds, are provided by surety companies. A surety company makes itself jointly and severally responsible for the performance of the contractor via the execution of the bond.

1.14 A bid bond issued by a surety does not guarantee that the contractor will sign a contract or guarantee that the surety will issue a performance bond. The contractor and surety promise the owner that if the contractor who is awarded the contract does not sign the contract or cannot provide a performance bond, the surety will pay, subject to the maximum bid bond penalty, the difference between the contractor's bid and the bid of the next lowest responsible bidder. The bid bond or deposit protects the owner from bidders without the resources necessary to complete the work and gives the owner a certain amount of indemnity against the cost of rebidding or finding another contractor who can complete the work. Owners many times will use the bid bond requirement on a job to reduce the amount of bidders on a job and use the surety as a

prequalification of the contractor. A surety required to pay on a defaulted bid usually has the right of recovery against the contractor's assets.

1.15 After being awarded a contract, a contractor may be required to post payment and performance bonds, also issued by a surety. The payment and performance bond provides protection against the contractor's failure to perform the contract in accordance with its terms. The surety's obligation under the bond terminates on satisfactory completion of the work required by the contract. However, if the contractor should fail to perform in accordance with the contract, the surety is obligated to the owner for losses or to assure performance but usually has recourse against the contractor's assets.

1.16 A payment, or labor-and-materials, bond is commonly provided by sureties as a companion (or as a combined item) to the performance bond. The protection provided by a payment bond is governed by state laws, which vary widely but generally cover the contractor's labor, subcontractors, and suppliers. The Miller Act of 1935 requires general contractors on federal government projects to post payment bonds to protect suppliers of labor, materials, and supplies to those projects. This type of bond generally applies to work already performed.

1.17 In providing the various types of bonds required in the construction industry, the primary function of sureties is to prequalify the contractor. The surety examines the contracting entity to determine if it has the management, experience, equipment, and financing capability to get the job done. This due diligence, amongst other procedures, involves the surety reviewing the contractor's financial statements. As such, sureties are one of the primary users of contractors' financial statements.

1.18 If, in the judgment of the surety, the contractor can perform the contract, the surety will provide the required bonds. Similarly, the contractor may wish to evaluate the quality and capability of the surety, including the financial stability of the surety.

1.19 Surety underwriting is similar to, yet different from, insurance. Insurance involves a two-party agreement in which a premium is paid to protect an insured party from the risk of certain types of losses. In contrast, a surety bond involves a three-party agreement in which the surety and the contractor join together to provide protection against losses to a third party. Surety underwriting is also similar to extending credit. For a fee, the surety provides a guarantee to third parties that the contractor will fulfill obligations of performance and payment. Just as a banker will not knowingly make a loan without satisfying himself regarding a borrower's ability to repay the loan in accordance with its terms, a surety will not knowingly issue a surety bond without similar knowledge of the contractor's ability to meet obligations in accordance with the terms of a contract. The financial strength of the contractor is critical to the surety underwriting process.

Project Ownership and Rights of Lien

1.20 A contractor may be required to make a significant commitment of resources to a project under construction. His ability to recover his investment may be impaired by certain peculiar considerations. The project is ordinarily one of a kind and is built on the owner's site. The owner has title to the real estate as well as all improvements as the contractor provides them. The contractor acquires materials for specific projects and has no direct ownership

claims to the work in progress. Subassemblies fabricated on the contractor's premises usually have little value to him or her because of the uniqueness of the project.

1.21 As a special remedy for these conditions, the laws of most states protect providers of labor and materials, such as contractors, from the failure of the owner to pay by granting a right of lien. Under a right of lien, contractors have a claim against the real property, although that right is not necessarily senior to other claims, such as the rights of mortgage holders. Because lien rights are lost if they are not perfected within a limited time period, contractors ordinarily have an established procedure for filing claims before the expiration of those rights. Federal government property ordinarily is not subject to lien under state law, but suppliers, other than general contractors, of labor and material for such property are normally protected by payment bonds that the general contractor is required to post under the Miller Act of 1935.

Financing Considerations

1.22 The methods of financing operations in the construction industry have developed in response to the nature of the industry and the business environment in which it functions. The cost and availability of financing are affected by the risks to which contractors are susceptible. The greatest risk factor in the industry stems from the method of pricing. A contractor, unlike a businessperson in most other industries, normally must set his or her prices in the bidding or negotiating process before product costs are absolutely determined; and the prices, particularly for fixed-price contracts, are not necessarily subject to modifications solely because of changes in costs.

1.23 A contractor's greatest financing need is working capital. Term loans to support working capital needs are rare because expansion can usually be supported by working capital loans on a contract-by-contract basis. Banks and other credit grantors typically require more tangible types of security for term loans than most contractors can furnish. However, contractors use chattel loans, which may be tailored to match payments with cash receipts (such as by a waiver of payments during off-season periods), to finance equipment purchases.

1.24 In addition to a traditional line of credit, a working capital line of credit on specific contracts is another short term financing option often available to contractors. Working capital loans are usually advanced on a contract as needed to pay for materials, labor, and subcontract costs. Such loans are a necessary means of financing for most contracts because of the lag between expenditures and the receipt of cash. The credit grantor may take an assignment of the contract and the related receivables; however, a bonding company, if one is involved, has rights to the receivables that take precedence over those of other creditors, including a secured lender. Credit grantors often require that the proceeds of contracts be assigned to them and may also require that the proceeds of the loan be paid directly to suppliers as invoices are submitted.

1.25 Contractors may qualify for government-sponsored programs that support or guarantee financing for small or minority-owned businesses. The programs generally guarantee lines of credit on a contract-by-contract basis. Those programs, under which the contract proceeds are usually assigned to the creditor, are ordinarily available only to contractors that would not qualify for working capital loans from banks without some form of government guarantee.

1.26 Some contractors finance bid deposits with temporary bank loans that are usually repaid by the return of the bid check. Because a bank-guaranteed check used as a bid deposit can be forfeited if a contractor who is awarded a contract cannot obtain the required bonding or withdraws from the contract, a contractor usually obtains a commitment for the required bonding before bidding on a project.

1.27 Billing practices in the industry have evolved from the need to generate cash flows in order to finance the progress of construction projects. In contrast to manufacturing entities, whose billing practices are fairly standard, with the customer billed on shipment of the goods, billing practices in the construction industry vary widely and often are not correlated with the performance of the work. Billing arrangements are usually specified in the contract and vary with the different types of contracts used in the industry. The amount and timing of billings under contract may be based, for example, on such measures as

- completion of certain stages of the work.
- costs incurred on cost-plus contracts.
- architects' or engineers' estimates of completion.
- specified time schedules.
- quantity measures of unit price contracts, such as cubic yards excavated.

1.28 In any event, progress billings or customer advances on contracts provide a significant source of financing for most construction contractors. Most contracts, however, call for retention by the owner of a specified amount of each progress billing, often ranging from 5 percent to 10 percent, until the job reaches an agreed-upon state of completion, with a provision for a reduction thereafter. The purpose of retentions is to ensure performance of the work in accordance with acceptable quality standards or to protect the owner against the cost of obtaining another contractor if a contractor fails to complete the work.

1.29 A contractor ordinarily will try to assign a higher relative bid price to job components that he or she expects to complete early in the job. The practice of unbalanced bidding, referred to as *front-end loading*, accelerates the contractor's cash receipts on a contract and represents a significant financing strategy for many contractors.

1.30 Front-end loading and other types of unbalanced bidding are often viewed with concern by those not familiar with the industry, but they are common practices that contractors use to assist in the financing of jobs. Money management is a vital part of construction management, and unbalanced bidding is one of the key tools. Negotiation of advantageous cash payment terms at the bidding stage, and other procedures to accelerate cash collection, are significant financing considerations in the industry. However, the contractor needs to be aware that, as a result of unbalanced bidding, cash inflows at the end of the contract may be less than cash requirements. Therefore, appropriate controls and cash budgeting are an essential part of financial management. An increasing number of credit grantors are requiring contractors to furnish cash projections on contracts before they will extend credit.

Joint Ventures

1.31 According to the FASB ASC glossary, a *joint venture* is an entity owned and operated by a small group of businesses (the joint venturers) as a separate and specific business or project for the mutual benefit of the members of the group. A joint venture usually provides an arrangement under which each joint venturer may participate, directly or indirectly, in the overall management of the joint venture. Joint venturers thus have an interest or relationship other than as passive investors. The ownership of a joint venture seldom changes, and its equity interests usually are not traded publicly.

1.32 In the construction industry, ownership of joint ventures may take several forms. The most common are corporate joint ventures, partnerships, limited liability corporations, and other types of pass-through entities. Contractors frequently participate in joint ventures with other parties on construction projects to share risks, combine the financial and other resources and talents of the participants, or obtain financing or bonding. In the construction industry, joint ventures often include arrangements for pooling equipment, bonding, and financing and for sharing skills such as engineering, design, and construction.

1.33 The rights and obligations of each joint venturer, the scope of the joint venture's operations, and the method of sharing profits or losses of the joint venture are typically set forth in the joint venture agreement. A joint venture provides for the sharing of profits and losses in a variety of ways and may not be related to the method of sharing management or other responsibilities. Accomplishing objectives through joint ventures is often a significant business strategy for construction contractors, and management control of such activity can have a significant effect on the contractors' operations.

1.34 Public-private partnerships, or P3s, are becoming increasingly common forms of collaboration for construction projects. Public-private partnerships take the form of contractual agreements between a public agency (federal, state, local) and a private sector entity. Due to governmental agencies struggling to obtain financing for large public works projects, these partnerships allow the private sector entity to share the risks and rewards of these public sector projects.

Reporting for Financial and Income Tax Purposes

1.35 Because of the large number of small enterprises in the construction industry, construction contractors' financial statements are used most frequently for credit and bonding purposes. Such a use is often accompanied by a request for supplemental information, including a job-by-job analysis of the recognized gross profit of both completed and uncompleted contracts allocated between reporting periods, a breakdown of general and administrative expenses, job costs, and a summary aging of accounts receivable. Recognition of revenues for these financial presentations is governed by accounting conventions described elsewhere in this guide and in FASB ASC 605-35. Note that as this guide is being published, FASB and the International Accounting Standards Board continue deliberation on a joint revenue recognition project and have recently reached tentative decisions on certain disclosure, transition issues, and early application issues, as well as a tentative effective date.

1.36 On the other hand, business realities demonstrate that the gross profit is not certain, nor irrevocably earned, until the contract is actually completed and accepted. In addition, final collection, particularly of retentions,

usually takes place sometime after the earning process has been completed and revenue has been recognized in the financial statements.

1.37 Some contractors adopt income tax reporting practices that are sensitive to the uncertainties of the estimating process and that more nearly relate to the timing of cash receipts and disbursements. This usually means the adoption of methods that defer income recognition until contracts are completed; the use of the modified accrual basis, which reports retentions only when received; or the use of the cash basis.

Typical Industry Operations

1.38 Because the industry consists of diverse types of entities engaged in various types of work that may change over time, users of the guide need to understand not only the industry but also the operation of the individual entity with which they are concerned. For that reason, a description of the process of obtaining and initiating a project is useful to identify unusual conditions that require special consideration in preparing, auditing, or using the financial statements of a particular construction contractor.

Preparing Cost Estimates and Bids

1.39 The process leading to the preparation of estimates and bids on a project usually is initiated by the entity that engages a construction contractor for a project. When a customer, usually referred to as an owner, decides to construct a new facility, an architect or engineer may be engaged to prepare preliminary plans and cost estimates for the project. If preliminary procedures indicate the project is feasible, plans and specifications are prepared in sufficient detail for the preparation of cost estimates.

1.40 The owner may negotiate for a price with several general contracting firms or may advertise for bids. Bidders may be limited to those who can meet specified prequalification standards regarding financial capacity, experience, and availability of specialized equipment and who can furnish a bid, payment, or performance bond or all three types of bonds. The owner may decide to use one contractor as a prime contractor responsible for all phases of the work or to grant separate prime contracts for certain specialized portions of the work, such as electrical work, mechanical work, special equipment, and elevators.

1.41 Before tendering a bid, the contractor's estimating department prepares a cost estimate by examining the plans and specifications to determine the quantities of materials, the hours of various labor classifications, and the type and hours of use of the equipment necessary to perform the work. Quantity surveys, or takeoffs of the quantities of materials required for the job, prepared by the design firm or an independent agency, are often available for the contractor to use as a check on his own estimating department.

1.42 The equipment demands of a contract affect a contractor's bidding, projected need for funds, and financing strategy. Some types of construction, such as road or heavy highway projects, require extensive use of costly equipment, and contractors are faced with decisions to buy or lease the equipment. Such decisions are often complicated because equipment may be acquired and tailored for use on a specific job and because the contractor may not be able to use the equipment on other jobs. In these situations, a contractor is then faced

with a decision to either capitalize the equipment or cost it out to the specific job.

1.43 Phases of the job (such as excavating, erecting steel, and roofing) not done directly by the contractor are offered to various trade or specialty subcontractors who, in turn, prepare bids to the prime contractor for their portions of the work. Each phase of the work may be bid on by more than one subcontractor, who may submit bids to more than one prime contractor. In dealing with different prime contractors, a subcontractor may vary the amount of the bids according to his or her assessment of his or her past experience with each contractor in terms of payment policies, quality of supervision and job coordination, and negotiating pressures.

1.44 Once the estimated cost of the work is determined, the contractor determines the amount by which the estimated cost will be marked up. The markup may vary between elements of the work, such as labor, material, subcontractor costs, or equipment. In determining how much the bid will be marked up over cost, the contractor ordinarily evaluates several factors including, but not limited to, the following:

- The complexities of the job
- The volatility of the labor and materials markets
- The contractor's experience, or lack of it, in doing the kind of work involved
- The reputation of the design agency for reliability and completeness of plans, as well as its reputation for reasonableness in its dealings with contractors
- The ability to identify and negotiate change orders with the owner or design agency
- The season and weather
- The predicted working relationship with the owner
- Prior history with the owner
- The probability of opportunities to negotiate profitable changes to the contract
- The alternate construction methods or specifications included in the bid request
- The competition and the market
- The incentive or penalty provisions of the contract
- The anticipated cash flow characteristics of the job
- Other peculiar risk conditions, including warranty requirements

1.45 After determining the total bid price, the contractor normally should estimate the timing of disbursements for the job and the cash resources available to determine the allocation of the contract price among the progress billing points called for in the contract.

Entering Into the Contract

1.46 The owner evaluates the bids received and may choose to sign a contract with the low bidder or to negotiate further, depending on the terms of the invitation to bid, statutes governing the bidding process of either public or private bodies, and other possible considerations. Submitted bids may be a

matter of public record, and the bids of other contractors can provide a valuable, independent check on the accuracy of the contractor's estimating department. At some stage, an agreement is reached between the owner and the contractor that enables the contractor to proceed with the work. The formal signing of a contract is usually not a specific point before which all effort is selling and after which all effort is construction. Negotiation is likely to continue during the entire cycle; the signed contract represents the basic understandings and undertakings of both parties, but many contract modifications, not necessarily in writing, may be made during the progress of the job. A given situation can be covered by different types of contracts, and the risks and concerns may be different for each contract type.

Planning and Initiating the Project

1.47 Before construction begins, the contractor usually moves equipment to the job site, erects a temporary field office, and installs temporary utilities. The purchasing department proceeds with the selection of material suppliers and subcontractors and converts their bids to written contracts or purchase orders. The authority and responsibility for the performance of the work on a project usually rest on one individual known as the *project manager*.

1.48 The management organization of construction contracting entities varies considerably, depending on the size of the contractor, the complexity of the projects performed, and other factors. In some entities, the person responsible for bidding a contract is also responsible for the performance of the job. This sometimes means that there is no separation of functions among selling, pricing, and production and that the entity is a conglomerate of small profit centers sharing, perhaps, a pool of equipment and an administrative staff. In other entities, a separate department is responsible for selecting jobs to estimate, preparing bids, and executing contracts. When the entity obtains a contract for a project, a member of the production staff is assigned the responsibility as project manager. Before accepting responsibility for the profit on the project, the project manager often prepares a schedule and budget that may include a complete reestimate of the cost of the job. This procedure provides an additional control and allows the contractor to fix the responsibility for profit on a contract.

1.49 The cost reporting system for the job is usually established at about the time the work begins. The coding system may be standard throughout the entity or redesigned for each individual job, but it should conform closely to the cost categories established in the original estimate or to the categories developed in the production plan, if one is prepared. A production plan or budget that is costed out in detail is helpful because it enables the contractor to compare costs by categories to the cost standards set before beginning the work.

1.50 On most construction projects, the major construction activity is carried out at the job site. The size and location of some projects make it necessary for a contractor to establish an administrative office at the job site and conduct most control and accounting functions from that office.

Variations in Size and Methods of Operation

1.51 The preceding discussion of operations is typical of a medium-sized general contractor with a small number of significant contracts; it illustrates

the importance of planning, bidding, and estimating. Construction activity, however, involves all types and sizes of contractors, and the management and operations of a contractor vary with the size and type of contractor. Many contractors have a mix of jobs that includes a few large jobs and many small jobs, including fixed-price and cost-plus contracts. Service-type contractors seldom are involved in bidding for contracts. Most of their small contracts originate as service calls, and many of their large contracts result from service calls and are negotiated rather than bid.

Project Management

1.52 The quality of management is a key determinant of the success or failure of a contractor. The management objective is to develop and maintain the ability to produce reasonable and competitive cost estimates on contracts and to complete the work required by the contracts within those cost estimates. Because success is determined by the results on contracts, many contractors project the effects that every transaction and event will have at the completion of the contract and use fluctuations of the final estimated profit as the stimulus for management action. Project management requires all the functions involved in planning, acquiring, controlling, and performing a project. All the following functions are involved:

- Resource planning
- Project start-up
- Estimating
- Scheduling
- Project administration
- Technical performance
- Procurement and material planning
- Labor planning and control
- Subcontractor management
- Support equipment and facilities
- Project accounting
- Project management reporting
- Operations analysis

Although some of these functions overlap, all are performed on every project undertaken by a contractor, even though the specific functions may not be identified. A large contractor may assign each function to a separate department, whereas a small contractor may assign two or three people responsibility for all the functions or may engage parties outside the organization to perform some of the functions on a consulting basis.

Chapter 2

Accounting for Performance of Construction-Type Contracts

2.01 This chapter covers accounting for performance of construction-type contracts and other general accounting considerations. Chapter 3, "Accounting for and Reporting Investments in Construction Joint Ventures;" chapter 4, "Financial Reporting by Affiliated Entities;" chapter 5, "Other Accounting Considerations;" and chapter 6, "Financial Statement Presentation," respectively cover joint ventures, reporting by affiliated entities, interperiod tax allocation, and financial statement presentation. The guidance on accounting for construction-type contracts set forth in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 605-35 is summarized in this chapter of the guide.

2.02 Contracts covered are *construction-type contracts*, as defined in FASB ASC 605-35-15. The classification of contracts covered in that section and the definition of a contractor and the concept of a profit center contained in FASB ASC 605-35-20 also apply to the discussion in this guide.

Basic Accounting Policy for Contracts

2.03 The choice between the two generally accepted methods of accounting for contracts is the basic accounting policy decision for construction contractors. The circumstances in which the percentage-of-completion and the completed-contract methods are preferable are set forth in FASB ASC 605-35 and are summarized in this chapter. FASB ASC 605-35-25-1 clarifies that the determination of which of the two methods is preferable is based on a careful evaluation of circumstances because the two methods should not be acceptable alternatives for the same circumstances.

Percentage-of-Completion Method

2.04 FASB ASC 605-35-25-57 states that the percentage-of-completion method is preferable as an accounting policy when estimates are reasonably dependable and all of the following conditions exist:

- Contracts executed by the parties normally include provisions that clearly specify the enforceable rights regarding goods or services to be provided and received by the parties, the consideration to be exchanged, and the manner and terms of settlement.
- The buyer can be expected to satisfy all obligations under the contract.
- The contractor can be expected to perform all contractual obligations.

2.05 As provided in FASB ASC 605-35-25-58, the presumption is that, for entities engaged on a continuing basis in the production and delivery of goods or services under contractual arrangements and for whom contracting represents a significant part of their operations, they have the ability to make estimates that are sufficiently dependable to justify the use of the percentage-of-completion method of accounting. It also states that persuasive evidence

to the contrary is necessary to overcome that presumption. FASB ASC 605-35-25-60 states that the percentage-of-completion method should be applied to individual contracts or profit centers, as appropriate, based on all of the following considerations:

- a. Normally, a contractor will be able to estimate total contract revenue and total contract cost in single amounts. Those amounts should normally be used as the basis for accounting for contracts under the percentage-of-completion method.
- b. For some contracts, on which some level of profit is assured, a contractor may only be able to estimate total contract revenue and total contract cost in ranges of amounts. If, based on the information arising in estimating the ranges of amounts and all other pertinent data, the contractor can determine the amounts in the ranges that are most likely to occur, those amounts should be used in accounting for the contract under the percentage-of-completion method. If the most likely amounts cannot be determined, the lowest probable level of profit in the range should be used in accounting for the contract until the results can be estimated more precisely.
- c. However, in some circumstances, estimating the final outcome may be impractical except to assure that no loss will be incurred. In those circumstances, a contractor should use a zero estimate of profit; equal amounts of revenue and cost should be recognized until results can be estimated more precisely. A contractor should use this basis only if the bases in (a) or (b) are clearly not appropriate. In accordance with FASB ASC 605-35-25-69, a change from a zero estimate of profit to a more precise estimate should be accounted for as a change in an accounting estimate.

2.06 FASB ASC 605-35-25-61 provides that an entity using the percentage-of-completion method as its basic accounting policy should use the completed-contract method for a single contract or a group of contracts for which reasonably dependable estimates cannot be made or for which inherent hazards make estimates doubtful. FASB ASC 605-35-50-3 indicates that such a departure from the basic policy should be disclosed.

Completed-Contract Method

2.07 According to FASB ASC 605-35-25-92, the completed-contract method may be used as an entity's basic accounting policy in circumstances in which financial position and results of operations would not vary materially from those resulting from use of the percentage-of-completion method (for example, in circumstances in which an entity has primarily short-term contracts). Additionally, as provided by FASB ASC 605-35-25-94, the use of the completed-contract method of accounting is preferable in circumstances in which estimates cannot meet the criteria for reasonable dependability discussed in paragraph 2.05 or if inherent hazards would make otherwise reasonably dependable contract estimates doubtful, as discussed in paragraphs 65–66 of FASB ASC 605-35-25. Paragraphs 96–97 of FASB ASC 605-35-25 establish completion criteria for determining when a contract is substantially completed under the completed-contract method.

2.08 It should be noted that most sureties and other external users of the financial statements require the use of the percentage-of-completion method. Therefore, in virtually all situations, the use of the completed-contract method is likely to be inappropriate.

Determining the Profit Center

2.09 In accordance with FASB ASC 605-35-25-4, the basic presumption should be that each individual contract is presumed to be the profit center for revenue recognition, cost accumulation, and income measurement unless that presumption can be overcome as a result of the contract or series of contracts meeting the conditions for combining or segmenting as described in paragraphs 5–14 of FASB ASC 605-35-25.

Measuring the Extent of Progress Toward Completion

2.10 As set forth in FASB ASC 605-35-25-70, the various approaches toward measuring progress on a contract can be grouped into input and output measures. Input measures are made in terms of efforts devoted to a contract. They include the methods based on costs (for example, the ratio of costs incurred to date to total estimated costs at completion) and on efforts expended (for example, the ratio of hours performed to date to estimated total hours at completion). Output measures are made in terms of results achieved. They include methods based on units produced, units delivered, contract milestones, and value added (that is, the contract value of total work performed to date). For contracts under which separate units of output are produced, progress can be measured on the basis of units of work completed. In other circumstances, progress may be measured, for example, on the basis of cubic yards of excavation for foundation contracts or on the basis of cubic yards of pavement laid for highway contracts. FASB ASC 605-35-25-79 notes that all these practices are intended to conform to the income recognition provisions under the percentage-of-completion method discussed in paragraphs 51–53 in FASB ASC 605-35-25.

2.11 Both input and output measures require the exercise of judgment and careful application to circumstances. FASB ASC 605-35-25-78 states that the acceptability of the results of input or output measures deemed to be appropriate to the circumstances should be reviewed and confirmed periodically by alternative measures that involve observation and inspection. For example, the results provided by the measure used to determine the extent of progress may be compared to the results of calculations based on physical observations by engineers, architects, or similarly qualified personnel. That type of review provides assurance somewhat similar to that provided for perpetual inventory records by periodic physical inventory counts.

Income Determination—Revenue

2.12 As set forth in FASB ASC 605-35-25-15, estimating the revenue on a contract is an involved process that is affected by a variety of uncertainties that depend on the outcome of a series of future events. The estimates must be periodically revised throughout the life of the contract as events occur and as uncertainties are resolved. The major factors that must be considered in determining total estimated revenue include (a) the basic contract price, (b) contract

options, (c) change orders, (d) claims, and (e) contract provisions for penalty and incentive payments, including award fees and performance incentives.

Impact of Change Orders on Revenue

2.13 Accounting for change orders, representing any modification to the original contract that effectively change the existing provisions of the contract, depends on the underlying circumstances. These circumstances may differ depending on the customer, the contract, and the nature of the change. Change orders should be evaluated according to their individual characteristics and individual circumstances.

2.14 Contract revenue (and costs) should be adjusted to reflect change orders only after being agreed upon and approved by the customer and the contractor regarding both scope and price.

Impact of Claims on Revenue

2.15 Accounting for claims, representing amounts in excess of the agreed contract price that a contractor seeks to collect from customers or others, depends on the underlying circumstances. Claims are normally as a result of customer-caused delays, errors in specifications and designs, contract terminations, change orders in dispute or unapproved concerning both scope and price, or other causes of unanticipated additional costs.

2.16 Recognition of the amounts of additional contract revenue relating to claims is appropriate only if it is probable that the claim will result in additional contract revenue and if the amount can be reliably estimated, as evidenced by satisfying the following conditions:

- The contract or other evidence provides a legal basis for the claim; or a legal opinion has been obtained, stating that under the circumstances there is a reasonable basis to support the claim.
- Additional costs are caused by circumstances that were unforeseen at the contract date and are not the result of deficiencies in the contractor's performance.
- Costs associated with the claim are identifiable or otherwise determinable and are reasonable in view of the work performed.
- The evidence supporting the claim is objective and verifiable, not based on management's feel for the situation or on unsupported representations.

If the foregoing requirements are met, revenue from a claim should be recorded only to the extent that contract costs relating to the claim have been incurred. Per FASB ASC 605-35-25-31, an alternative such as recording revenues from claims only when the amounts have been received or awarded may be used.

Income Determination—Cost Elements

2.17 Paragraphs 32–33 of FASB ASC 605-35-25 establish that contract costs should be identified, estimated, and accumulated with a reasonable degree of accuracy in determining income earned. Moreover, an entity should be able to determine costs incurred on a contract with a relatively high degree of precision, depending on the adequacy and effectiveness of its cost accounting system. The procedures or systems used in accounting for costs vary from

relatively simple, manual procedures that produce relatively modest amounts of detailed analysis to sophisticated, computer-based systems that produce a great deal of detailed analysis. Despite the diversity of systems and procedures, however, an objective of each system or of each set of procedures should be to accumulate costs properly and consistently by contract with a sufficient degree of accuracy to ensure a basis for the satisfactory measurement of earnings.

Accounting for Contract Costs

2.18 The general principles applicable to the accounting for costs of construction-type contracts covered by FASB ASC 605-35 require the exercise of judgment and consist of the following, as directed in FASB ASC 605-35-25-37:

- a.* All direct costs, such as material, labor, and subcontracting costs, should be included in contract costs.
- b.* Indirect costs allocable to contracts include the costs of indirect labor, contract supervision, tools and equipment, supplies, quality control and inspection, insurance, repairs and maintenance, depreciation and amortization, and, in some circumstances, support costs such as central preparation and processing of payrolls. However, practice varies for certain types of indirect costs considered allocable to contracts (for example, support costs such as central preparation and processing of job payrolls, billing and collection costs, and bidding and estimating costs) as discussed in FASB ASC 605-35-25-34. For government contractors, in accordance with FASB ASC 912-20-25-1, indirect costs that are allowable or allocable under pertinent government contract regulations may be allocated to federal government contracts as indirect costs if otherwise allowable under generally accepted accounting principles of the United States (U.S. GAAP). Methods of allocating indirect costs should be systematic and rational. They include, for example, allocations based on direct labor costs, direct labor hours, or a combination of direct labor and material costs. The appropriateness of allocations of indirect costs and of the methods of allocation depends on the circumstances and involves judgment.
- c.* Costs should be considered period costs if they cannot be clearly related to production, either directly or by an allocation based on their discernible future benefits in accordance with FASB ASC 605-35-25-35.
- d.* General and administrative costs ordinarily should be charged to expense as incurred but may be accounted for as contract costs under the completed-contract method of accounting, as discussed in FASB ASC 605-35-25-99.
- e.* Selling costs should be excluded from contract costs and charged to expense as incurred unless they meet the criteria for precontract costs in FASB ASC 605-35-25-41.
- f.* Costs under cost-type contracts should be charged to contract costs in conformity with U.S. GAAP in the same manner as costs under other types of contracts because unrealistic profit margins may result in circumstances in which reimbursable cost accumulations omit substantial contract costs (with a resulting larger fee) or include substantial unallocable general and administrative costs (with a resulting smaller fee).

- g.* In computing estimated gross profit or providing for losses on contracts, estimates of cost to complete should reflect all of the types of costs included in contract costs.
- h.* Inventoriable costs should not be carried at amounts that, when added to the estimated cost to complete, are greater than the estimated realizable value of the related contracts.

Cost Attributable to Claims

2.19 Per FASB ASC 605-35-25-31, costs attributable to claims should be treated as costs of contract performance as incurred.

Precontract Costs

2.20 The following provisions of FASB ASC 605-35-25-41 apply to precontract costs:

- a.* Costs that are incurred for a specific anticipated contract and that will result in no future benefits unless the contract is obtained should not be included in contract costs or inventory before the receipt of the contract. However, such costs otherwise may be deferred, subject to evaluation of their probable recoverability, but only if the costs can be directly associated with a specific anticipated contract and if their recoverability from the contract is probable. Precontract costs that are start-up activities should be expensed as incurred if they are determined to be within the scope of FASB ASC 720-15.
- b.* Costs incurred for assets, such as costs for the purchase of materials, production equipment, or supplies, that are expected to be used in connection with anticipated contracts may be deferred outside the contract cost or inventory classification if their recovery from future contract revenue or from other dispositions of the assets is probable.
- c.* Costs incurred to acquire or produce goods in excess of the amounts required for an existing contract in anticipation of future orders for the same items may be treated as inventory if their recovery is probable.
- d.* Learning or start-up costs incurred in connection with existing contracts and in anticipation of follow-on or future contracts for the same goods or services should be charged to existing contracts.
- e.* Costs appropriately deferred in anticipation of a contract should be included in contract costs on the receipt of the anticipated contract.
- f.* Costs related to anticipated contracts that are charged to expenses as incurred because their recovery is not considered probable should not be reinstated by a credit to income on the subsequent receipt of the contract.

Cost Adjustments for Back Charges

2.21 As explained in FASB ASC 605-35-25-42, back charges are billings for work performed or costs incurred by one party that, in accordance with the agreement, should have been performed or incurred by the party to whom billed. These are frequently disputed charges. For example, owners bill back

charges to general contractors, and general contractors bill back charges to subcontractors. Examples of back charges include charges for cleanup work and charges for a subcontractor's use of a general contractor's equipment.

2.22 FASB ASC 605-35-25-43 provides the following guidance on accounting for back charges:

- Back charges to others should be recorded as receivables and, to the extent considered collectible, should be applied to reduce contract costs. However, if the billed party disputes the propriety or amount of the charge, the back charge is, in effect, a claim, and the criteria for recording claims apply. See paragraphs 2.15–.16 for additional guidance on the accounting treatment of claims.
- Back charges from others should be recorded as payables and as additional contract costs to the extent that it is probable that the amounts will be paid.

Estimated Cost to Complete

2.23 The estimated cost to complete is a significant variable in the process of determining income earned and is thus a significant factor in accounting for contracts. It is also one of the most challenging areas for the contractor to account for and for the auditor to audit. According to FASB ASC 605-35-25-44, the following approaches should be followed in determining and updating the estimated cost to complete:

- a. Systematic and consistent procedures that are correlated with the cost accounting system should be used to provide a basis for periodically comparing actual and estimated costs.
- b. In estimating total contract costs, the quantities and prices of all significant elements of cost should be identified.
- c. The estimating procedures should provide that estimated cost to complete includes the same elements of cost that are included in actual accumulated costs; also, those elements should reflect expected price increases as discussed in item *d*.
- d. The effects of future wage and price escalations should be taken into account in cost estimates, especially when the contract performance will be carried out over a significant period of time. Escalation provisions should not be blanket overall provisions but should cover labor, materials, and indirect costs based on percentages or amounts that take into consideration known or expected increases, experience, and other pertinent data.
- e. Estimates of cost to complete should be reviewed periodically and revised as appropriate to reflect new information.

Computation of Earned Income

2.24 Paragraphs 82–84 of FASB ASC 605-35-25 and appendix F, "Computing Income Earned Under the Percentage-of-Completion Method," in this guide set forth and illustrate procedures for determining earned income for a period under the percentage-of-completion method.

Revised Estimates

2.25 FASB ASC 605-35-25-86 establishes that revisions in revenue, cost and profit estimates, or measurements of the extent of progress toward completion are changes in accounting estimates as defined FASB ASC 250, *Accounting Changes and Error Corrections*. Refer to paragraph 6.27 of this guide for additional discussion of revised estimates.

Provisions for Anticipated Losses on Contracts

2.26 The provision for loss arises because estimated cost for the contract exceeds estimated revenue. The following summarizes the accounting treatment of anticipated losses on contracts contained in paragraphs 45–50 of FASB ASC 605-35-25 and paragraphs 1–2 of FASB ASC 605-35-45:

- For contracts on which a loss is anticipated, the entire anticipated loss should be recognized in the period in which the loss becomes evident under either the percentage-of-completion method or the completed-contract method.
- The costs used in arriving at the estimated loss on a contract should include all costs of the type allocable to contracts under FASB ASC 605-35-25-37. Other factors that should be considered in arriving at the projected loss on a contract include (a) target penalties and interest, (b) nonreimbursable costs on cost-plus contracts, (c) change orders, and (d) potential price redeterminations.
- Provisions for losses should be shown separately as liabilities on the balance sheet, if significant, except in circumstances in which related costs are accumulated on the balance sheet, in which case the provisions may be deducted from the related accumulated costs. In a classified balance sheet, a provision for loss should be shown as a current liability.
- The provision for loss should be accounted for in the income statement as an additional contract cost rather than as a reduction of contract revenue. Unless the provision is material in amount or unusual or infrequent in nature, the provision should be included in contract cost and should not be shown separately in the income statement. If it is shown separately, it should be shown as a component of the cost included in the computation of gross profit.

Selecting a Measure of Extent of Progress

2.27 A good measure of extent of progress toward completion should give weight to all elements of a contractor's work and should consider the broad phases of a contractor's operation, such as

- designing the project (preparing blueprints to meet the owner's specifications).
- obtaining the necessary labor, materials, supplies, and equipment and mobilizing them at the construction site. Refer to FASB ASC 605-35-25-76 for a discussion of uninstalled materials as they relate to measuring the extent of progress using an input measure based on costs (for example, the ratio of costs incurred to date to total estimated costs at completion).

- managing the resources to complete the project.
- demobilizing the resources from the construction site.

Costs of Equipment and Small Tools

2.28 The cost of a contractor's equipment should be allocated to the particular contract on which it is used on a reasonable basis, such as time, hours of use, or mileage. Based on the reported use of the equipment, a rate may be arrived at that will serve as a basis for charging the contracts on which the equipment is used. In determining the operating unit costs for construction equipment to be included in contract cost, paragraphs 1–2 of FASB ASC 910-20-25 and FASB ASC 910-20-30-1 establish that contractors may utilize the use rate theory. In applying this theory, the following factors should be considered: (a) the cost of the equipment, less estimates of its salvage value or rental if it is leased, (b) the probable life of the equipment, (c) the average idle time during the life or period of hire of the equipment, and (d) the costs of operating the equipment, such as repairs, storage, insurance, and taxes.

2.29 In determining a suitable indirect cost allocation method for equipment, questions arise relating to accounting for equipment charges when a contractor's equipment is idle during a winter season or related to the propriety of allocating idle equipment costs to jobs. FASB ASC 910-20-25-3 states that idle equipment time, such as when a contractor's equipment is idle during a winter season, may be, but is not required to be, considered in determining indirect cost allocations. Allocation of idle equipment costs to contracts by use of rates geared to cover all costs is appropriate. That procedure results in rates that lessors of the same type of equipment charge users in the same location, except for the profit element.

2.30 FASB ASC 910-20-25-4 states that small tools should be charged to a contract as they are consumed in performance of the contract. Operating and maintenance costs of miscellaneous small tools and equipment are usually charged to overhead accounts rather than specific contracts. However, a contractor may charge the costs directly to specific contracts if they relate to specific contracts. Small tools can frequently be charged to contracts if purchased for the contracts or if issued from a central pool. Contract costs should be credited with estimated salvage value of small tools remaining at completion of the contracts.

2.31 If small tools are significant, they may be accounted for as inventory or fixed assets. FASB ASC 910-330-40-1 states that removals of small tools from inventory may be charged to specific contracts or charged to overhead and spread over jobs on an equitable basis. FASB ASC 910-360-35-1 states that depreciation of small tools carried in fixed assets may be charged to overhead or to specific contracts.

Chapter 3

Accounting for and Reporting Investments in Construction Joint Ventures

3.01 As noted in chapter 1, "Industry Background," contractors frequently participate in construction joint ventures with other parties to share risks, combine financial and other resources, or obtain financing or bonding. The Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) glossary defines a *joint venture* as an entity owned and operated by a small group of businesses (the joint venturers) as a separate and specific business or project for the mutual benefit of the members of the group. A government may also be a member of the group. The purpose of a joint venture frequently is to share risks and rewards in developing a new market, product, or technology; to combine complimentary technological knowledge; or to pool resources in developing production or other facilities. Examples of such arrangements may involve the combination of a nonlocal entity having a customer relationship or expertise with a local contractor who is qualified to construct the project and has labor in the local market, two or more contractors with unique skills, or contractors creating an arrangement to be able to have sufficient bonding capacity for very large projects. A joint venture also usually provides an arrangement under which each joint venturer may participate, directly or indirectly, in the overall management of the joint venture. Joint venturers, thus, have an interest or relationship other than as passive investors. An entity that is a subsidiary of one of the joint venturers is not a joint venture. The ownership of a joint venture seldom changes, and its equity interests usually are not traded publicly. A minority public ownership, however, does not preclude an entity from being a joint venture. As distinguished from a corporate joint venture, a joint venture is not limited to corporate entities.

3.02 Entities described as construction joint ventures vary in their legal forms. They include corporations, general and limited partnerships, limited liability companies, and undivided interests. The entities, which are usually project oriented, are often viewed as joint ventures even though one of the investors may have a majority voting interest or may otherwise have effective control of the entity. Because this chapter presents guidance on accounting for investments in entities described as construction joint ventures, questions relating to the existence of control are also addressed.

Joint Venture Accounting

Accounting Methods

3.03 According to FASB ASC 323-10-05-4, investments in the stock of entities other than subsidiaries, namely corporate joint ventures and other non-controlled entities, usually are accounted for using either the equity method, the cost method, or the fair value method. As explained in FASB ASC 323-10-15-3, the guidance in FASB ASC 323, *Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures*, applies to investments in 50 percent or less of the common stock or in-substance common stock (or both common stock and in-substance common stock). The FASB ASC glossary defines *in-substance common stock* as

an investment in an entity that has risk and reward characteristics that are substantially similar to that entity's common stock.

3.04 FASB ASC 323-10-05-5 establishes that the equity method tends to be the most appropriate if an investment enables the investor to influence the operating or financial decisions of the investee. As further explained in FASB ASC 323-10-15-8, an investment (direct or indirect) of 20 percent or more of the voting stock of an investee creates the presumption that in the absence of predominant evidence to the contrary, an investor has the ability to exercise significant influence over an investee. Conversely, an investment of less than 20 percent of the voting stock of an investee creates the presumption that an investor does not have the ability to exercise significant influence unless such ability can be demonstrated. Determining the ability of an investor to exercise significant influence is not always clear, and applying judgment is necessary to assess the status of each investment. Paragraphs 6–11 of FASB ASC 323-10-15 define *significant influence*.

3.05 FASB ASC 323-10-25-2 cautions that the equity method is not a valid substitute for consolidation. *Consolidation* is defined by the FASB ASC glossary as the presentation of a single set of amounts for an entire reporting entity. Consolidation requires elimination of intraentity transactions and balances. FASB ASC 323-10-25-2 also cautions that there are certain other limitations to the use of the equity method identified in paragraphs 8 and 10 of FASB ASC 810-10-15 including, but not limited to, circumstances in which the relevant provisions applicable to variable interest entities (VIEs) in FASB ASC 810, *Consolidation*, apply.

3.06 FASB ASC 325-20-35-3 explains that investments in joint ventures of less than 20 percent of the voting stock are presumed to indicate an investor's inability to exercise significant influence in the absence of predominant evidence to the contrary, in which case the use of the cost method is generally followed. FASB ASC 323-10-15-9 clarifies that an investor's voting stock interest in an investee should be based on those currently outstanding securities whose holders have present voting privileges. Potential voting privileges that may become available to holders of securities of an investee should be disregarded.

3.07 The fair value method of accounting for equity investments is normally not applicable to investments in joint ventures because it requires the availability of readily determinable fair values for the equity securities as noted in FASB ASC 320-10-15-5, and it is not available if the investments otherwise meet the criteria for the use of the cost method or equity method as noted in FASB ASC 320-10-15-7.

Capital Contributions to Joint Ventures and Initial Measurement of Investments in Joint Ventures

3.08 Unless certain exceptions in FASB ASC 323-10-30-2 apply, under the equity method, an investor should recognize an investment in a joint venture initially at cost, in accordance with FASB ASC 805-50-30.¹

3.09 Cash capital contributions to a venture by a venturer should be recorded by the venturer as an investment in the amount of the cash

¹ Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 325-20-30-1 explains that under the cost method, an investee will recognize a similar investment in the stock of an investee as an asset measured initially at cost.

contributed. As a general rule, the contribution of other assets should be recorded as an investment equal to the contributed asset's net book value on the venturer's books. That basis should be used regardless of the nature of the interest in the venture obtained from the transaction.

3.10 FASB ASC 845-10-15-4 clarifies that the guidance in FASB ASC 845, *Nonmonetary Transactions*, does not apply to a transfer of nonmonetary assets solely between a corporate joint venture and its owners, nor does it apply to a transfer of assets to an entity in exchange for an equity interest in that entity, including the exchange of a nonfinancial asset for a noncontrolling ownership interest in a joint venture. Moreover, FASB ASC 845-10-15-14 clarifies that the guidance in FASB ASC 845 pertaining to nonmonetary exchanges involving monetary consideration (referred to as *boot*) does not apply to transfers between a joint venture and its owners. Note that the FASB ASC glossary defines *nonmonetary assets and liabilities* as assets and liabilities other than monetary ones and *monetary assets and liabilities* as assets and liabilities whose amounts are fixed in terms of units of currency by contract or otherwise. Additionally, the FASB ASC glossary defines an *exchange* (or *exchange transaction*) as a reciprocal transfer between two entities that results in one of the entity's acquiring assets or services or satisfying liabilities by surrendering other assets or services or incurring other obligations.

3.11 A noncash contribution may be accompanied by a cash withdrawal by the contributing venturer. The receipt of cash may represent monetary consideration on which the venturer should recognize profit to the extent of the other venturers' proportionate interests.

3.12 The following illustrates a transaction in which the contributing venturer should recognize profit:

A and B are to share equally in a new joint venture. A contributes \$100,000 in cash, and B contributes equipment with carrying value to him of \$140,000. To equalize the contributions, A and B agree that B will withdraw \$40,000 from the venture. The conditions required for proportionate profit recognition by B are present.

Results

1. The transaction indicates that the equipment has a fair value of \$200,000.
2. B now effectively owns a 50 percent interest in the equipment.
3. B, therefore, has effectively sold a 50 percent interest in the equipment to A for \$100,000 and should recognize a gain before income taxes of \$30,000, that is, $\$100,000 - (1/2 \times \$140,000)$.
4. B should recognize an additional \$30,000 as a gain as the venture depreciates the equipment. The venture would initially record the equipment on its books at its indicated fair value of \$200,000.

3.13 A venturer may contribute assets to a venture and obtain an interest in the venture smaller than the carrying amount of contributed assets, based on the relationship of the carrying amount of the asset to the cash contributed by the other venturers. In those circumstances, the transaction might provide evidence that the cost or carrying amount of the contributed assets is greater

than their fair value, and that a loss should be recognized. Under the general principle that all losses should be recognized when they become evident, an indicated loss should be recognized by the venturer, with a corresponding reduction in the carrying amount of its investment in the venture. In measuring fair value, refer to the discussion in chapter 2, "Accounting for Performance of Construction-Type Contracts."

3.14 The following is an illustration of a transaction in which a venturer should recognize a loss:

A and B are to share equally in a new joint venture. A contributes \$100,000 in cash, and B contributes equipment with a carrying value to him of \$140,000.

Results

1. The transaction indicates that the equipment has a fair value of \$100,000 (the amount of A's contribution).
2. B should recognize a loss of \$40,000 and record its investment in the venture at \$100,000.

3.15 A venturer may obtain an interest in a venture by contributing service or "know-how." If the services are to be provided in the future, the cost should not be assigned to the investment account until the services are performed. Recognition of the venturer's share of the profits on withdrawals received before the performance of the services should be deferred until the services are performed and the earning process is complete.

Sales to a Venture

3.16 Sales of materials, supplies, or services to a venture by a venturer that controls the venture, through majority voting interest or otherwise, generally should not be viewed as arm's length transactions. The venturer should not recognize as income any of the intercompany profit or loss from such transactions until it has been realized through transactions with outside third parties.

3.17 FASB ASC 323-10-35-10 states that when an investor controls an investee through majority voting interest and enters into a transaction with an investee that is not on at arm's length, none of the intraentity profit or loss from the transaction should be recognized in income by the investor until it has been realized through transactions with third parties. The same treatment also applies for an investee established with the cooperation of an investor (including an investee established for the financing and operation or leasing of property sold to the investee by the investor) if control is exercised through guarantees of indebtedness,² extension of credit and other special arrangements by the

² FASB ASC 460-10-50-6 states that some guarantees are issued to benefit entities that are related parties such as joint ventures, equity method investees, and certain entities for which the controlling financial interest cannot be assessed by analyzing voting interests. In those cases, the disclosures required by FASB ASC 460, *Guarantees*, are incremental to the disclosures required by FASB ASC 850, *Related Party Disclosures*. FASB ASC 460-10-25-4 clarifies that a guarantor should recognize in its statement of financial position, at the inception of a guarantee, a liability for that guarantee. The offsetting entry depends on the circumstances in which the guarantee was issued. Among other circumstances described in FASB ASC 460-10-55-23, a guarantee issued in conjunction with the formation of a partially owned business or a venture accounted for under the equity method results in an increase to the carrying amount of the investment. FASB ASC 460-10-25-1 clarifies a guarantee issued either between parents and their subsidiaries or between corporations under common control are not subject to the recognition provisions of FASB ASC 460.

investor for the benefit of the investee, or because of ownership by the investor of warrants, convertible securities, and so forth issued by the investee.

3.18 However, a transaction may be deemed to be on an arm's-length basis, which means that is the price that would be received to sell the property in an orderly transaction between market participants who are independent of the reporting entity. A controlling venturer may recognize profit to the extent of other interests in the venture if the following conditions are met:

- The transaction was entered into at a price determinable on an arm's length basis; that is, fair value can be measured by comparable sales at normal selling prices to independent third parties or by competitive bids. As provided by "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 820-10-35-3, a fair value measurement assumes that the asset or liability is exchanged in an orderly transaction between market participants to sell the asset or transfer the liability at the measurement date under current market conditions. "Pending Content" in the FASB ASC glossary defines *market participants* as buyers and sellers in the principal (or most advantageous) market for the asset or liability that have all of the following characteristics:
 - They are independent of each other, that is, they are not related parties, although the price in a related-party transaction may be used as an input to a fair value measurement if the reporting entity has evidence that the transaction was entered into at market terms.
 - They are knowledgeable, having a reasonable understanding about the asset or liability and the transaction using all available information, including information that might be obtained through due diligence efforts that are usual and customary.
- They are able to enter into a transaction for the asset or liability. They are willing to enter into a transaction for the asset or liability, that is, they are motivated but not forced or otherwise compelled to do so. No substantial uncertainties exist regarding the venturer's ability to perform, such as those that may be present if the venturer lacks experience in the business of the venture or regarding the total cost of the services to be rendered.
- The venture is creditworthy and has independent financial substance.

3.19 A venturer that does not control the venture should recognize inter-company profit to the extent of other interests in the venture.

Subsequent Measurement and Presentation of Investments in Joint Ventures

3.20 At least five different methods of presenting a venturer's interest in a venture are followed in present practice:

- *Consolidation.* The venture is fully consolidated, with the other venturers' interests shown as noncontrolling interests.

- *Partial or proportionate consolidation.* The venturer records its proportionate interest in the venture's assets, liabilities, revenues, and expenses on a line-by-line basis and combines the amounts directly with its own assets, liabilities, revenues, and expenses without distinguishing between the amounts related to the venture and those held directly by the venturer. Paragraph 14 of FASB ASC 810-10-45 provides that an investee in the construction industry may present its investment in an unincorporated legal entity accounted for by the equity method using the proportionate gross financial statement presentation.
- *Expanded equity method.* The venturer presents its proportionate share of the venture's assets and liabilities in capsule form, segregated between current and noncurrent. The elements of the investment are presented separately by including the venturer's equity in the venture's corresponding items under current assets, current liabilities, noncurrent assets, noncurrent liabilities, revenues, and expenses, using a caption such as "investor's share of net current assets of joint ventures."
- *Equity method.* Paragraphs 1–2 of FASB ASC 323-10-45 establish that an investment accounted for under the equity method of accounting should be shown in the balance sheet of an investor as a single amount. Likewise, an investor's share of earnings or losses from its investment shall be shown in its income statement as a single amount, except for an investor's share of extraordinary items, those which meet the criteria of FASB ASC 225-20-45-3, and its share of accounting changes reported in the financial statements of the investee, which should be classified separately in accordance with FASB ASC 225-20. An investor should recognize its share of the earnings or losses of an investee based on the shares of common stock and in-substance common stock held by that investor, as set forth in FASB ASC 323-10-35-4, in the periods for which they are reported by the investee in its financial statements. An investor should adjust the carrying amount of an investment for its share of the earnings or losses of the investee after the date of investment and shall report the recognized earnings or losses in income.³ Paragraphs 31–32 of FASB ASC 323-10-35 explain that a loss in value of an equity method investment that is other than a temporary decline should be recognized even though the decrease in value is in excess of what would otherwise be recognized by application of the equity method. A series of operating losses of an investee or other factors may indicate that an other than temporary decrease in value of the investment has occurred. FASB ASC 323-10-35-32A states that an equity method investor should not separately test an investee's underlying asset(s) for impairment. However, an equity investor should recognize its share of any impairment charge recorded by an investee in accordance with the guidance in FASB ASC 323-10-35-13 and FASB ASC 323-10-45-1

³ Paragraphs 37–39 of FASB ASC 323-10-35 address how an investor should account for its proportionate share of an investee's equity adjustments for other comprehensive income upon a loss of significant influence, a loss of control that results in the retention of a cost method investment, and discontinuation of the equity method for an investment in a limited partnership because the conditions in FASB ASC 970-323-25-6 are met for applying the cost method.

and consider the effect, if any, of the impairment on the investor's basis difference in the assets giving rise to the investee's impairment charge.

- *Cost method.* As provided in FASB ASC 325-20-35-1, under the cost method of accounting for investments in common stock, dividends are the basis for recognition by an investor of earnings from an investment. An investor recognizes as income dividends received that are distributed from net accumulated earnings of the investee since the date of acquisition by the investor. The net accumulated earnings of an investee subsequent to the date of investment are recognized by the investor only to the extent distributed by the investee as dividends. Dividends received in excess of earnings subsequent to the date of investment are considered a return of investment and are recorded as reductions of cost of the investment. As with equity method investments, FASB ASC 325-20-35-2 explains that a loss in value of a cost method investment that is other than a temporary decline should be recognized. A series of operating losses of an investee or other factors may indicate that a decrease in value of the investment has occurred that is other than temporary.

3.21 The extent of the use of those methods varies; however, they have all been used in, or have been considered acceptable for use in, accounting for investments in joint ventures in the construction industry. Combinations of those methods have also been used in the construction industry. As noted previously, a common combination is to use the one-line equity method in the balance sheet and the proportionate consolidation method in the income statement.

Corporate Joint Ventures

3.22 Paragraph 3 of FASB ASC 323-10-15 establishes that the equity method of accounting applies to investments in the common stock of corporate joint ventures. FASB ASC 323-10 provides guidance and establishes requirements on the application of the equity method. According to FASB ASC 323-10-05-4, the equity method of accounting more closely meets the objectives of accrual accounting than does the cost method because the investor recognizes its share of the earnings and losses of the investee in the periods in which they are reflected in the accounts of the investee. The equity method also best enables investors in corporate joint ventures to reflect the underlying nature of their investment in those ventures.⁴

3.23 In its definition of a *corporate joint venture*, the FASB ASC glossary explains an entity that is a subsidiary of one of the joint venturers is not a corporate joint venture. A *subsidiary*, according to the FASB ASC glossary, is an entity, including an unincorporated entity, such as a partnership or trust, in which another entity, known as its *parent*, holds a controlling financial interest, including a VIE that is consolidated by a primary beneficiary.

⁴ FASB ASC 810-10-45-13 establishes that a parent or an investor should report a change to (or the elimination of) a previously existing difference between the parent's reporting period and the reporting period of a consolidated entity or between the reporting period of an investor and the reporting period of an equity method investee in the parent's or investor's consolidated financial statements as a change in accounting principle in accordance with the provisions of FASB ASC 250, *Accounting Changes and Error Corrections*. This issue does not apply in situations in which a parent entity or an investor changes its fiscal year-end.

3.24 With limited exceptions, all majority-owned subsidiaries—that is, all entities in which a parent has a controlling financial interest—should be consolidated in accordance with FASB ASC 810-10-15-10(a). FASB ASC 810-10-15-10(a)[1] states that a majority-owned subsidiary should not be consolidated if control does not rest with the majority owner, and provides indicators of when this situation may be present.

Variable Interest Entities

3.25 FASB ASC 810-10 provides guidance and establishes requirements pertaining to the consolidation of VIEs, defined by the FASB ASC glossary as entities subject to consolidation according to the applicable subsections in FASB ASC 810-10 related to VIEs. This FASB ASC subtopic explains how to apply the consolidation guidance of FASB ASC 810 to certain entities in which equity investors do not have the characteristics of a controlling financial interest or do not have sufficient equity at risk for the entity to finance its activities without additional subordinated financial support. The FASB ASC glossary term *subordinated financial support* is defined as variable interests that will absorb some or all of a VIE's expected losses. "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 810-10-15-14 states that an entity should follow the consolidation guidance for VIEs in FASB ASC 810-10 if, by design, any of the following conditions exist:

- a. The total equity investment at risk is not sufficient to permit the entity to finance its activities without additional subordinated financial support provided by any parties, including equity holders.
- b. As a group, the holders of the equity investment at risk lack any one of the following three characteristics:
 - i. The power, through voting rights or similar rights, to direct the activities of a legal entity that most significantly impact the entity's economic performance⁵
 - ii. The obligation to absorb the expected losses of the legal entity
 - iii. The right to receive the expected residual returns of the legal entity
- c. The equity investors as a group otherwise lack the characteristic noted in the preceding item (b)(i) as a result of both of the following conditions being present:
 - i. The voting rights of some investors are not proportional to their obligations to absorb the expected losses of the legal entity, their rights to receive the expected residual returns of the legal entity, or both.
 - ii. Substantially all of the legal entity's activities (for example, providing financing or buying assets) either involve or

⁵ Among other significant provisions, "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 810-10-15-14 notes that kick-out rights or participating rights held by the holders of the equity investment at risk shall not prevent interests other than the equity investment from having this characteristic unless a single equity holder (including its related parties and de facto agents) has the unilateral ability to exercise such rights. Alternatively, interests other than the equity investment at risk that provide the holders of those interests with kick-out rights or participating rights should not prevent the equity holders from having this characteristic unless a single reporting entity (including its related parties and de facto agents) has the unilateral ability to exercise those rights.

are conducted on behalf of an investor that has disproportionately few voting rights.

3.26 FASB ASC 810-10 may affect the way construction contractors account for and report their investments in construction joint ventures. As provided in "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 810-10-25-38, an entity shall consolidate a VIE when that reporting entity has a variable interest (or combination of variable interests) that provide the entity with a controlling financial interest on the basis of the provisions of "Pending Content" in paragraphs 38A–38G of FASB ASC 810-10-25, as discussed in paragraphs 3.27–.28.⁶ The entity that consolidates a VIE is called the *primary beneficiary* of that VIE according to "Pending Content" in the FASB ASC glossary.

3.27 "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 810-10-25-38A states that an entity with a variable interest in a VIE should assess whether it has a controlling financial interest in the VIE and, thus, is the VIE's primary beneficiary. The entity is deemed to have a controlling interest if it has both of the following characteristics:

- The power to direct the activities of the VIE that most significantly impact the VIE's economic performance
- The obligation to absorb the losses of the VIE that could potentially be significant to the VIE or the right to receive benefits from the VIE that could potentially be significant to the VIE⁷

Only one reporting entity is expected to be identified as the primary beneficiary of a VIE, although several may have the characteristics of the second item in the preceding list.⁸ Only one entity will have the power to direct the activities of the VIE that most significantly impact the VIE's economic performance.

3.28 "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 810-10-25-38B states that an entity is not required to exercise the power it holds over a VIE, as established in paragraph 3.27, in order to have power to direct the activities of a VIE.

Initial Consolidation of a Variable Interest Entity

3.29 If the primary beneficiary of a VIE and the VIE itself are under common control, the primary beneficiary should initially measure the assets, liabilities, and noncontrolling interests of the VIE at amounts at which they

⁶ Paragraph 14 of FASB ASC 810-10-45 provides that an investee in the construction industry may present its investment in an unincorporated legal entity accounted for by the equity method using the proportionate gross financial statement presentation.

⁷ The use of a quantitative approach, as discussed in the FASB ASC glossary definitions of *expected losses*, *expected residual returns*, and *expected variability* is not required and should not be the sole determinant about whether the entity has those obligations or rights.

⁸ If the entity determines that power is, in fact, shared among multiple unrelated parties such that no one party has the power to direct the activities of the variable interest entity (VIE) that most significantly affect the VIE's economic performance, then no party is the primary beneficiary. Power is shared if two or more unrelated parties together have the power to direct the activities of a VIE that most significantly affect the VIE's economic performance and if decisions about those activities require the consent of each of the parties sharing power. If the entity concludes that power is not shared, but the activities that most significantly affect the VIE's economic performance are directed by multiple unrelated parties, and the nature of activities that each party is directing is the same, then the party, if any, with the power over the majority of those activities will be considered to have the characteristics in the first item in the bulleted list in paragraph 3.27.

However, if the activities that affect the VIE's economic performance are directed by multiple unrelated parties, and the nature of the activities that each party is directing is not the same, then the entity should identify which party has the power to direct the activities that most significantly affect the VIE's economic performance. Only one party will have this power.

are carried in the accounts of the reporting entity that controls the VIE. For situations in which the initial consolidation of a VIE is a business, the transaction is a business combination and should be accounted for under the provisions of FASB ASC 805, *Business Combinations*.

Initial Consolidation When Earlier Consolidation Was Prevented Due to Lack of Information

3.30 "Pending Content" in paragraphs 7–9 of FASB ASC 810-10-30 provide guidance to a reporting entity that has not applied the guidance in the "Variable Interest Entities" subsections of FASB ASC to a legal entity because earlier consolidation was prevented due to a lack of information as discussed in FASB ASC 810-10-15-17(c).

3.31 "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 810-10-30-8 clarifies that the initial measurement by the consolidating entity of the assets, liabilities, and noncontrolling interests of the VIE at the date the requirements of the VIE subsections in FASB ASC 810-10 first apply depends on whether the determination of their carrying amounts is practical. In this context, *carrying amounts* refers to the amounts at which the assets, liabilities, and noncontrolling interests would have been carried in the consolidated financial statements if the VIE subsections had been effective when the entity first met the conditions to be the primary beneficiary.

3.32 If determining the carrying amounts is practicable, the consolidating entity should initially measure the assets, liabilities, and noncontrolling interests of the VIE at their carrying amounts at the date the VIE subsections first apply.

3.33 If determining the carrying amounts is not practicable, the consolidating entity should initially measure the assets, liabilities, and noncontrolling interests of the VIE at their fair value at the date the VIE subsections first apply. As an alternative to this fair value measurement requirement, the assets and liabilities of the VIE may be measured at their unpaid principal balances at this same date, if both of the following conditions are met:

- The activities of the VIE are primarily related to securitizations or other forms of asset-backed financing.
- The assets of the VIE can be used only to settle obligations of the entity.

This measurement alternative does not obviate the need for the primary beneficiary to recognize any accrued interest, an allowance for credit losses, or other-than-temporary impairment, as appropriate. Other assets, liabilities, or noncontrolling interests, if any, that do not have an unpaid principal balance and any items that are required to be carried at fair value under other applicable standards should be measured at fair value.

3.34 Any difference between the net amount added to the balance sheet of the consolidating entity and the amount of any previously recognized interest in the newly consolidated VIE would be recognized as a cumulative effect of an accounting change.

3.35 In accordance with FASB ASC 810-10-35-3, after the initial measurement, the assets, liabilities, and noncontrolling interests of a consolidated VIE should be accounted for in consolidated financial statements as if the VIE were

consolidated based upon voting interests. Any specialized accounting requirements applicable to the type of business in which the VIE operates should be applied as they would be applied to a consolidated subsidiary. The consolidated entity should follow the requirements for elimination of intraentity balances and transactions and other matters described in FASB ASC 810-10-45, FASB ASC 810-10-50-1, and FASB ASC 810-10-50-1B, as well as existing practices for consolidated subsidiaries. Fees or other sources of income or expense between a primary beneficiary and a consolidated VIE should be eliminated against the related expense or income of the VIE. The resulting effect of that elimination on the net income or expense of the VIE should be attributed to the primary beneficiary (and not to noncontrolling interests) in the consolidated financial statements.

3.36 In accordance with FASB ASC 810-10-45-16, the noncontrolling interest should be reported in the consolidated statement of financial position within equity (net assets), separately from the parent's equity (or net assets). The amount should be clearly identified and labeled, for example, as noncontrolling interest in subsidiaries. An entity with noncontrolling interests in more than one subsidiary may present those interests in aggregate in the consolidated financial statements.

General Partnerships

3.37 FASB ASC 323-30-25-1 states that investors in unincorporated entities, such as partnerships, generally should account for their investments using the equity method of accounting by analogy to FASB ASC 323-10 if the investor has the ability to exercise significant influence over the investee.

3.38 The principal difference, aside from income tax considerations, between corporate joint ventures and general partnerships is that a condition that would usually indicate control of a general partnership is ownership of a majority (over 50 percent) of the financial interests in profits or losses. The power to control a general partnership may also exist with a lesser percentage of ownership, for example, by contract, by agreement with other partners, or by court decree. On the other hand, majority ownership may not constitute control if major decisions such as the acquisition, sale, or refinancing of principal partnership assets must be approved by one or more of the other partners.

Limited Partnerships

3.39 FASB ASC 810-10-15-10(b) states that FASB ASC 810-20, which discusses control of partnerships, should be applied to determine whether the rights of the limited partners in a limited partnership overcome the presumption that the general partner controls, and therefore should consolidate, the partnership. According to FASB ASC 810-20-15-3, the guidance in FASB ASC 810-20 does not apply to the following entities:

- Limited partnerships or similar entities (such as limited liability companies that have governing provisions that are the functional equivalent of a limited partnership) that are entities within the scope of the VIE subsections of FASB ASC 810-10
- A general partner that, in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) of the United States, carries its investment in the limited partnership at fair value with changes in fair value reported in a statement of operations or financial performance

- Entities in industries in which it is appropriate for a general partner to use the pro rata method of consolidation for its investment in a limited partnership as provided in FASB ASC 810-10-45-14
- Circumstances in which no single general partner in a group of general partners controls the limited partnership

3.40 The accounting recommendations for investments in general partnerships are generally appropriate for accounting by limited partners for their investments in limited partnerships. However, a limited partner's interest may be so minor that the investor may have virtually no influence over partnership operating and financial policies.⁹ Such a limited partner is, in substance, in the same position relative to the investment as an investor that owns a minor common stock interest in a corporation, and, accordingly, accounting for the investment using the cost method may be appropriate.

3.41 Paragraphs 1–3 of FASB ASC 810-20-25 clarify that the determination of which, if any, general partner within the group controls and, therefore, shall consolidate the limited partnership is based on an analysis of the relevant facts and circumstances. In situations involving multiple general partners, entities under common control are considered to be a single general partner for purposes of applying the guidance in FASB ASC 810-20. The general partners in a limited partnership are presumed to control that limited partnership regardless of the extent of the general partners' ownership interest in the limited partnership.

3.42 However, if the substance of the partnership arrangement is such that the general partners are not in control of the partnership's major operating and financial policies, a limited partner may be in control. An example could be a limited partner holding over 50 percent of the total partnership interest.

3.43 As provided in FASB ASC 810-10-15-10, the guidance in FASB ASC 810-20 should be applied to determine whether the rights of the limited partners in a limited partnership overcome the presumption that the general partner controls, and therefore should consolidate, the partnership. If, based on the criteria set forth in FASB ASC 810-20, presumption of control by the general partners can be overcome, then each of the general partners would account for its investment in the limited partnership using the equity method of accounting.¹⁰

⁹ FASB ASC 323-30-S99-1 states that the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) staff's position on all investments in limited partnerships is that these investments should be accounted for using the equity method unless the investor's interest "is so minor that the limited partner may have virtually no influence over partnership operating and financial policies." The SEC staff understands that practice generally has viewed investments of more than 3 percent to 5 percent to be more than minor.

¹⁰ Paragraphs 4–20 of FASB ASC 810-20-25 establish certain rights held by limited partner(s) that would overcome the presumption of control by the general partners. The assessment of whether the rights of the limited partners shall overcome the presumption of control by the general partners is a matter of judgment that depends on facts and circumstances. The general partners do not control the limited partnership if the limited partners have (a) the substantive ability to dissolve (liquidate) the limited partnership or otherwise remove the general partners without cause, (b) substantive participating rights, (c) substantive kick-out rights, and (d) protective rights that provide the limited partners with the right to effectively participate in significant decisions that would be expected to be made in the ordinary course of the limited partnership's business while being protective of the limited partners' investment. Refer to the FASB ASC glossary for definitions of the aforementioned terms and to FASB ASC paragraphs noted initially for further guidance.

Undivided Interests in Ventures

3.44 FASB ASC 323-30-15-3 clarifies that investments in partnerships and unincorporated joint ventures may also be called *undivided interests in ventures*. According to FASB ASC 810-10-45-14, if the investor-venturer owns an undivided interest in each asset and is proportionately liable for its share of each liability, the provisions of FASB ASC 323-10-45-1 relating to the application of the equity method of accounting may not apply to investees in the construction industry. For example, proportionate consolidation using a proportionate gross financial statement presentation wherein the investor-venturer accounts in its financial statements for its pro rata share of the assets, liabilities, revenues, and expenses of the venture may be appropriate.

Determining Venturers' Percentage Ownership

3.45 Many joint venture agreements designate different allocations among the venturers of (a) the profits and losses, (b) the specified costs and expenses or revenues, (c) the distributions of cash from operations, and (d) the distributions of cash proceeds from liquidation. Such agreements may also provide for changes in the allocations at specified future dates or on the occurrence of specified future events. For the purpose of determining the amount of income or loss to be recognized by the venturer, the percentage of ownership interest should be based on the percentage by which costs and profits will ultimately be shared by the venturers. An exception to this general rule may be appropriate if changes in the percentages are scheduled or expected to occur so far in the future that they become meaningless for current reporting purposes. In those circumstances, the percentage interest specified in the joint venture agreement should be used with appropriate disclosures.

Conforming the Accounting Principles of the Venture

3.46 The accounts of a venture may reflect accounting practices, such as those used to prepare tax basis data for investors, that vary from GAAP. If the financial statements of the investor are to be prepared in conformity with GAAP, such variances that are material should be identified and conformed to.

Losses in Excess of a Venturer's Investment, Loans, and Advances

3.47 A venturer should record its share of joint venture losses in excess of its investment, loans, and advances in accordance with paragraphs 19–30 of FASB ASC 323-10-35. An investor's share of losses of an investee may equal or exceed the carrying amount of an investment accounted for by the equity method plus advances made by the investor. An equity method investor should continue to report losses up to the investor's investment carrying amount, including any additional financial support made or committed to by the investor. Additional financial support made or committed to by the investor may take the form of any of the following:

- Capital contributions to the investee
- Investments in additional common stock of the investee
- Investments in preferred stock of the investee

- Loans to the investee
- Investments in debt securities (including mandatorily redeemable preferred stock) of the investee
- Advances to the investee

The investor ordinarily should discontinue applying the equity method if the investment (and net advances) is reduced to zero and shall not provide for additional losses unless the investor has guaranteed obligations of the investee or is otherwise committed to provide further financial support for the investee. Such circumstances may be evidenced by

- legal obligation as a guarantor¹¹ or general partner.
- commitment based on such considerations as business reputation, intercompany relationships, and credit standing. Such a commitment might be evidenced by
 - previous support by the venturer indicating that it would make good joint venture obligations.
 - public statements by the venturer of its intention to provide support.

An investor should, however, provide for additional losses if the imminent return to profitable operations by an investee appears to be assured. For example, a material, nonrecurring loss of an isolated nature may reduce an investment below zero even though the underlying profitable operating pattern of an investee is unimpaired. If the investee subsequently reports net income, the investor should resume applying the equity method only after its share of that net income equals the share of net losses not recognized during the period the equity method was suspended. For additional guidance, refer to FASB ASC 323-10.

Disclosures in a Venturer's Financial Statements

3.48 In addition to the presentation of the basic financial statements and required disclosures in those statements, paragraphs 1–3 of FASB ASC 323-10-50 describe additional disclosures relating to investments accounted for using the equity method of accounting. All of the following disclosure requirements generally apply to the equity method of accounting for investments in common stock:

- Financial statements of an investor should parenthetically disclose, in notes to financial statements or in separate statements or schedules,
 - the name of each investee and percentage of ownership of common stock.
 - the accounting policies of the investor with respect to investments in common stock. Disclosure shall include the names of any significant investee entities in which the investor holds 20 percent or more of the voting stock, but the common stock is not accounted for on the equity method, together with the reasons why the equity method

¹¹ See footnote 3.

is not considered appropriate, and the names of any significant investee corporations in which the investor holds less than 20 percent of the voting stock and the common stock is accounted for on the equity method, together with the reasons why the equity method is considered appropriate.

- the difference, if any, between the amount at which an investment is carried and the amount of underlying equity in net assets and the accounting treatment of the difference.
- For those investments in common stock for which a quoted market price is available, the aggregate value of each identified investment based on the quoted market price usually shall be disclosed. This disclosure is not required for investments in common stock of subsidiaries.
- If investments in common stock of corporate joint ventures or other investments accounted for under the equity method are, in the aggregate, material in relation to the financial position or results of operations of an investor, it may be necessary for summarized information about assets, liabilities, and results of operations of the investees to be presented in the notes or in separate statements, either individually or in groups, as appropriate.
- Conversion of outstanding convertible securities, exercise of outstanding options and warrants, and other contingent issuances of an investee may have a significant effect on an investor's share of reported earnings or losses. Accordingly, material effects of possible conversions, exercises, or contingent issuances shall be disclosed in notes to financial statements of an investor.

For disclosures related to consolidated financial statements and VIEs, readers should refer to the guidance in FASB ASC 810-10-50. When presenting financial statements that include cost-method investments, readers should refer to the guidance in FASB ASC 325-20-50.

3.49 Additional items that a venturer should consider for disclosure include

- any important provisions of the joint venture agreement.
- if the joint venture's financial statements are not fully consolidated with those of the venturer, separate or combined financial statements of the ventures in summary form, including disclosure of accounting principles of the ventures that differ significantly from those of the venturer.
- intercompany transactions during the period and the basis of intercompany billings and charges.
- liabilities and contingent liabilities arising from the joint venture arrangement, including venturer's obligations under guarantees.¹²

¹² See footnote 3.

Chapter 4

Financial Reporting by Affiliated Entities

4.01 Nonaccounting considerations, including taxation and exposure to legal liability, dictate the organizational structure and operating arrangements of many entities in the construction industry. As a result, many construction operations, when viewed as economic units, include several affiliated entities that are *related parties*, which, as defined in the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) glossary, includes affiliates of the entity. Related parties include

- entities for which investments in their equity securities would be required, absent the election of the fair value option in FASB ASC 825-10-15, to be accounted for by the equity method by the investing entity.
- trusts for the benefit of employees, such as pension and profit-sharing trusts that are managed by or under the trusteeship of management.
- principal owners of the entity and members of their immediate families.
- management of the entity and members of their immediate families.
- other parties with which the entity may enter into transactions if one party controls or can significantly influence the management or operating policies of the other to an extent that one of the transacting parties might be prevented from fully pursuing its own separate interests.
- other parties that can significantly influence the management or operating policies of the transacting parties or that have an ownership interest in one of the transacting parties and can significantly influence the other to an extent that one or more of the transacting parties might be prevented from fully pursuing its own separate interests.

An *affiliated entity*, as defined by the FASB ASC glossary, is an entity that directly or indirectly controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with another entity. The definition also includes a party with which the entity may deal if one party has the ability to exercise significant influence over the other's operating and financial policies.

4.02 As discussed in FASB ASC 323-10-15, determining the ability of an investor, or an entity, to exercise significant influence over another entity is not always clear and applying judgment is necessary to assess the status of each investment. Several factors may determine the ability of an investor or entity to exercise significant influence over the entity including the following:

- Representation on the board of directors
- Participation in policy-making processes
- Material intra-entity transactions
- Interchange of managerial personnel
- Technological dependency

- Extent of ownership by an investor in relation to the concentration of other shareholdings in the investee

Paragraphs 6–11 of FASB ASC 323-10-15 further define *significant influence* and explain how to determine if significant influence exists.

4.03 The owners of closely held construction contractors may establish separate legal entities to acquire equipment or real estate that are then leased to the contractor. The separate financial statements of the members of the group usually cannot stand on their own because they may not reflect appropriate contract revenue, costs, or overhead allocations and because transactions may be unduly influenced by controlling related parties. A presumption exists that consolidated financial statements are more meaningful than separate financial statements and that they are usually necessary for a fair presentation when one of the entities in the consolidated group directly or indirectly has a controlling financial interest in the other entities.

4.04 FASB ASC 810, *Consolidation*, provides guidance for determining whether and how to consolidate another entity and the basis of presentation. FASB ASC 810-10-10-1 states that the purpose of consolidated statements is to present, primarily for the benefit of the owners and creditors of the parent, the results of operations and the financial position of a parent and all its subsidiaries essentially as if the consolidated group were a single economic entity. Among other types of investments by a reporting entity in an affiliated entity, FASB ASC 810 provides guidance and establishes requirements on the financial statement presentations of the following common types of investments that a reporting entity may have in another entity:

- Investments by a parent that constitute a controlling financial interest through direct or indirect ownership of a majority voting interest in a subsidiary
- Investments by a reporting entity in another entity that is not determined to be a variable interest entity (VIE) that constitute a controlling financial interest
- Investments by a reporting entity in another entity that is not determined to be a VIE that constitute a noncontrolling financial interest
- Investments by a reporting entity in a partnership or similar entity that is not determined to be a VIE
- Investments by a reporting entity in another entity that is determined to be a VIE¹

Combined Financial Statements

4.05 For the purpose of presenting financial condition, results of operations, and cash flows of a group of commonly controlled entities that generally

¹ For additional discussion of variable interest entities (VIEs), see the preceding chapter. Several technical practice aids issued by the AICPA provide additional guidance in the form of nonauthoritative questions and answers that address various topics relevant to VIEs, including (a) combined versus consolidated financial statements, (b) presenting stand-alone financial statements of a VIE, and (c) implications for the auditor's report if the reporting entity does not consolidate the VIE. Readers should refer to Technical Questions and Answers sections 1400.29–.31 (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*).

conduct their construction operations as, in effect, a single economic entity, FASB ASC 810-10-55-1B establishes that combined financial statements (as distinguished from consolidated financial statements) are likely to be more meaningful. The FASB ASC glossary defines *combined financial statements* as financial statements of a combined group of commonly controlled entities or commonly managed entities presented as those of a single economic unit. The combined group does not include the parent. Examples of circumstances in which combined financial statements may be useful, as provided in FASB ASC 810-10-55-1B, include the existence of several entities that are related in their operations or the existence of entities that are under common management.

4.06 FASB ASC 810-10-45-10 establishes, in the presentation of combined financial statements for a group of related entities, such as a group of commonly controlled entities, that intraentity transactions and profits or losses should be eliminated and that noncontrolling interests, foreign operations, different fiscal periods, or income taxes should be treated in the same manner as consolidated financial statements.

4.07 The disclosures required in consolidated financial statements should be made, as well as disclosures relating specifically to combined financial statements. These include

- a statement to the effect that combined financial statements are not those of a separate legal entity.
- the names and year-ends of the major entities included in the combined group.
- the nature of the relationship between the entities.

The capital of each entity should be disclosed on the face of the financial statements or in a note, either in detail by entity if the number of entities is small or, if detailed disclosure is not practicable, in condensed form with an explanation of how the information was accumulated.

Presentation of Separate Financial Statements of Members of an Affiliated Group

4.08 Consolidated or combined financial statements of affiliated entities as the primary financial statements of an economic unit are normally recommended, but the needs of specific users may sometimes necessitate the presentation of separate financial statements for individual members of an affiliated group. The issuer of separate financial statements for a member of an affiliated group should make appropriate disclosures of related parties.

4.09 As provided in FASB ASC 850-10-05-3, examples of related party transactions include transactions between a parent entity and its subsidiaries, subsidiaries of a common parent, an entity and trusts for the benefit of employees, an entity and its principal owners, management, or members of their immediate families, and affiliates. FASB ASC defines *affiliate* as a party that, directly or indirectly through one or more intermediaries, controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with an entity.

4.10 In accordance with FASB ASC 850-10-50-1, financial statements of a reporting entity that has participated in material related party transactions should disclose, individually or in the aggregate, the following:

- The nature of the relationship(s) involved²
- A description of the transactions, including transactions to which no amounts or nominal amounts were ascribed, for each of the periods for which income statements are presented, and such other information deemed necessary to an understanding of the effects of the transactions on the financial statements
- The dollar amounts of transactions for each of the periods for which income statements are presented and the effects of any change in the method of establishing the terms from that used in the preceding period
- Amounts due from or to related parties as of the date of each balance sheet presented and, if not otherwise apparent, the terms and manner of settlement
- The information required by FASB ASC 740-10-50-17 related to deferred taxes

4.11 Additionally, FASB ASC 850-10-50-2 requires notes or accounts receivable from affiliated entities to be shown separately and not included under a general heading, such as notes receivable or accounts receivable.

Presentation of Separate Financial Statements of Members of an Affiliated Group That Constitute an Economic Unit

4.12 Presentation in a note to the financial statements of the condensed consolidated or combined balance sheet and statement of income of the members of the affiliated group that constitute the economic unit is also recommended.

² As established by the Financial Accounting Standards Board *Accounting Standards Codification* 850-10-50-6, if the reporting entity and one or more other entities are under common ownership or management control and the existence of that control could result in operating results or financial position of the reporting entity significantly different from those that would have been obtained if the entities were autonomous, the nature of the control relationship shall be disclosed even though there are no transactions between the entities.

Chapter 5

Other Accounting Considerations

5.01 The fair value measurement provisions in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 820, Fair Value Measurement*, and FASB ASC 825, *Financial Instruments*, set forth many considerations affecting the way construction contractors determine the fair value of their financial assets and financial liabilities, including investments in debt and equity securities and derivative instruments, transferred receivables, and financial assets and financial liabilities acquired in a business combination. In addition, this statement affects the definition of fair values used to measure nonfinancial assets and liabilities, including the following:

- Certain impaired assets and liabilities (see paragraphs 5.32–.37)
- Goodwill and intangible assets (see paragraphs 5.38–.49)
- Assets retirement obligations (see paragraphs 5.50–.56)
- Nonmonetary transactions (see paragraph 3.10)
- Assets and liabilities acquired in a business combination

Fair Value Measurements

5.02 FASB Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2011-04, *Fair Value Measurement (Topic 820): Amendments to Achieve Common Fair Value Measurement and Disclosure Requirements in U.S. GAAP and IFRSs*, as noted in FASB ASC 820-10-05-1, defines *fair value*, establishes a framework for measuring fair value, and requires disclosures about fair value measurements. The following paragraphs summarize FASB ASC 820 but are not intended as a substitute for reading FASB ASC 820 in its entirety.

5.03 FASB ASC 820-10-15 states that, with certain exceptions, the guidance in FASB ASC 820 applies when U.S. generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) require or permit fair value measurements or disclosures about fair value measurements. It also applies to measurements, such as fair value less costs to sell, based on fair value or disclosures about those measurements.

Definition of Fair Value

5.04 The FASB ASC glossary defines *fair value* as "the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date." "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 820-10-35-5 states that a fair value measurement assumes that the transaction to sell the asset or transfer the liability occurs in the principal market for the asset or liability or, in the absence of a principal market, the most advantageous market for the asset or liability. "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 820-10-20 defines the *principal market* as the market with the greatest volume and level of activity for the asset or liability and the *most advantageous market* as the market that maximizes the amount that would be received to sell the asset or minimizes the amount that would be paid to transfer the liability, after taking into account transaction costs and transportation costs. Although an entity must be able to access the market, it does not need to be able to sell the particular asset or transfer the particular liability on the measurement date to be able to measure fair value on the basis of the price in that market.

5.05 "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 820-10-35-6C states that even when there is no observable market to provide pricing information about the sale of an asset or the transfer of a liability at the measurement date, a fair value measurement assumes that a transaction takes place at that date, considered from the perspective of a market participant that holds the asset or owes the liability. That assumed transaction establishes a basis for estimating the price to sell the asset or to transfer the liability.

5.06 The definition of fair value focuses on the price that would be received to sell the asset or paid to transfer the liability (an exit price), not the price that would be paid to acquire the asset or received to assume the liability (an entry price). Conceptually, entry prices and exit prices are different, however, "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 820-10-30-3 explains that, in many cases, a transaction price will equal the fair value. Even with that said, when determining whether fair value equals the transaction price, an entity should take into account factors specific to the transactions. "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 820-10-30-3A provides conditions for which a transaction price might not represent the fair value of an asset or a liability.

5.07 One such condition is if the transaction price includes transaction costs (costs that result directly from and are essential to a transaction and that would not have been incurred by the entity had it not decided to sell the asset or transfer the liability). "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 820-10-35-9B provides that the price in the principal (or most advantageous) market should not be adjusted for transaction costs. Transaction costs are not a characteristic of the asset or liability measured. However, as noted in "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 820-10-35-9C, if location is a characteristic of the asset (as might be the case, for example, for a commodity), the price in the principal (or most advantageous) market should be adjusted for the costs, if any, that would be incurred to transport the asset from its current location to that market. That is, transaction costs do not include costs that would be incurred to transport an asset from its current location to its principal (or most advantageous) market.

Fair Value of Nonfinancial Assets

5.08 "Pending Content" in paragraphs 10A–14 of FASB ASC 820-10-35 provides guidance for the fair value measurement of nonfinancial assets. A fair value measurement of a nonfinancial asset takes into account a market participant's ability to generate economic benefits by using the asset in its highest and best use or by selling it to another market participant that would use the asset in its highest and best use, considering the use of the asset that is physically possible, legally permissible, and financially feasible at the measurement date. An entity may not intend to use the nonfinancial asset according to its highest and best use; nevertheless, the entity should measure the fair value of a nonfinancial asset assuming its highest and best use by market participants.

5.09 "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 820-10-35-10E provides that the highest and best use for an asset is established by one of two valuation premises. A nonfinancial asset might provide maximum value to market participants through its use in combination with other assets as a group (as installed or otherwise configured for use) or in combination with other assets and liabilities (for example, a business). If so, a nonfinancial asset's fair value should be based on the price that would be received in a current transaction to sell the asset assuming that the asset would be used with other assets or with other assets

and liabilities and that those assets and liabilities (that is, its complementary assets and the associated liabilities) would be available to market participants. Alternatively, a nonfinancial asset might provide maximum value to market participants on a standalone basis. If the highest and best use of the asset is to use it on a standalone basis, the fair value of the asset is the price that would be received in a current transaction to sell the asset to market participants that would use the asset on a standalone basis.

Fair Value of Liabilities

5.10 "Pending Content" in paragraphs 16–18C of FASB ASC 820-10-35, provide guidance for the fair value measurement of liabilities. The fair value of a liability reflects the effect of nonperformance risk (the risk that an entity will not fulfill an obligation). Nonperformance risk is assumed to be the same before and after the transfer of the liability. Because nonperformance risk includes (but may not be limited to), a reporting entity's own credit risk, an entity should take into account the effect of its credit standing and any other factors that might influence the likelihood that the obligation will or will not be fulfilled when measuring the fair value of a liability. If the fair value option is elected for a liability issued with an inseparable third-party credit enhancement (for example, debt that is issued with a contractual third-party guarantee), "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 825-10-25-13 states the unit of accounting for the liability does not include the effects of the third-party credit enhancement when the issuer of the liability measures or discloses the fair value of the liability.

5.11 When a quoted price for the transfer of an identical or a similar liability is not available and the identical item is held by another party as an asset, an entity should measure the fair value of the liability from the perspective of a market participant that holds the identical item as an asset at the measurement date. An entity should adjust the quoted price of the liability held by another party as an asset only if there are factors specific to the asset that are not applicable to the fair value measurement of the liability. An entity should ensure that the price of the asset does not reflect the effect of a restriction preventing the sale of that asset. "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 820-10-35-16D includes some factors, including a third-party credit enhancement, that may indicate that the quoted price of the asset should be adjusted.

Valuation Techniques

5.12 To measure fair value, an entity should use valuation techniques that are appropriate in the circumstances and for which sufficient data are available, maximizing the use of relevant observable inputs and minimizing the use of unobservable inputs. Three widely used valuation techniques are the market approach, cost approach, and income approach. An entity should use valuation techniques consistent with one or more of those approaches to measure fair value. "Pending Content" in Paragraphs 3A–3G of FASB ASC 820-10-55 describe those valuation techniques as follows:

- The market approach uses prices and other relevant information generated by market transactions involving identical or comparable (that is, similar) assets, liabilities, or a group of assets and liabilities, such as a business. Valuation techniques consistent with the market approach include matrix pricing and often use market multiples derived from a set of comparables.

- The income approach converts future amounts (for example, cash flows or income and expenses) to a single current (that is, discounted) amount. When the income approach is used, the fair value measurement reflects current market expectations about those future amounts. Valuation techniques consistent with the income approach include present value techniques, option-pricing models, and the multiperiod excess earnings method.
- The cost approach reflects the amount that would be required currently to replace the service capacity of an asset (often referred to as current replacement cost). Fair value is determined based on the cost to a market participant (buyer) to acquire or construct a substitute asset of comparable utility, adjusted for obsolescence.

5.13 "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 820-10-35-24B explains that in some cases, a single valuation technique will be appropriate (for example, when valuing an asset or a liability using quoted prices in an active market for identical assets or liabilities). In other cases, multiple valuation techniques will be appropriate (for example, that might be the case when valuing a reporting unit). If multiple valuation techniques are used to measure fair value, the results (that is, respective indications of fair value) should be evaluated considering the reasonableness of the range of values indicated by those results. A fair value measurement is the point within that range that is most representative of fair value in the circumstances. Example 3 (paragraphs 35–41) of "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 820-10-55 illustrates the use of multiple valuation techniques.

5.14 Valuation techniques used to measure fair value should be applied consistently. However, a change in a valuation technique or its application is appropriate if the change results in a measurement that is equally or more representative of fair value in the circumstances. Such a change would be accounted for as a change in accounting estimate in accordance with the provisions of FASB ASC 250, *Accounting Changes and Error Corrections*.

Present Value Techniques

5.15 "Pending Content" in paragraphs 4–20 of FASB ASC 820-10-55 provide guidance on present value techniques, however, these paragraphs neither prescribe the use of one specific present value technique nor limit the use of present value techniques discussed therein. These paragraphs state that a fair value measurement of an asset or liability using present value techniques should capture all of the following elements from the perspective of market participants as of the measurement date:

- An estimate of future cash flows
- Expectations about possible variations in the amount and timing of the cash flows
- The time value of money
- The price for bearing the uncertainty inherent in the cash flows (risk premium)
- Other factors market participants would take into account in the circumstance
- In the case of a liability, the nonperformance risk relating to that liability, including the reporting entity's (obligor's) own credit risk

5.16 "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 820-10-55-6 provides the general principles that govern any present value technique, as follows:

- Cash flows and discount rates should reflect assumptions that market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability.
- Cash flows and discount rates should consider only factors attributed to the asset (or liability) being measured.
- To avoid double counting or omitting the effects of risk factors, discount rates should reflect assumptions that are consistent with those inherent in the cash flows. For example, a discount rate that reflects expectations about future defaults is appropriate if using the contractual cash flows of a loan but is not appropriate if the cash flows themselves are adjusted to reflect possible defaults.
- Assumptions about cash flows and discount rates should be internally consistent. For example, nominal cash flows (that include the effects of inflation) should be discounted at a rate that includes the effects of inflation.
- Discount rates should be consistent with the underlying economic factors of the currency in which the cash flows are denominated.

5.17 Present value techniques differ in how they adjust for risk and in the type of cash flows they use. For example, the discount rate adjustment technique (also called the traditional present value technique) uses a risk-adjusted discount rate and contractual, promised, or most likely cash flows. In contrast, expected present value techniques use the probability-weighted average of all possible cash flows (referred to as expected cash flows). The traditional present value technique and two methods of expected present value techniques are discussed more fully in "Pending Content" in paragraphs 4–20 of FASB ASC 820-10-55.

The Fair Value Hierarchy

5.18 FASB ASC 820 emphasizes that fair value is a market-based measurement, not an entity-specific measurement. Therefore, a fair value measurement should be determined based on the assumptions that market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability (referred to as *inputs*). "Pending Content" in paragraphs 37–54B of FASB ASC 820-10-35 establish a fair value hierarchy that distinguishes between (a) inputs that are developed using market data, such as publicly available information about actual events or transactions, and that reflect the assumptions that market participants would use when pricing the asset or liability (observable inputs) and (b) inputs for which market data are not available and that are developed using the best information available about the assumptions that market participants would use when pricing the asset or liability (unobservable inputs). Valuation techniques used to measure fair value should maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs.

5.19 The fair value hierarchy in FASB ASC 820 characterizes into three levels the inputs to valuation techniques used to measure fair value. The three levels, which are described in "Pending Content" in paragraphs 40–54A of FASB ASC 820-10-35, are as follows:

- Level 1 inputs are quoted prices (unadjusted) in active markets for identical assets or liabilities that the reporting entity has the ability to access at the measurement date. An *active market* is a

market in which transactions for the asset or liability take place with sufficient frequency and volume to provide pricing information on an ongoing basis. A quoted price in an active market provides the most reliable evidence of fair value and should be used without adjustment to measure fair value whenever available, except as discussed in FASB ASC 820-10-35-41C.

- Level 2 inputs are inputs other than quoted prices included within Level 1 that are observable for the asset or liability, either directly or indirectly. If the asset or liability has a specified (contractual) term, a Level 2 input must be observable for substantially the full term of the asset or liability. Level 2 inputs include the following:
 - quoted prices for similar assets or liabilities in active markets.
 - quoted prices for identical or similar assets or liabilities in markets that are not active.
 - inputs other than quoted prices that are observable for the asset or liability (for example, interest rates and yield curves observable at commonly quoted intervals, volatilities, and credit spreads).
 - inputs that are derived principally from or corroborated by observable market data by correlation or other means (market-corroborated inputs).

Adjustments to Level 2 inputs will vary depending on factors specific to the asset or liability. An adjustment to a Level 2 input that is significant to the entire measurement might result in a fair value measurement categorized within Level 3 of the fair value hierarchy if the adjustment uses significant unobservable inputs.

- Level 3 inputs are unobservable inputs for the asset or liability. Unobservable inputs should be used to measure fair value to the extent that relevant observable inputs are not available, thereby allowing for situations in which there is little, if any, market activity for the asset or liability at the measurement date. In developing unobservable inputs, the reporting entity need not undertake exhaustive efforts to obtain information about market participant assumptions. However, a reporting entity should take into account all information about market participant assumptions that is reasonably available. Unobservable inputs are developed using the best information available about the assumptions that market participants would use when pricing the asset or liability.

5.20 In some cases, the inputs used to measure the fair value of an asset or a liability might be categorized within different levels of the fair value hierarchy. In those cases, "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 820-10-35-37A states that the fair value measurement is categorized in its entirety in the same level of the fair value hierarchy as the lowest level input that is significant to the entire measurement.

5.21 As discussed in "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 820-10-35-38, the availability of relevant inputs and their relative subjectivity might affect the selection of appropriate valuation techniques. However, the fair value hierarchy prioritizes the inputs to valuation techniques, not the valuation techniques

used to measure fair value. For example, a fair value measurement developed using a present value technique might be categorized within level 2 or level 3, depending on the inputs that are significant to the entire measurement and the level of the fair value hierarchy within which those inputs are categorized.

Additional Guidance For Fair Value Measurement in Special Circumstances

5.22 FASB ASC 820-10-35 provides additional guidance for fair value measurements in the following circumstances:

- Measuring fair value of liabilities held by other parties as assets ("Pending Content" in paragraphs 16B–16D of FASB ASC 820-10-35)
- Measuring fair value when the volume or level of activity for an asset or a liability has significantly decreased ("Pending Content" in paragraphs 54C–54H of FASB ASC 820-10-35)
- Identifying transactions that are not orderly ("Pending Content" in paragraphs 54I–54J of FASB ASC 820-10-35)
- Using quoted prices provided by third parties ("Pending Content" in paragraphs 54K–54M of FASB ASC 820-10-35)
- Measuring the fair value of investments in certain entities that calculate net asset value per share or its equivalent ("Pending Content" in paragraphs 59–62 of FASB ASC 820-10-35)

Decrease in Market Activity

5.23 If there has been a significant decrease in the volume or level of activity for the asset or liability in relation to normal market activity for the asset or liability (or similar assets or liabilities), further analysis of the transactions or quoted prices is needed. A decrease in the volume or level of activity on its own may not indicate that a transaction price or quoted price does not represent fair value. However, if a reporting entity determines that a transaction or quoted price does not represent fair value (for example, there may be transactions that are not orderly), an adjustment will be necessary if the reporting entity uses those transactions or prices as a basis for measuring fair value. That adjustment may be significant to the fair value measurement in its entirety. Adjustments also may be necessary in other circumstances (for example, when a price for a similar asset requires significant adjustment to make it comparable to the asset being measured or when the price is stale). Further, if there has been a significant decrease in the volume or level of activity for the asset or liability, a change in valuation technique or the use of multiple valuation techniques may be appropriate (for example, the use of a market approach and a present value technique).

Transactions That Are Not Orderly

5.24 When measuring fair value, an entity should take into account transaction prices for orderly transactions. If evidence indicates that a transaction is not orderly, an entity should place little, if any, weight (compared with other indications of fair value) on that transaction price. When an entity does not have sufficient information to conclude whether particular transactions are orderly, it should place less weight on those transactions when compared with other transactions that are known to be orderly.

Quoted Prices Provided by Third Parties

5.25 An entity may use quoted prices provided by third parties, such as pricing services or brokers, if it has determined that those prices are developed in accordance with FASB ASC 820. More weight should be given to quotes provided by third parties that represent binding offers than to quotes that are indicative prices. Less weight (when compared with other indications of fair value that reflect the results of transactions) should be placed on quotes that do not reflect the result of transactions.

Investments in Entities That Calculate Net Asset Value per Share

5.26 An entity is permitted, as a practical expedient, to estimate the fair value of an investment using its net asset value per share (or its equivalent, such as member units or an ownership interest in partners' capital to which a proportionate share of net assets is attributed), if the net asset value per share of the investment (or its equivalent) is calculated in a manner consistent with the measurement principles of FASB ASC 946, *Financial Services—Investment Companies*, as of the measurement date.

Disclosures

5.27 "Pending Content" in paragraphs 1–8 of FASB ASC 820-10-50 require disclosures about assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring or nonrecurring basis on the balance sheet after initial recognition. The quantitative disclosures required should be presented in a tabular format. The disclosures do not apply to the initial measurement of an asset or liability at fair value. For assets and liabilities that are measured at fair value on the balance sheet after initial recognition, an entity should disclose information to help users of its financial statements assess the valuation techniques and inputs used to develop those measurements. For recurring fair value measurements using significant unobservable inputs (level 3), an entity should disclose information to help users assess the effects of the measurements on earnings. To meet those objectives an entity should consider all of the following, and disclose additional information necessary to meet the objectives:

- The level of detail necessary to satisfy the disclosure requirements
- How much emphasis to place on each of the various requirements
- How much aggregation or disaggregation to undertake
- Whether users of financial statements need additional information to evaluate the quantitative information disclosed.

Certain of the disclosures in FASB ASC 820-10-50 apply only to public entities, including entities that are conduit bond obligors for conduit debt securities that are traded in a public market (a domestic or foreign stock exchange or an over-the-counter market, including local or regional markets).

Fair Value Option

5.28 The "Fair Value Option" subsections of FASB ASC 825-10 permit an entity to irrevocably elect fair value as the initial and subsequent measure for many financial instruments and certain other items, with changes in fair value recognized in the income statement as those changes occur. Paragraphs 4–6 of FASB ASC 815-15-25 similarly permit an elective fair value remeasurement for any hybrid financial instrument that contains an embedded derivative, if that embedded derivative would otherwise have to be separated from its debt

host contract in conformity with FASB ASC 815-15. An election is made on an instrument-by-instrument basis (with certain exceptions), generally when an instrument is initially recognized in the financial statements.

5.29 The "Fair Value Option" subsection of FASB ASC 825-10-15 describes the financial assets and liabilities for which the option is available. Most financial assets and financial liabilities are eligible to be recognized using the fair value option, as are firm commitments for financial instruments and certain nonfinancial contracts.

5.30 Specifically excluded from eligibility are investments in other entities that are required to be consolidated, employer's and plan's obligations under postemployment, postretirement plans, and deferred compensation arrangements (or assets representing overfunded positions in those plans), financial assets and liabilities recognized under leases, deposit liabilities of depository institutions, and financial instruments that are, in whole or in part, classified by the issuer as a component of shareholder's equity. Additionally, the election cannot be made for most nonfinancial assets and liabilities or for current or deferred income taxes.

5.31 FASB ASC 825-10-45 and FASB ASC 825-10-50 establish presentation and disclosure requirements designed to facilitate comparisons between entities that choose different measurement attributes for similar types of assets and liabilities. Entities should report assets and liabilities that are measured using the fair value option in a manner that separates those reported fair values from the carrying amounts of similar assets and liabilities measured using another measurement attribute. To accomplish that, an entity should either (a) report the aggregate carrying amount for both fair value and non-fair-value items on a single line, with the fair value amount parenthetically disclosed or (b) present separate lines for the fair value carrying amounts and the non-fair-value carrying amounts.

Impairment of Long-Lived Assets

Property, Plant, and Equipment

5.32 Many construction contractors have considerable amounts of owned equipment on their books that need to be routinely tested for impairment. FASB ASC 360-10 addresses financial accounting and reporting for the impairment or disposal of long-lived assets. The FASB ASC glossary defines *impairment* as the condition that exists when the carrying amount of a long-lived asset (asset group) exceeds its fair value. The FASB ASC glossary defines an *asset group* as the unit of accounting for a long-lived asset or assets to be held and used, which represents the lowest level for which identifiable cash flows are largely independent of the cash flows of other groups of assets and liabilities.

5.33 FASB ASC 360-10-35-21 establishes that a long-lived asset (asset group) should be tested for recoverability whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that its carrying amount may not be recoverable. The following are examples of such events or changes in circumstances:

- A significant decrease in the market price of a long-lived asset (asset group).

- A significant adverse change in the extent or manner in which a long-lived asset (asset group) is being used or in its physical condition.
- A significant adverse change in legal factors or in the business climate that could affect the value of a long-lived asset (asset group), including an adverse action or assessment by a regulator.
- An accumulation of costs significantly in excess of the amount originally expected for the acquisition or construction of a long-lived asset (asset group).
- A current-period operating or cash flow loss combined with a history of operating or cash flow losses or a projection or forecast that demonstrates continuing losses associated with the use of a long-lived asset (asset group).
- A current expectation that, more likely than not, a long-lived asset (asset group) will be sold or otherwise disposed of significantly before the end of its previously estimated useful life. The term *more likely than not* refers to a level of likelihood that is more than 50 percent.

5.34 FASB ASC 360-10-35-17 provides that an impairment loss should be recognized only if the carrying amount of a long-lived asset (asset group) is not recoverable and exceeds its fair value. The carrying amount of a long-lived asset (asset group) is not recoverable if it exceeds the sum of the undiscounted cash flows expected to result from the use and eventual disposition of the asset (asset group). That assessment should be based on the carrying amount of the asset (asset group) at the date it is tested for recoverability, whether in use or under development. An impairment loss should be measured as the amount by which the carrying amount of a long-lived asset (asset group) exceeds its fair value. FASB ASC 820, discussed earlier in this chapter, provides guidance on fair value measurements.

5.35 As explained in FASB ASC 360-10-35-22, when a long-lived asset (asset group) is tested for recoverability, it also may be necessary to review depreciation estimates and methods as required by FASB ASC 250 or the amortization period as required by FASB ASC 350, *Intangibles—Goodwill and Other*. Any revision to the remaining useful life of a long-lived asset resulting from that review also should be considered in developing estimates of future cash flows used to test the asset (asset group) for recoverability. However, any change in the accounting method for the asset resulting from that review should be made only after applying the provisions of FASB ASC 360-10.

5.36 FASB ASC 360, *Property, Plant, and Equipment*, provides guidance on the circumstances in which long-lived assets may be disposed of other than by sale. FASB ASC 360-10-35-47 explains that a long-lived asset to be abandoned is disposed of when it ceases to be used. If an entity commits to a plan to abandon a long-lived asset before the end of its previously estimated useful life, depreciation estimates should be revised in accordance with paragraphs 17–20 of FASB ASC 250-10-45 and FASB ASC 250-10-50-4 to reflect the use of the asset over its shortened useful life. FASB ASC 360-10-40-4 states that a long-lived asset to be disposed of in an exchange measured based on the recorded amount of the nonmonetary asset relinquished or to be distributed to owners in a spinoff is disposed of when it is exchanged or distributed.

5.37 In accordance with FASB ASC 360-10-35-43, a long-lived asset (disposal group) classified as held for sale should be measured at the lower of its carrying amount or fair value less cost to sell. If the asset (disposal group) is newly acquired, the carrying amount of the asset (disposal group) should be established based on its fair value less cost to sell at the acquisition date. A long-lived asset should not be depreciated (amortized) while it is classified as held for sale. Interest and other expenses attributable to the liabilities of a disposal group classified as held for sale should continue to be accrued.

Intangibles—Goodwill

5.38 FASB ASC 350-20 addresses financial accounting and reporting for goodwill subsequent to its acquisition and for the cost of internally developing goodwill. The following paragraphs summarize some of the major provisions of FASB ASC 350-20 but are not intended as a substitute for reviewing FASB ASC 350-20 in its entirety.

5.39 *Goodwill*, as defined in the FASB ASC glossary, is the excess of the cost of an acquired entity over the net of the amounts assigned to assets acquired and liabilities assumed. The amount recognized as goodwill includes acquired intangible assets that do not meet the criteria in FASB ASC 805 for recognition as an asset apart from goodwill. "Pending Content" in paragraphs 1–3 of FASB ASC 350-20-35 explain that goodwill should not be amortized. Instead, goodwill should be tested for impairment at a level of reporting referred to as a reporting unit. The FASB ASC glossary defines *reporting unit* as an operating segment or one level below an operating segment (also known as a component). Impairment is the condition that exists when the carrying amount of goodwill exceeds its implied fair value. The fair value of goodwill can be measured only as a residual and cannot be measured directly. Therefore, FASB ASC 350-20-35 sets forth a methodology for determining a reasonable estimate of the value of goodwill for purposes of measuring an impairment loss.

5.40 The entity may first perform a qualitative assessment to determine whether it is necessary to perform the two-step goodwill impairment test discussed in "Pending Content" in paragraphs 4-19 of FASB 350-20-35. Note that the entity has an unconditional option to bypass the qualitative assessment for any reporting unit in any period and proceed directly to performing the first step of the goodwill impairment test. The entity may resume performing the qualitative assessment in any subsequent period.

5.41 In evaluating whether it is more likely than not that the fair value of a reporting unit is less than its carrying amount, an entity shall assess relevant events and circumstances. Examples of such events and circumstances include the following:

- a. Macroeconomic conditions such as a deterioration in general economic conditions, limitations on accessing capital, fluctuations in foreign exchange rates, or other developments in equity and credit markets
- b. Industry and market considerations such as a deterioration in the environment in which an entity operates, an increased competitive environment, a decline in market-dependent multiples or metrics (consider in both absolute terms and relative to peers), a change in the market for an entity's products or services, or a regulatory or political development

- c. Cost factors such as increases in raw materials, labor, or other costs that have a negative effect on earnings and cash flows
- d. Overall financial performance such as negative or declining cash flows or a decline in actual or planned revenue or earnings compared with actual and projected results of relevant prior periods
- e. Other relevant entity-specific events such as changes in management, key personnel, strategy, or customers; contemplation of bankruptcy; or litigation
- f. Events affecting a reporting unit such as a change in the composition or carrying amount of its net assets, a more-likely-than-not expectation of selling or disposing all, or a portion, of a reporting unit, the testing for recoverability of a significant asset group within a reporting unit, or recognition of a goodwill impairment loss in the financial statements of a subsidiary that is a component of a reporting unit
- g. If applicable, a sustained decrease in share price (consider in both absolute terms and relative to peers).

Note that this listing is not all-inclusive and the entity should consider other relevant events and circumstances that could affect the fair value or carrying amount of a reporting unit in determining whether to perform the first step of the goodwill impairment test.

5.42 The entity should consider the extent to which each of the adverse events and circumstances identified could affect the comparison of a reporting unit's fair value with its carrying amount. The entity should place more weight on the events and circumstances that most affect a reporting unit's fair value or the carrying amount of its net assets. The entity also should consider positive and mitigating events and circumstances that may affect its determination of whether it is more likely than not that the fair value of a reporting unit is less than its carrying amount. If the entity has a recent fair value calculation for a reporting unit, it also should include as a factor in its consideration the difference between the fair value and the carrying amount in reaching its conclusion about whether to perform the first step of the goodwill impairment test.

5.43 The entity should evaluate, on the basis of the weight of evidence, the significance of all identified events and circumstances in the context of determining whether it is more likely than not that the fair value of a reporting unit is less than its carrying amount.

5.44 If, after assessing the totality of events or circumstances such as those described in paragraph 5.39, preceding, the entity determines that it is *not* more likely than not that the fair value of a reporting unit is less than its carrying amount, then the first and second steps of the goodwill impairment test are unnecessary.

5.45 However, if, after assessing the totality of events or circumstances such as those described in paragraph 5.39, preceding, the entity determines that it *is* more likely than not that the fair value of a reporting unit is less than its carrying amount, then the entity should perform the first step of the two-step goodwill impairment test.

5.46 If determined to be necessary, the two-step impairment test discussed in "Pending Content" in paragraphs 6 and 8A and in paragraphs 4, 5,

7, 8, and 9–19 of FASB ASC 350-20-35 should be used to identify potential goodwill impairment and measure the amount of a goodwill impairment loss to be recognized (if any).

Intangibles—Other

© Update 5-1 *Accounting and Reporting: Goodwill*

FASB ASU No. 2012-02, *Intangibles—Goodwill and Other (Topic 350): Testing Indefinite-Lived Intangible Assets for Impairment*, issued in July 2012, is effective for entities for fiscal years, and interim periods within those years, beginning after September 15, 2012. Early adoption is permitted, including for annual and interim impairment tests performed as of a date before July 27, 2012, if a public entity's financial statements for the most recent annual or interim period have not yet been issued or, for nonpublic entities, have not yet been made available for issuance.

Refer to section A.01 in appendix A of this guide for more information on this ASU if applicable to your reporting period.

5.47 FASB ASC 350-30 addresses financial accounting and reporting for intangible assets (other than goodwill) acquired individually or with a group of other assets. The following paragraphs summarize some of the major provisions of FASB ASC 350-30 but are not intended as a substitute for reviewing FASB ASC 350-30 in its entirety.

5.48 The FASB ASC glossary defines *intangibles* as assets (not including financial assets) that lack physical substance. The term *intangible assets* is used to refer to intangible assets other than goodwill. FASB ASC 350-30-35-1 states that the accounting for a recognized intangible asset is based on its useful life to the reporting entity. An intangible asset with a finite useful life shall be amortized; an intangible asset with an indefinite useful life shall not be amortized. Paragraphs 18–20 of FASB ASC 350-30-35 explain that an intangible asset that is not subject to amortization should be tested for impairment annually, or more frequently if events or changes in circumstances indicate that the asset might be impaired. FASB ASC 360-10-35-21 includes examples of impairment indicators. The impairment test should consist of a comparison of the fair value of an intangible asset with its carrying amount. If the carrying amount of an intangible asset exceeds its fair value, an impairment loss should be recognized in an amount equal to that excess. After an impairment loss is recognized, the adjusted carrying amount of the intangible asset should be its new accounting basis. Subsequent reversal of a previously recognized impairment loss is prohibited.

5.49 FASB ASC 350-30-35-14 explains that an intangible asset that is subject to amortization should be reviewed for impairment in accordance with the impairment provisions applicable to long-lived assets in FASB ASC 360. In accordance with the recognition and measurement provisions in FASB ASC 360-10, an impairment loss should be recognized if the carrying amount of an intangible asset is not recoverable and if its carrying amount exceeds its fair value. After an impairment loss is recognized, the adjusted carrying amount of the intangible asset should be its new accounting basis. Subsequent reversal of a previously recognized impairment loss is prohibited.

Asset Retirement Obligations

5.50 FASB ASC 410-20 establishes accounting standards for recognition and measurement of a liability for an asset retirement obligation and the associated asset retirement cost. The following paragraphs summarize some of the major provisions of FASB ASC 410-20 but are not intended as a substitute for reviewing FASB ASC 410-20 in its entirety.

5.51 Many construction contractors have mining operations or asphalt or concrete plants that have significant dismantling and restoration costs associated with retirement of the assets. FASB ASC 410-20 addresses financial accounting and reporting for *asset retirement obligations*, which are defined by the FASB ASC glossary as obligations associated with the retirement of a tangible long-lived asset. The FASB ASC glossary defines *retirement* as the other-than-temporary removal of a long-lived asset from service. That term encompasses sale, abandonment, recycling, or disposal in some other manner. However, it does not encompass the temporary idling of a long-lived asset. The guidance in FASB ASC 410-20 applies to the following:

- Legal obligations associated with the retirement of a tangible long-lived asset that result from the acquisition, construction, development or the normal operation of a long-lived asset, including any legal obligations that require disposal of a replaced part that is a component of a tangible long-lived asset. The FASB ASC glossary defines a *legal obligation* as an obligation that a party is required to settle as a result of an existing or enacted law, statute, ordinance, or written or oral contract or by legal construction of a contract under the doctrine of promissory estoppel.
- An environmental remediation liability that results from the normal operation of a long-lived asset and that is associated with the retirement of that asset.
- A conditional obligation to perform a retirement activity. The FASB ASC glossary defines a *conditional asset retirement obligation* as a legal obligation to perform an asset retirement activity in which the timing and method of settlement are conditional on a future event that may or may not be within the control of the entity. Uncertainty about the timing of settlement of the asset retirement obligation does not remove that obligation from the scope of FASB ASC 410-20 but will affect the measurement of a liability for that obligation.
- Obligations of a lessor in connection with leased property that meet the provisions in the preceding first list item.
- The costs associated with the retirement of a specified asset that qualifies as historical waste equipment as defined by EU Directive 2002/96/EC.

5.52 Exclusions to the guidance in FASB ASC 410-20-15 include

- obligations that arise solely from a plan to sell or otherwise dispose of a long-lived asset covered by FASB ASC 360-10.
- an environmental remediation liability that results from the improper operation of a long-lived asset as covered by FASB ASC 410-30.

- activities necessary to prepare an asset for an alternative use as they are not associated with the retirement of the asset.
- obligations associated with maintenance, rather than retirement, of a long-lived asset
- the cost of a replacement part that is a component of a long-lived asset.

FASB ASC 410-20-15-3 provides additional exclusions to which the preceding guidance on asset retirement obligations does not apply.

5.53 Paragraphs 4–6 of FASB ASC 410-20-25 establish that the entity should recognize the fair value of a liability for an asset retirement obligation in the period in which it is incurred if a reasonable estimate of fair value can be made. If a reasonable estimate of fair value cannot be made in the period the asset retirement obligation is incurred, the liability should be recognized when a reasonable estimate of fair value can be made. Upon initial recognition of a liability for an asset retirement obligation, an entity should capitalize an asset retirement cost by increasing the carrying amount of the related long-lived asset by the same amount as the liability. The FASB ASC glossary defines *asset retirement cost* as the amount capitalized that increases the carrying amount of the long-lived asset when a liability for an asset retirement obligation is recognized.

5.54 FASB ASC 410-20-25-6 states that an entity should identify all its asset retirement obligations. An entity has sufficient information to reasonably estimate the fair value of an asset retirement obligation if any of the following conditions exist:

- It is evident that the fair value of the obligation is embodied in the acquisition price of the asset.
- An active market exists for the transfer of the obligation.
- Sufficient information exists to apply an expected present value technique.

5.55 FASB ASC 410-20-30-1 explains that an expected present value technique will usually be the only appropriate technique with which to estimate the fair value of a liability for an asset retirement obligation. Paragraphs 2–5 of FASB ASC 410-20-35 provide that an entity should subsequently allocate that asset retirement cost to expense using a systematic and rational method over its useful life. In periods subsequent to initial measurement, an entity should recognize period-to-period changes in the liability for an asset retirement obligation resulting from the following:

- The passage of time
- Revisions to either the timing or the amount of the original estimate of undiscounted cash flows

5.56 An entity should measure and incorporate changes due to the passage of time into the carrying amount of the liability before measuring changes resulting from a revision to either the timing or the amount of estimated cash flows. An entity should measure changes in the liability for an asset retirement obligation due to passage of time by applying an interest method of allocation to the amount of the liability at the beginning of the period. The interest rate used to measure that change should be the credit-adjusted risk-free rate that existed when the liability, or portion thereof, was initially measured. That amount

should be recognized as an increase in the carrying amount of the liability and as an expense classified as accretion expense. The FASB ASC glossary defines *accretion expense* as an amount recognized as an expense classified as an operating item in the statement of income resulting from the increase in the carrying amount of the liability associated with the asset retirement obligation.

Mandatorily Redeemable Stock¹

5.57 FASB ASC 480, *Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity*, establishes standards for how an issuer classifies and measures in its statement of financial position certain financial instruments with characteristics of both liabilities and equity. FASB ASC 480-10-25-8 requires that an issuer classify a financial instrument that is within its scope as a liability (or an asset in some circumstances) because that financial instrument embodies an obligation of the issuer. "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 480-10-25-4 states that a mandatorily redeemable financial instrument should be classified as a liability unless the redemption is required to occur only upon the liquidation or termination of the reporting entity. "Pending Content" in the FASB ASC glossary defines a *mandatorily redeemable financial instrument* as any of various financial instruments issued in the form of shares that embody an unconditional obligation requiring the issuer to redeem the instrument by transferring its assets at a specified or determinable date (or dates) or upon an event that is certain to occur. "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 480-10-55-4 states that an example of a mandatorily redeemable financial instrument is a stock that must be redeemed upon the death or termination of the individual who holds it, which is an event that is certain to occur. Moreover, "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 480-10-30-1 states that mandatorily redeemable financial instruments should be measured initially at fair value.

5.58 FASB ASC 480-10-65-1 states that the effective date of FASB ASC 480 is deferred for mandatorily redeemable financial instruments issued by nonpublic entities that are not Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) registrants, as follows:

- For instruments that are mandatorily redeemable on fixed dates for amounts that either are fixed or are determined by reference to an interest rate index, currency index, or another external index, the classification, measurement, and disclosure provisions of FASB ASC 480 were effective for fiscal periods beginning after December 15, 2004.
- For all other financial instruments that are mandatorily redeemable, the classification, measurement, and disclosure provisions of FASB ASC 480 are deferred indefinitely pending further FASB action.

¹ This guidance is codified at Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 480-10 and is labeled as "Pending Content" due to the transition and open effective date information discussed in FASB ASC 480-10-65-1.

FASB plans to reconsider implementation issues and, perhaps, classification or measurement guidance for those noncontrolling interests during the deferral period, in conjunction with FASB's ongoing projects. During the deferral period for certain mandatorily redeemable noncontrolling interests, all public entities as well as nonpublic entities that are Securities and Exchange Commission registrants are required to follow the disclosure requirements in paragraphs 1–3 of FASB ASC 480-10-50 as well as disclosures required by other applicable guidance.

- Mandatorily redeemable financial instruments issued by SEC registrants are not eligible for either of those deferrals.

Other deferral provisions apply. Refer to FASB ASC, available on the FASB website at www.fasb.org, for the full text of the accounting standards.

5.59 FASB ASC 480 may have a significant impact on the financial statements of construction contractors. Many contractors are closely held, and many of them have buy-sell agreements requiring the entity to redeem the shares of the owners in the event of death or disability or other leave of employment. It is possible that such buy-sell agreements for share redemption would meet the definition of *mandatorily redeemable financial instruments* under FASB ASC 480. The application of the requirements of FASB ASC 480 may have significant effects on financial information and financial ratios of construction contractors, which could affect compliance with existing requirements of loan agreements, surety bonds, and other agreements.

Differences Between Financial Accounting and Income Tax Accounting

5.60 Differing and often conflicting objectives and needs in determining income for current income tax reporting and for financial reporting have led to the practice, common in the construction industry, of measuring income for income tax purposes by methods different from those used for financial reporting purposes.

5.61 As previously discussed, income determination in the construction contracting industry involves many varied and changing conditions over which a contractor may have little control. Under most contracts, cash payments, which frequently represent amounts in excess of contract profit, are withheld by the owner until final acceptance of the project and are paid to the contractor in a period or periods different from those in which the income is earned. Those conditions have led contractors to adopt acceptable income tax reporting policies that defer income recognition for tax purposes until contracts are completed or that report income from contracts on a cash basis or on the basis of billings.

5.62 Despite the acceptability and appropriateness of such methods for determining current tax payments, it is essential that the contractor, when measuring current financial status for financial reporting purposes, take into account all known factors regarding contract performance. The financial reports serve as the basis for management planning and control. The reports also provide bonding companies and lenders with information on the current contract and financial status.

5.63 The differences between the periodic amounts of contract income reported during the term of a contract for financial reporting and income tax purposes result in temporary differences FASB ASC 740, *Income Taxes*, is the primary FASB ASC topic for financial statement accounting for income taxes.

5.64 FASB ASC 740-10-15-2AA clarifies that the sections of FASB ASC 740-10 relating to accounting for uncertain tax positions are applicable to all entities, including tax-exempt not-for-profit entities, pass-through entities, and entities that are taxed in a manner similar to pass-through entities such as real estate investment trusts and registered investment companies. *Tax position*,

as defined by the FASB ASC glossary, is a position in a previously filed tax return or a position expected to be taken in a future tax return that is reflected in measuring current or deferred income tax assets and liabilities for interim or annual periods. A tax position can result in a permanent reduction of income taxes payable, a deferral of income taxes otherwise currently payable to future years, or a change in the expected realizability of deferred tax assets. The term tax position also encompasses, but is not limited to

- a decision not to file a tax return.
- an allocation or a shift of income between jurisdictions.
- the characterization of income or a decision to exclude reporting taxable income in a tax return.
- a decision to classify a transaction, entity, or other position in a tax return as tax exempt.
- an entity's status, including its status as a pass-through entity or a tax-exempt not-for-profit entity.

5.65 FASB ASC 740 establishes financial accounting and reporting standards for the effects of income taxes that result from an entity's activities during the current and preceding years. It requires an asset and liability approach for financial accounting and reporting for income taxes. FASB ASC 740-10-05-7 states deferred tax assets and liabilities represent the future effects on income taxes that result from temporary differences and carryforwards that exist at the end of a period. FASB ASC 740-10-05-7 states the tax effects of transactions are measured using enacted tax rates and provisions of the enacted tax law and are not discounted to reflect the time-value of money. As established in FASB ASC 740-10-25-47, the effects of changes in tax rates or tax laws should be recognized at the date of enactment. When deferred tax accounts are adjusted for the effect of a change in tax laws or rates, the effect should be included in income from continuing operations for the period that includes the enactment date. FASB ASC 740-10-25-32 clarifies that the recognition of deferred tax assets and liabilities may have limited application to a nontaxable entity (for example, a partnership) that may not pay income taxes at the entity level.

5.66 Many of the various types of temporary differences are the same for contractors as they are for other business enterprises. In addition, the following operating and financial reporting characteristics in the construction industry affect the nature and types of temporary differences in the industry:

- For reasons previously discussed, it is often not desirable for contractors to use, for income tax purposes, the method of accounting for contracts that is appropriate for financial reporting purposes.
- Joint performance of contracts under formal venture agreements is often necessary, and this creates a separate tax accounting entity with its own contract accounting methods and tax accounting policies. Also, taxable periods and accounting methods of such an entity may not coincide with those of the venturers.
- When current estimates of contract performance indicate an ultimate loss, accounting principles require a current loss provision, which is not deductible currently for income tax purposes.

5.67 Long-term construction contractors are generally required to use the percentage-of-completion method for computing long-term contract revenue for financial reporting purposes, rather than the completed-contract method.

The use of the completed-contract method may result in an income materially different from the percentage-of-completion method which will result in a timing difference for tax purposes. This timing difference will reverse in later years.

Accounting Methods Acceptable for Income Tax Purposes

5.68 In addition to the percentage-of-completion and completed-contract methods, contractors ordinarily have available to them the cash method (normally very small contractors) and *accrual* methods (billings and costs) of accounting, among other methods, for determining taxable income. Certain conditions of eligibility for these different methods may apply. Contractors, like other taxpayers, are not ordinarily required to use the same method for both financial reporting and tax purposes. Effective tax planning may dictate the use of a different method for tax purposes.

Cash Method

5.69 The cash method has a potential tax advantage for a contractor because careful year-end scheduling of controllable receipts and disbursements can be used in tax planning. Under the cash method of computing taxable income, all items that represent gross income—whether in the form of cash, property, or services—are included in income for the taxable year in which they are received or constructively received. Expenditures are generally deducted as expenses in the taxable year in which they are paid. Income is constructively received in the taxable year in which it is credited to the taxpayer's account or set apart for him so that he may draw on it at any time. However, income is not constructively received if the taxpayer's control of its receipt is subject to substantial limitations or restrictions. A contractor using the cash method who intentionally defers or postpones billings to shift income from one period to another may be deemed to have constructively received as income amounts of billings deferred or postponed. The provisions of the contract and the actual performance on the project are the factors that determine when income is taxable. Although taxable income is affected by normal lags between billings and payments, a taxpayer reporting on a cash basis cannot arbitrarily determine the period in which income on a contract will be reported by arbitrarily selecting a billing date.

5.70 Under the cash method, contract costs are deductible in the year in which they are paid, even though the contract income has not been earned or received. For tax purposes, contract costs are deferred charges, not inventories. Although the cash basis method of reporting income cannot be applied to inventories, carrying minor amounts of inventories does not preclude a taxpayer from using that method. However, the cash method cannot be applied to inventories of large quantities of materials purchased and stored for future use without assignment for a specific contract. As provided in the Internal Revenue Code, a taxpayer in the home building business who builds speculative homes for resale must accumulate construction costs and deduct them in the year in which the sale of the property is reported, even though he may use the cash basis for tax purposes. Under those circumstances, construction costs are treated as work in progress. Also, an expenditure may be deductible only in part for the taxable year in which it is made if the expenditure is for an asset (for example, a depreciable asset or a three-year insurance policy) having a useful life that extends substantially beyond the close of the taxable year.

Accrual Method

5.71 An entity using an accrual method for income tax purposes reports as revenue amounts billed on contracts and as cost of earned revenue contract costs incurred to the date of the most recently rendered contract billing. Other expenditures are deductible as incurred. The accrual method may accelerate tax liabilities if gross margins on early billings are greater than gross margins on billings in the later stages of the contract. A contractor may elect to exclude retentions from income until they are received (modified accrual method); otherwise, they are recognized when billed, which may create a cash flow disadvantage because retentions normally are not collected until after contract completion.

Chapter 6

Financial Statement Presentation

Balance Sheet Classification

6.01 The predominant practice in the construction industry is to present balance sheets with assets and liabilities classified as current and noncurrent, in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 210, *Balance Sheet*, on the basis of one year or the operating cycle (if it exceeds one year). According to FASB ASC 210-10-05-4, the balance sheets of most entities show separate classifications of current assets and current liabilities (commonly referred to as *classified balance sheets*) permitting ready determination of working capital.

6.02 Construction contractors may use either a classified or unclassified balance sheet:

- A classified balance sheet is preferable for entities whose operating cycle is one year or less. An entity whose operating cycle for most of its contracts is one year or less, but that periodically obtains some contracts that are significantly longer than normal, may use a classified balance sheet with a separate classification and disclosure for items that relate to contracts that deviate from its normal operating cycle. For example, if an entity with a normal cycle of one year obtains a substantial contract that greatly exceeds one year, it may still use a classified balance sheet if it excludes from current assets and liabilities the assets and liabilities related to the contract that are expected to be realized or liquidated after one year and discloses in the financial statements information on the realization and maturity of those items. The one-year basis of classification, where appropriate, presents information in a form preferred by many sureties and credit grantors as one of the many tools that they use to make analyses of a contractor's operations and financial statements.
- Typically, an unclassified balance sheet is preferable for entities whose operating cycle exceeds one year, however, some banks prefer a classified balance sheet even if the operating cycle exceeds 1 year. An entity whose operating cycle exceeds one year may also use a classified balance sheet with assets and liabilities classified as current on the basis of the operating cycle if, in management's opinion, an unclassified balance sheet would not result in a meaningful presentation.

6.03 FASB ASC 910-235-50-2 states an entity should disclose liquidity characteristics of specific assets and liabilities if either of the following conditions is met:

- The entity's operating cycle exceeds one year.
- The entity uses an unclassified balance sheet.

6.04 If receivables include amounts representing balances billed but not paid by customers under contract retainage provisions, FASB ASC 910-310-50-4 states that a contractor should disclose, either in the balance sheet or in a note to the financial statements, all of the following:

- The amounts
- The portion, if any, expected to be collected after one year
- If practicable, the years in which the amounts are expected to be collected

6.05 Regarding certain liabilities common to construction contractors, FASB ASC 910-405-50-1 states information relating to accounts and retentions payable should be disclosed, including the amounts of retentions to be paid after one year and, if practicable, the year in which the amounts are expected to be paid.

Guidelines for Classified Balance Sheets

6.06 A classified balance sheet should be prepared in accordance with FASB ASC 210 and the guidelines discussed in the following paragraphs.

General Guidance

6.07 For most construction contractors, the operating cycle is difficult to measure with precision because it is determined by contracts of varying durations. The FASB ASC glossary defines the *operating cycle* as the average time intervening between the acquisition of materials or services and the final cash realization. The operating cycle of a contractor is determined by a composite of many individual contracts in various stages of completion. Thus, the operating cycle of a contractor is measured by the duration of contracts, that is, the average time intervening between the inception of contracts and the substantial completion of contracts.

6.08 According to the FASB ASC glossary, the term *current assets* is used to designate cash and other assets and resources commonly identified as those that are reasonably expected to be realized in cash or sold or consumed during the normal operating cycle of the business. FASB ASC 210-10-45-1 states current assets generally include all of the following:

- Cash available for current operations and items that are cash equivalents
- Inventories of merchandise, raw materials, goods in process, finished goods, operating supplies, and ordinary maintenance material and parts
- Trade accounts, notes, and acceptances receivable
- Receivables from officers, employees, affiliates, and others, if collectible in the ordinary course of business within a year
- Installment or deferred accounts and notes receivable if they conform generally to normal trade practices and terms within the business
- Marketable securities representing the investment of cash available for current operations, including investments in debt and equity securities classified as trading securities under FASB ASC 320-10

- Prepaid expenses, such as insurance, interest, rents, taxes, unused royalties, current paid advertising services not yet received, and operating supplies

6.09 According to the FASB ASC glossary, the term *current liabilities* is used principally to designate obligations whose liquidation is reasonably expected to require the use of existing resources properly classifiable as current assets, or the creation of other current liabilities. Moreover, FASB ASC 210-10-45-8 explains that, as a balance sheet category, the classification of current liabilities generally includes obligations for items that have entered into the operating cycle, such as the following:

- Payables incurred in the acquisition of materials and supplies to be used in the production of goods or in providing services to be offered for sale
- Collections received in advance of the delivery of goods or performance of services
- Debts that arise from operations directly related to the operating cycle, such as accruals for wages, salaries, commissions, rentals, royalties, and income and other taxes
- Other liabilities whose regular and ordinary liquidation is expected to occur within a relatively short period of time, usually 12 months, such as the following:
 - Short term debts arising from the acquisition of capital assets
 - Serial maturities of long term obligations
 - Amounts required to be expended within one year under sinking fund provisions
 - Agency obligations arising from the collection or acceptance of cash or other assets for the account of third persons

FASB ASC 470-10-45 includes guidance on various debt transactions that may result in current liability classification. These transactions include due on demand loan agreements, callable debt agreements, short term obligations expected to be refinanced, and debt in default and debt which may cause a failure to meet established covenants.

6.10 In applying the foregoing definitions, the predominant practice in the construction industry for contractors whose operating cycle exceeds one year is to classify all contract-related assets and liabilities as current under the operating cycle concept and to follow other, more specific guidance in classifying other assets and liabilities. Following those general rules promotes uniformity of presentation and narrows the range of variations in practice. The following is a list of types of assets and liabilities that are generally considered to be contract related and that should generally be classified as current under the operating cycle concept:

- a. Contract-related assets include
 - i. accounts receivable on contracts (including retentions);
 - ii. unbilled contract receivables;
 - iii. costs and estimated earnings in excess of billings;

- iv. other deferred contract costs; and
 - v. equipment and small tools specifically purchased for, or expected to be used solely on, an individual contract.
- b. Contract-related liabilities include
- i. accounts payable on contracts (including retentions);
 - ii. accrued contract costs;
 - iii. billings in excess of costs and estimated earnings;
 - iv. deferred taxes resulting from the use of a method of income recognition for tax purposes different from the method used for financial reporting purposes;
 - v. advanced payments on contracts for mobilization or other purposes;
 - vi. obligations for equipment specifically purchased for, or expected to be used solely on, an individual contract regardless of the payment terms of the obligations; and
 - vii. provision for losses on contracts in accordance with paragraphs 1–2 of FASB ASC 605-35-45.

6.11 Following the foregoing guidance in preparing classified balance sheets will promote consistency in practice and facilitate consolidation of construction contracting segments of an entity with segments not engaged in construction contracting.

Retentions Receivable and Payable

6.12 Circumstances may be such that retentions receivable may not be collected within one year (for example, the existence of special arrangements with owners). FASB ASC 910-310-45-1 states that the portion of retainages not collectible within one year, or within the operating cycle if it is longer than one year, shall be classified as noncurrent in a classified balance sheet.

6.13 Similarly, circumstances may be such that retentions payable will not be paid within an entity's normal operating cycle (for example, the existence of special arrangements with subcontractors or vendors), and these payables should be classified as noncurrent in a classified balance sheet.

Investments in Construction Joint Ventures

6.14 Chapter 3, "Accounting for and Reporting Investments in Construction Joint Ventures," of this guide provides guidance for investors on acceptable financial statement presentation of investments in construction joint ventures. If a joint venture investment is presented on the cost or equity basis, the investment should be classified as noncurrent unless the venture is expected to be completed and liquidated during the current operating cycle of the investor. Losses in excess of an investment should be presented as a liability, and the classification principle for assets should apply.

Equipment

6.15 The cost of equipment that is acquired for a specific contract, that will be used only on that contract, and that will be consumed during the life of the contract or disposed of at the conclusion of the contract should be classified as a contract cost.

Liabilities

6.16 For an entity with an operating cycle in excess of one year, liabilities related to contracts should be classified as current on the basis of the operating cycle. For example, if a classified balance sheet is prepared using an operating cycle longer than one year, all contract-related liabilities maturing within that cycle should be classified as current. Other liabilities should be classified on the basis of the specific guidance in FASB ASC 210-10.

Excess Billings

6.17 As previously noted, billings in excess of costs and estimated earnings should generally be classified as a current liability. However, to the extent that billings exceed total estimated costs at completion of the contract plus contract profits earned to date, such an excess should be classified as deferred income. Billings in excess of costs and estimated earnings should be regarded as obligations for work to be per-formed except when billings exceed total estimated costs at completion of the contract plus contract profits earned to date.

Deferred Income Taxes

6.18 A deferred tax liability or asset represents the increase or decrease in taxes payable or refundable in future years as a result of temporary differences and carryforwards at the end of the current year. Deferred tax assets and liabilities should be classified in accordance with paragraphs 4–10 of FASB ASC 740-10-45. Paragraphs 77–222 of FASB ASC 740-10-55 provide illustrations of the balance sheet classification of certain types of deferred income taxes, including methods of reporting construction contracts.¹

Offsetting or Netting Amounts

6.19 A basic principle of accounting is that assets and liabilities should not be offset unless a right of offset exists. Thus, the net debit balances for certain contracts should not ordinarily be offset against net credit balances relating to others unless the balances relate to contracts that meet the criteria for combining in paragraphs 5–9 in FASB ASC 605-35-25.

6.20 Paragraphs 3–4 of FASB ASC 605-35-45 recognize the principle of offsetting in discussing the two accepted methods of accounting for long term construction-type contracts. For the percentage-of-completion method, current assets may include costs and recognized income not yet billed with respect to certain contracts. Liabilities (in most cases current liabilities) may include billings in excess of costs and recognized income with respect to other contracts. For the completed-contract method, an excess of accumulated costs over related billings should be shown in the balance sheet as a current asset, and an excess of accumulated billings over related costs should be shown among the liabilities (in most cases as a current liability). If costs exceed billings on some contracts, and billings exceed costs on others, the contracts should ordinarily be segregated so that the figures on the asset side include only those contracts on which costs exceed billings, and those on the liability side include only those on which billings exceed costs.

¹ Please refer to chapter 5, "Other Accounting Considerations," for further discussion of accounting for income taxes.

6.21 Offsetting should be applied in the same way under the percentage-of-completion method.

6.22 Although the suggested mechanics of segregating contracts between those on which costs exceed billings and those on which billings exceed costs do not indicate whether billings and related costs should be presented separately or combined (netted), separate disclosure in comparative financial statements is preferable because it shows the dollar volume of billings and costs (but not an indication of future profit or loss). In addition, grantors of credit, such as banks and insurance companies, have expressed a preference for separate disclosure. Disclosure may be made by short extension of the amounts on the balance sheet or in the notes to the financial statements. Thus, under the percentage-of-completion method, the current assets may disclose separately total costs and total recognized income not yet billed for certain contracts, and current liabilities may disclose separately total billings and total costs and recognized income for other contracts. The separate disclosure of revenue and costs in statements of income is the generally accepted practice. Only through comparable presentation of such data in the balance sheet can the reader adequately evaluate the contractor's comparative position.

6.23 In accordance with paragraphs 1–2 of FASB ASC 910-405-45, an advance received on a cost-plus contract should not offset against accumulated costs unless it is a payment on account of work in progress. Such advances are made to provide a revolving fund and are not applied as partial payment until the contract is nearly or fully completed. However, advances that are payments on account of work in progress should be shown as a deduction from the related asset. FASB ASC 910-405-50-2 states that the amounts of advances that are payments on account of work in progress should be disclosed.

6.24 For advance payments on a terminated government contract, FASB ASC 912-405-45-5 states the financial statements of the contractor issued before final collection of the claim should reflect any balance of those advances as deductions from the claim receivable.

Disclosures in Financial Statements

6.25 In addition to the financial statement disclosures generally required in an entity's financial statements, the following disclosures should be made in the notes to the financial statements of contractors if they are not disclosed in the body of the financial statements.

Significant Accounting Policies

6.26 In accordance with the disclosure sections of FASB ASC 323, *Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures*; FASB ASC 605, *Revenue Recognition*; and FASB ASC 910, *Contractors—Construction*, significant accounting policy disclosures should include the following:

- a. *Method of reporting affiliated entities.* Information relating to the method of reporting by affiliated entities should be disclosed, along with the disclosures recommended in chapter 4, "Financial Reporting by Affiliated Entities."
- b. *Operating cycle.* If the operating cycle exceeds one year, the range of contract durations should be disclosed.

- c. *Revenue recognition.* The method of recognizing income (percentage of completion or completed contract) should be disclosed:
 - i. If the percentage-of-completion method is used, the method or methods of measuring extent of progress toward completion (for example, cost to cost, labor hours) should be disclosed.
 - ii. If the completed-contract method is used, the reason for selecting that method should be indicated (for example, numerous short term contracts for which financial position and results of operations reported on the completed-contract basis would not vary materially from those resulting from use of the percentage-of-completion method; inherent hazards or undependable estimates that cause forecasts to be doubtful).
- d. *Method of reporting joint venture investments.* The method of reporting joint ventures should be disclosed, along with other joint venture disclosures.
- e. *Contract costs.*
 - i. The aggregate amount included in contract costs representing unapproved change orders, claims, or similar items subject to uncertainty concerning their determination or ultimate realization, plus a description of the nature and status of the principal items comprising such aggregate amounts and the basis on which such items are recorded (for example, cost or realizable value).
 - ii. The amount of progress payments netted against contract costs at the date of the balance sheet.
- f. *Deferred costs.* For costs deferred either in anticipation of future sales (precontract costs that are not within the scope of FASB ASC 720-15) or as a result of an unapproved change order, the policy of deferral and the amounts involved should be disclosed.

Revised Estimates

6.27 Revisions in estimates of the percentage of completion are changes in accounting estimates as defined in FASB ASC 250, *Accounting Changes and Error Corrections*. FASB ASC 605-35-50-9 states that although estimating is a continuous and normal process for contractors, FASB ASC 250-10-50-4 requires disclosure of the effect of revisions if the effect is material. The effect on income from continuing operations, net income (or other appropriate captions of changes in the applicable net assets or performance indicator), and any related per-share amounts of the current period should be disclosed for a change in estimate that affects several future periods. Additionally, if a change in estimate does not have a material effect in the period of change but is reasonably certain to have a material effect in later periods, a description of that change in estimate should be disclosed whenever the financial statements of the period of change are presented.

Backlog on Existing Contracts

6.28 In the construction industry, one of the most important indexes is the amount of backlog on uncompleted contracts at the end of the current year as compared with the backlog at the end of the prior year. Contractors

are encouraged, but not required, to present backlog information for signed contracts on hand whose cancellation is not anticipated because many surety and bank underwriters utilize and rely on this disclosure when considering providing credit to the contractor. Backlog can be reported by industry or type of facility and by location (domestic or foreign). Additional disclosures that an entity may want to make include backlog on letters of intent and a schedule showing backlog at the beginning of the year, new contract awards, revenue recognized for the year, and backlog at the end of the year. The presentation of backlog information is desirable only if a reasonably dependable determination of total revenue and a reasonably dependable estimate of total cost under signed contracts or letters of intent can be made. Information on contracts should be segregated if signed contracts, letters of intent, and unsigned, but substantially agreed upon, contracts are all presented.

Receivables

6.29 If receivables include billed or unbilled amounts under contracts representing unapproved change orders, claims, or similar items subject to uncertainty concerning their determination or ultimate realization, the balance sheet, or a note to the financial statements, should disclose the amount, a description of the nature and status of the principal items comprising the amount, and the portion, if any, expected to be collected after one year. Paragraphs 25–31 of FASB ASC 605-35-25 discuss accounting for change orders and claims.

6.30 If receivables include other amounts representing the recognized sales value of performance under contracts that have not been billed and were not billable to customers at the date of the balance sheet, these amounts, a general description of the prerequisites for billings, and the portion, if any, expected to be collected after one year should be disclosed.

6.31 FASB ASC 605-35-50-8 states a contract claim receivable should be disclosed as a contingent asset in accordance with FASB ASC 450-30-50-1 if at least one of the following conditions exist:

- It is not probable that the claim will result in additional contract revenue.
- The claim amount cannot be reliably estimated.
- It is probable that a claim will result in additional contract revenue and that the claim amount can be reliably estimated, but the claim exceeds the recorded contract costs.

As provided by FASB ASC 450-30-50-1, adequate disclosure should be made of contingencies that might result in gains, but care should be exercised to avoid misleading implications about the likelihood of realization.

6.32 FASB ASC 910-310-50-3 states that if receivables include amounts maturing after one year, the following should be disclosed:

- The amount maturing after one year and, if practicable, the amounts maturing in each year
- Interest rates on major receivable items, or on classes of receivables, maturing after one year or an indication of the average interest rate or the range of rates on all receivables

6.33 In accordance with FASB ASC 910-310-50-4, if receivables include amounts representing balances billed, but not paid, by customers under contract retainage provisions, a contractor should disclose, either in the balance sheet or in a note to the financial statements, all of the following:

- The amounts
- The portion (if any) expected to be collected after one year
- If practicable, the years in which the amounts are expected to be collected

FASB ASC 910-310-45-1 states the portion of retainages not collectible within one year, or within the operating cycle if it is longer than one year, should be classified as noncurrent in a classified balance sheet.

6.34 Related party receivables are common in the construction industry. Refer to chapter 4 for the definition of *related parties*. In accordance with FASB ASC 210-10-45-4, the concept of the nature of current assets contemplates the exclusion from current assets of loans or advances to affiliates, officers, and employees that are not expected to be collected within 12 months. FASB ASC 850-10-50-2 states notes or accounts receivable from officers, employees, or affiliated entities must be shown separately and not included under a general heading such as "notes receivable" or "accounts receivable." If the reporting entity and 1 or more other entities are under common ownership or management control, and if the existence of that control could result in operating results or financial position of the reporting entity significantly different from those that would have been obtained if the entities were autonomous, the nature of the control relationship should be disclosed even though no transactions exist between the entities. This guidance specific to control relationships is found in FASB ASC 850-10-50-6.

6.35 As provided in FASB ASC 850-10-50-1, financial statements should include disclosures of material related party transactions, other than compensation arrangements, expense allowances, and other similar items in the ordinary course of business. However, disclosure of transactions that are eliminated in the preparation of consolidated or combined financial statements is not required in those statements. The disclosures should include the following:

- The nature of the relationship(s) involved
- A description of the transactions, including transactions to which no amounts or nominal amounts were ascribed, for each of the periods for which income statements are presented, and such other information deemed necessary to an understanding of the effects of the transactions on the financial statements
- The dollar amounts of transactions for each of the periods for which income statements are presented and the effects of any change in the method of establishing the terms from that used in the preceding period
- Amounts due from or to related parties as of the date of each balance sheet presented and, if not otherwise apparent, the terms and manner of settlement

- When a contractor is a member of a consolidated tax return but issues separate financial statements, disclosures in those statements should include the following in accordance with FASB ASC 740-10-50-17:
 - Aggregate amount of current and deferred tax expense for each earnings statement presented
 - The principal provisions of the method used to allocate the consolidated amount of current and deferred tax expense to members and the nature and effect of any changes in that method for the years presented

Accounting by Creditors for Impairment of a Loan

6.36 Paragraphs 16–18 of FASB ASC 310-10-35 provide that a loan is impaired when, based on current information and events, it is probable that a creditor will be unable to collect all amounts due according to the contractual terms of the loan agreement. All amounts due according to the contractual terms means that both the contractual interest payments and the contractual principal payments of a loan will be collected as scheduled in the loan agreement. The term *probable* is used consistent with its use in FASB ASC 450-20, which defines *probable* as an area within a range of the likelihood that a future event or events will occur confirming the fact of the loss. That range is from probable to remote, as follows:

- *Probable* means that the future event or events are likely to occur.
- *Reasonably possible* means that the chance of the future event or events occurring is more than remote but less than likely.
- *Remote* means the chance of the future event or events occurring is slight.

Paragraphs 20–21, "Pending Content" in paragraph 22, and paragraphs 23–30 of FASB ASC 310-10-35 explain that measuring impairment of a loan requires judgment and estimates, and the eventual outcomes may differ from those estimates. Creditors have latitude to develop measurement methods that are practical in their circumstances. When a loan is impaired, a creditor should measure impairment based on the present value of expected future cash flows discounted at the loan's effective interest rate, except that as a practical expedient, a creditor may measure impairment based on a loan's observable market price or the fair value of the collateral if the loan is a collateral-dependent loan. FASB ASC 310-10-35-37 establishes that the net carrying amount of the loan should at no time exceed the recorded investment in the loan. Refer to FASB ASC 310-40 for specific application of this guidance to loans that are restructured in a troubled debt restructuring.

6.37 Authoritative guidance on loan impairments does not address how a creditor should recognize, measure, or display interest income on impaired loans. Accordingly, creditors may use existing methods for recognizing interest income described in FASB ASC 310-10-35-39 or two alternative methods described in FASB ASC 310-10-35-40. Required disclosures for impaired loans are included in "Pending Content" in paragraph 15, paragraphs 16–19, and "Pending Content" in paragraph 20 of FASB ASC 310-10-50.

Disclosures of Certain Significant Risks and Uncertainties

6.38 In accordance with FASB ASC 275-10-50-1, reporting entities should include in their financial statements disclosures about the risks and uncertainties existing as of the date of those statements in the following areas:

- Nature of their operations
- Use of estimates in the preparation of financial statements
- Certain significant estimates
- Current vulnerability due to certain concentrations

These four areas of disclosure are not mutually exclusive. The information required by some may overlap. Accordingly, the disclosures required by FASB ASC 275-10 may be combined in various ways, grouped together, placed in diverse parts of the financial statements, or included as part of the disclosures made pursuant to the other requirements within generally accepted accounting principles. Although the guidance in FASB ASC 275, *Risks and Uncertainties*, applies to complete interim financial statements, it does not apply to condensed or summarized interim financial statements. If comparative financial statements are presented, the disclosure requirements apply only to the financial statements for the most recent fiscal period presented. Paragraphs 1–19 of FASB ASC 275-10-55 provide examples of disclosures, and paragraphs 2–10 of FASB ASC 605-35-55 provide examples of disclosures required by FASB ASC 275 as they specifically pertain to the effects of possible near term changes in contract estimates.

6.39 FASB ASC 310-10-50-25 clarifies that certain loan products have contractual terms that expose entities to risks and uncertainties described in the preceding paragraph. FASB ASC 825-10-55-1 states that certain loan products may increase a reporting entity's exposure to credit risk and thereby may result in a concentration of credit risk as that term is used in FASB ASC 825-10, either as an individual product type or as a group of products with similar features. Among other required disclosures about each significant concentration, FASB ASC 825-10-50-21 states that information about the (shared) activity, region, or economic characteristic that identifies the concentration should be disclosed, except for certain financial instruments identified in FASB ASC 825-10-50-22. According to paragraphs 1–2 of FASB ASC 825-10-55, possible shared characteristics on which significant concentrations may be determined include, but are not limited to

- borrowers subject to significant payment increases,
- loans with terms that permit negative amortization, and
- loans with high loan-to-value ratios.

Judgment is required to determine whether loan products have terms that give rise to a concentration of credit risk.

Accounting for Weather Derivatives

6.40 The existence of weather derivative contracts (that is, contracts indexed to climatic or geological variables) is relatively new; however, their market presence is rapidly growing. The construction industry is one of the market areas where the potential use of weather derivatives would likely expand.

FASB ASC 815-45 prescribes the accounting treatment, establishes disclosure requirements, and provides implementation guidance and illustrations for weather derivatives.

Disclosures of Multiemployer Pension Plans

6.41 Multiemployer pension plans have become commonplace in the construction industry due to the heavily unionized workforce, amongst other reasons. Because of the nature of the industry, it is common for a construction contractor to pay employment benefits into several different plans that cover various states and jurisdictions.

Multiemployer Plans That Provide Pension Benefits

6.42 "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 715-80-50-2 states that an employer is required to apply the provisions of FASB ASC 450, *Contingencies*, if it is either probable or reasonably possible that either of the following would occur:

- a. An employer would withdraw from the plan under circumstances that would give rise to an obligation.
- b. An employer's contribution to the fund would be increased during the remainder of the contract period to make up a shortfall in the funds necessary to maintain the negotiated level of benefit coverage (a maintenance of benefits clause).

6.43 "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 715-80-50-3 states that an employer is required to provide the disclosures required by paragraphs 4–10 of FASB ASC 715-80-50 in annual financial statements. These disclosures of the employer's contributions made to the plan include all items recognized as net pension costs. The disclosures based on *the most recently available* information should be the most recently available through the date at which the employer has evaluated subsequent events.

6.44 Per "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 715-80-50-4, an employer that participates in a multiemployer plan that provides pension benefits is required to provide a narrative description both of the general nature of the multiemployer plans that provide pension benefits and of the employer's participation in the plans that would indicate how the risks of participating in these plans are different from single-employer plans.

6.45 "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 715-80-50-5 states that for each individually significant² multiemployer plan that provides pension benefits, an employer's disclosures should include the following:

- a. Legal name of the plan
- b. The plan's Employer Identification Number and, if available, its plan number
- c. For each statement of financial position presented, the most recently available certified zone status provided by the plan, as currently defined by the Pension Protection Act of 2006 or a subsequent

² The determination of what is an individually significant plan is not defined in the standards; however it is noted in "Pending Content" in Financial Accounting Standards Board *Accounting Standards Codification* 715-80-50-5 that factors other than the amount of the contribution should be considered when determining if a plan is individually significant. For instance, the severity of the underfunded status of the plan may be a consideration in this determination.

amendment of that act. The disclosure shall specify the date of the plan's year-end to which the zone status relates and whether the plan has utilized any extended amortization provisions that affect the calculation of the zone status. If the zone status is not available, an employer shall disclose, as of the most recent date available, on the basis of the financial statements provided by the plan, the total plan assets and accumulated benefit obligations, whether the plan was

- i. less than 65 percent funded.
 - ii. between 65 percent and 80 percent funded.
 - iii. at least 80 percent funded.
- d. The expiration date(s) of the collective-bargaining agreement(s) requiring contributions to the plan, if any. If more than one collective-bargaining agreement applies to the plan, the employer shall provide a range of the expiration dates of those agreements, supplemented with a qualitative description that identifies the significant collective-bargaining agreements within that range as well as other information to help investors understand the significance of the collective-bargaining agreements and when they expire (for example, the portion of employees covered by each agreement or the portion of contributions required by each agreement).
- e. For each period that a statement of income (statement of activities nonpublic entities) is presented
- i. the employer's contributions made to the plan.
 - ii. whether the employer's contributions represent more than 5 percent of total contributions to the plan as indicated in the plan's most recently available annual report (Form 5500 for U.S. plans). The disclosure shall specify the year-end date of the plan to which the annual report relates.
- f. As of the end of the most recent annual period presented
- i. whether a funding improvement plan or rehabilitation plan (for example, as those terms are defined by the Employment Retirement Security Act of 1974) had been implemented or was pending.
 - ii. whether the employer paid a surcharge to the plan.
 - iii. a description of any minimum contribution(s), required for future periods by the collective-bargaining agreement(s), statutory obligations, or other contractual obligations, if applicable.

Factors other than the amount of the employer's contribution to a plan, for example, the severity of the underfunded status of the plan, may need to be considered when determining whether a plan is significant. When feasible, this information should be provided in a tabular format. Information that requires greater narrative description may be provided outside the table.

6.46 As discussed in "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 715-80-50-6, an employer is required to provide a description of the nature and effect of any significant changes that affect comparability of total employer contributions from period to period, such as a

- a. business combination or a divestiture.

- b. change in the contractual employer contribution rate.
- c. change in the number of employees covered by the plan during each year.

6.47 The requirements in "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 715-80-50-5, as discussed in paragraph 6.45, assume that the other information about the plan is available in the public domain. For example, for U.S. plans, the plan information in Form 5500 is publicly available. In circumstances in which plan level information is *not* available in the public domain, an employer is required to disclose, in addition to the requirements of "Pending Content" in paragraphs 5–6 of FASB ASC 715-80-50, the following information about each significant plan:

- a. A description of the nature of the plan benefits
- b. A qualitative description of the extent to which the employer could be responsible for the obligations of the plan, including benefits earned by employees during employment with another employer
- c. Other quantitative information, to the extent available, as of the most recent date available, to help users understand the financial information about the plan, such as total plan assets, actuarial present value of accumulated plan benefits, and total contributions received by the plan

6.48 If the quantitative information in "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 715-80-50-5(c), "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 715-80-50-5(e)(2), or "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 715-80-50-7(c), as discussed in paragraph 6.45, cannot be obtained without undue cost and effort, that quantitative information may be omitted and the employer should describe what information has been omitted and why. In that circumstance, the employer also is required to provide any qualitative information as of the most recent date available that would help users understand the financial information that otherwise is required to be disclosed about the plan. This information should be included in a separate section of the tabular disclosure required by "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 715-80-50-5.

6.49 In addition to the information about the significant multiemployer plans that provide pension benefits required by "Pending Content" in paragraphs 5 and 7 of FASB ASC 715-80-50, an employer is required to disclose in a tabular format for each annual period for which a statement of income or statement of activities is presented, both of the following:

- a. Its total contributions made to all plans that are not individually significant
- b. Its total contributions made to all plans

Multiemployer Plans That Provide Postretirement Benefits Other Than Pensions

6.50 "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 715-80-50-10 required and employer to disclose the amount of contributions to multiemployer plans that postretirement benefits other than pensions each annual period for which a statement of income or statement of activities is presented. The disclosures shall include a description of the nature and effect of any changes that affect comparability of total employer contributions from period to period, such as

- a. A business combination or a divestiture

- b. A change in the contractual employer contribution rate
- c. A change in the number of employees covered by the plan during each year

The disclosures also shall include a description of the nature of the benefits and the types of employees covered by these benefits, such as medical benefits provided to active employees and retirees.

Sample Disclosure for Plans That Provide Pension Benefits

6.51 "Pending Content" in paragraphs 6–9 FASB ASC 715-80-55 presents the following example disclosure:

Entity A contributes to a number of multiemployer defined benefit pension plans under the terms of collective-bargaining agreements that cover its union-represented employees. The risks of participating in these multiemployer plans are different from single-employer plans in the following aspects:

- a. Assets contributed to the multiemployer plan by one employer may be used to provide benefits to employees of other participating employers.
- b. If a participating employer stops contributing to the plan, the unfunded obligations of the plan may be borne by the remaining participating employers.
- c. If Entity A chooses to stop participating in some of its multiemployer plans, Entity A may be required to pay those plans an amount based on the underfunded status of the plan, referred to as a withdrawal liability.

Entity A's participation in these plans for the annual period ended December 31, 20X0, is outlined in the table below. The "EIN/Pension Plan Number" column provides the Employer Identification Number (EIN) and the three-digit plan number, if applicable. Unless otherwise noted, the most recent Pension Protection Act (PPA) zone status available in 20X0 and 20X9 is for the plan's year-end at December 31, 20X9, and December 31, 20X8, respectively. The zone status is based on information that Entity A received from the plan and is certified by the plan's actuary. Among other factors, plans in the red zone are generally less than 65 percent funded, plans in the yellow zone are less than 80 percent funded, and plans in the green zone are at least 80 percent funded. The "FIP/RP Status Pending/Implemented" column indicates plans for which a financial improvement plan (FIP) or a rehabilitation plan (RP) is either pending or has been implemented. The last column lists the expiration date(s) of the collective-bargaining agreement(s) to which the plans are subject. Finally, the number of employees covered by Entity A's multiemployer plans decreased by 5 percent from 20X9 to 20X0, affecting the period-to-period comparability of the contributions for years 20X9 and 20X0. The significant reduction in covered employees corresponded to a reduction in overall business. There have been no significant changes that affect the comparability of 20X8 and 20X9 contributions.

Construction Contractors

Pension Fund	EIN/ Pension Plan Number	Pension Protection Act Zone Status		FIP/RP Status Pending/Implemented	Contributions of Entity A			Surcharge Imposed	Expiration Date of Collective-Bargaining Agreement
		20X0	20X9		20X0	20X9	20X8		
ABC Fund 34	32-1899999	Red as of 9/30/2009	Yellow as of 9/30/2008	Pending	\$ 1,883,000	\$ 2,309,000	\$ 2,226,000	Yes	12/31/20X3
ABC Fund 37	52-5599999 - 002	Green	Yellow	No	3,342,000	3,609,000	3,586,000	No	12/31/20X3
ABC Fund 40	92-3499999	Yellow	Yellow	No	5,798,000	6,435,000	6,374,000	No	12/31/20X5
ABC Fund 43	82-4299999	Red	Red	Pending	3,539,000	3,234,000	3,218,000	Yes	12/31/20X4
ABC Fund 46 ^(b)	82-6899999	Green	Green	No	778,000	816,000	833,000	No	12/31/20X3
ABC Fund 49	52-6199999	Yellow	Yellow	No	534,000	547,000	491,000	No	12/31/20X2
ABC Fund 52	72-8599999 - 001	Red	Green	Implemented	1,349,000	1,134,000	1,050,000	No	12/31/20X5
ABC Fund 55	82-2999999	Green	Green	No	1,224,000	1,046,000	1,151,000	No	12/31/20X4
Plans for which plan financial information is not publicly available outside Entity A's financial statements.									
ABC Fund 61 ^(c)	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	418,000	482,000	491,000	N/A	12/31/20X2
ABC Fund 73 ^(d)	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	1,872,000	1,764,000	1,693,000	N/A	12/31/20X2
Other funds					147,000	160,000	169,000		
Total contributions:					<u>\$ 20,884,000</u>	<u>\$ 21,536,000</u>	<u>\$ 21,282,000</u>		

- (a) Entity A is party to two significant collective-bargaining agreements that require contributions to ABC Fund 37. Agreements D and E expire on 12/31/20X2, and 12/31/20X3, respectively. Of the two, Agreement D is more significant because 70 percent of Entity A's employee participants in ABC Fund 37 are covered by that agreement. Agreement E also is significant because its participants are involved in multiple projects that Entity A is scheduled to start in 20X4.
- (b) ABC Fund 46 utilized the special 30-year amortization rules provided by Public Law 111-192, Section 211 to amortize its losses from 2008. The plan rectified its zone status after using the amortization provisions of that law.
- (c) Plan information for ABC Fund is not publicly available. ABC Fund 61 provides fixed, monthly retirement payments on the basis of the credits earned by the participating employees. To the extent that the plan is underfunded, the future contributions to the plan may increase and may be used to fund retirement benefits for employees related to other employers who have ceased operations. Entity A could be assessed a withdrawal liability in the event that it decides to cease participating in the plan. ABC Fund 61's financial statements for the years ended June 30, 20X0 and 20X9 indicated total assets of \$62,000,000 and \$51,000,000, respectively; total actuarial present value of accumulated plan benefits of \$120,000,000 and \$110,000,000, respectively; and total contributions for all participating employers of \$9,000,000 and \$8,000,000, respectively. The plan's financial statements for the plan years ended June 30, 20X0 and 20X9 indicated that the plan was less than 65 percent funded in both years.
- (d) Plan information for ABC Fund 73 is not publicly available. ABC Fund 73 provides fixed retirement payments on the basis of the credits earned by the participating employees. However, in the event that the plan is underfunded, the monthly benefit amount can be reduced by the trustees of the plan. Entity A is not responsible for the underfunded status of the plan because ABC Fund 73 operates in a jurisdiction that does not require withdrawing participants to pay a withdrawal liability or other penalty. Entity A is unable to provide additional quantitative information on the plan because Entity A is unable to obtain that information without undue cost and effort. The collective-bargaining agreement of ABC Fund 73 requires contributions on the basis of hours worked. The agreement also has a minimum contribution requirement of \$1,000,000 each year.

Construction Contractors

Entity A was listed in its plans' Forms 5500 as providing more than 5 percent of the total contributions for the following plans and plan years:

<u>Pension Fund</u>	<u>Year Contributions to Plan Exceeded More Than 5 Percent of Total Contributions (as of December 31 of the Plan's Year-End)</u>
ABC Fund 34	20X9 and 20X8
ABC Fund 43	20X8
ABC Fund 52	20X8
ABC Fund 61	20X9

At the date the financial statements were issued, Forms 5500 were not available for the plan years ending in 20X0.

Chapter 7

Auditing Within the Construction Industry

© Update 7-1 *Audit*: Clarified Auditing Standards

The auditing guidance in this guide edition has been conformed to Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) Nos. 122–127 (referred to as clarified SASs), which were issued as part of the Auditing Standards Board's Clarity Project. These clarified SASs are effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012. Although the Clarity Project was not intended to create additional requirements, some revisions have resulted in changes that may require auditors to make adjustments in their practices.

To assist auditors and financial reporting professionals in making the transition, this guide includes appendix B, "Mapping and Summarization of Changes—Clarified Auditing Standards," which provides a cross reference of the sections in the superseded auditing standards to the applicable sections in the clarified auditing standards and identifies the changes, either substantive or primarily clarifying in nature, that may affect an auditor's practice or methodology relative to the applicable sections of SAS Nos. 122–127. It also summarizes the changes resulting from the requirements of SAS Nos. 122–127.

The preface of this guide and the Financial Reporting Center on www.aicpa.org provide more information on the Clarity Project. Visit www.aicpa.org/sasclarity.

7.01 The objective of the auditing section of the guide is to assist the independent auditor in auditing the financial statements of entities in the construction industry. Independent auditors often encounter a variety of complex problems in such engagements because of the nature of operations in the industry and because of the methods used in accounting for contracts.

Audit Focus

7.02 In audits of the financial statements of construction contractors, the primary focus is on the profit centers, usually individual contracts, for recognizing revenues, accumulating costs, and measuring income. Obtaining a thorough understanding of the contracts that underlie the financial statements is an important part of the audit plan that describes in detail the nature, timing, and extent of risk assessment and further audit procedures performed in the audit. Evaluation of the profitability of contracts or profit centers is also central to the total audit process and the determination of whether the information in the financial statements is presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

7.03 The methods and the bases of measurement used in accounting for contracts affects the independent auditor's review of estimated contract costs to complete, measures of extent of progress toward completion, revenues, and gross profit to form a conclusion on the reasonableness of costs, revenue, and

gross profit allocated to the period audited. Thus, much of the independent auditor's work involves evaluating subjective estimates relating to future events. AU-C section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), provides guidance to auditors on obtaining and evaluating sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support significant accounting estimates. Because a contractor's work in progress schedule is based on a substantial amount of estimations of contract price and costs, the auditor of a construction entity must be thoroughly familiar with the criteria that must be applied to those estimates.

7.04 Paragraph .03 of AU-C section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), states that "(t)he objective of the auditor is to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, at the financial statement and relevant assertion levels through understanding the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control, thereby providing a basis for designing and implementing responses to the assessed risks of material misstatement." In the audits of the financial statements of construction contractors, the areas that normally receive particular attention include an entity's internal control, its operating systems and procedures, its project management, the nature of its contracting work, its history of performance and profitability, and other relevant accounting and operating factors. The auditor's primary consideration is to obtain a sufficient understanding of the entity to assess the risks of material misstatement at both the overall financial statement level and the assertion level.

7.05 AU-C section 315 addresses the auditor's responsibility to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement through understanding the entity and its environment, including its internal control. Paragraph .13 of AU-C section 315 notes that although most controls relevant to the audit are likely to relate to financial reporting, not all controls that relate to financial reporting are relevant to the audit. It is a matter of the auditor's professional judgment whether a control, individually or in combination with others, is relevant to the audit.

7.06 When obtaining an understanding of controls that are relevant to the audit, the auditor should evaluate the design of those controls and determine whether they have been implemented by performing procedures in addition to inquiry of the entity's personnel. Areas of focus in the construction industry are contract revenues, costs, gross profit or loss, and related contract receivables and payables.

7.07 To provide a basis for designing and performing further audit procedures, the auditor should identify and assess the risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level and the relevant assertion level for classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures. In the construction industry, the significant measurement uncertainty associated with the application of the percentage-of-completion method of accounting for contracts, among other judgmental matters associated with construction contracts, may present significant risks that, in the auditor's professional judgment, require special audit consideration. For further discussion of the auditor's responsibilities toward significant risks, refer to chapter 9, "Planning the Audit, Assessing and Responding to Audit Risk, and Additional Auditing Considerations."

Scope of Auditing Guidance Included in This Guide

7.08 The auditing section of this guide deals primarily with auditing procedures peculiar to audits of the financial statements of construction contractors. It does not discuss auditing procedures that are not unique to such audits or that do not require special application in them; such procedures may be found in other sources of generally accepted auditing standards.

Chapter 8

Controls in the Construction Industry¹

🕒 Update 8-1 Audit: Clarified Auditing Standards

The auditing guidance in this guide edition has been conformed to Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) Nos. 122–127 (referred to as clarified SASs), which were issued as part of the Auditing Standards Board's Clarity Project. These clarified SASs are effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012. Although the Clarity Project was not intended to create additional requirements, some revisions have resulted in changes that may require auditors to make adjustments in their practices.

To assist auditors and financial reporting professionals in making the transition, this guide includes appendix B, "Mapping and Summarization of Changes—Clarified Auditing Standards," which provides a cross reference of the sections in the superseded auditing standards to the applicable sections in the clarified auditing standards and identifies the changes, either substantive or primarily clarifying in nature, that may affect an auditor's practice or methodology relative to the applicable sections of SAS Nos. 122–127. It also summarizes the changes resulting from the requirements of SAS Nos. 122–127.

The preface of this guide and the Financial Reporting Center on www.aicpa.org provide more information on the Clarity Project. Visit www.aicpa.org/sasclarity.

8.01 The discussion of controls in this chapter is primarily from management's perspective and relates to management's responsibility to establish and maintain adequate internal control over financial reporting. As directed in Section 404(a) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (the act), management of an issuer must assess the effectiveness of the entity's internal control over financial reporting and include in the entity's annual report to shareholders management's conclusion as a result of that assessment about whether the entity's internal control is effective. This chapter is not intended to provide guidance to management of public construction contractors on how to comply with the requirements of the act.

8.02 This chapter is not intended to provide the auditor with comprehensive auditing guidance but may serve as an overview of factors that will enable the auditor to better understand the entity and its environment, including its internal control. AU-C section 315, *Understanding the Entity and*

¹ On May 14, 2013, the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO) released its revisions and updates to the 1992 document *Internal Control—Integrated Framework*. COSO's goal in updating the framework was to increase its relevance in the increasingly complex and global business environment so that organizations worldwide can better design, implement, and assess internal control. COSO believes this framework will provide organizations significant benefits, for example, increased confidence that controls mitigate risks to acceptable levels and reliable information supporting sound decision making.

COSO is a joint initiative of five private sector organizations and is dedicated to providing thought leadership through the development of frameworks and guidance on enterprise risk management, internal control, and fraud deterrence. The AICPA is a member of COSO.

For more information, visit www.coso.org.

Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), addresses the auditor's responsibility to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement through understanding the entity and its environment, including its internal control.

8.03 This chapter presents a general discussion of some of the desirable control activities in the construction industry. Although not all the controls identified are found in every construction entity, their discussion can serve as guidance concerning what might be considered adequate controls for a contractor. This discussion considers aspects of controls in the following areas:

- Estimating and bidding
- Project administration and contract evaluation
- Job site accounting and controls
- Billing procedures (including determination of reimbursable costs under cost-plus contracts)
- Contract costs
- Contract revenues
- Construction equipment
- Claims, extras, and back charges
- Joint ventures
- Internal audit function

Estimating and Bidding

8.04 Effective controls over the estimating and bidding functions provide reasonable assurance that contracts are bid or negotiated on the basis of data carefully compiled to take into account all factors that will affect the cost, revenue, and profitability of each contract. Unreliable estimates can obscure losses on contracts in their early stages or can overstate or understate the estimated profitability of contracts.

8.05 Controls over estimating and bidding are necessary to provide for adequate documentation, clerical verification, overall review of estimated costs, and approval of all bids by the appropriate levels of management. Examples of control activities related to estimating and bidding include the following:

- Conducting an independent review of general contract cost estimates based on specifications, plans, and drawings and comparing with actual contract estimates in order to provide assurance that the estimates of contract costs reflect all relevant costs
- Verifying the clerical accuracy of final contract estimates
- Reviewing the completeness and reasonableness of the final estimate and obtaining at least two independent estimates on complex or large contracts
- Establishing procedures to preclude arbitrary, undocumented management-level adjustments to estimated costs

8.06 Preparation and maintenance of the estimate of contract costs and the accounting records in a consistent manner will permit subsequent detailed comparison of actual costs with estimated costs. A record of the bids submitted

by competing firms normally should be maintained, if those bids are available. Such cost and bid information is helpful to management and may provide them with evidence of the reliability of their estimating and bidding process.

8.07 Having assigned personnel to regularly perform monitoring procedures is necessary to ensure that controls over the estimating and bidding functions are operating effectively. For instance, a contractor might assign personnel to perform the following tasks:

- Review the quantities of material and hours of labor in bid estimates and compare them to the customers' specifications.
- Compare and relate estimated material costs to published vendor price lists, price quotations, subcontractors' bids, or other supporting documentation.
- Compare and relate estimated labor rates to union contracts and other documentation supporting labor rates, payroll taxes, and fringe benefits.
- Compare and relate estimated equipment costs to the rates charged by suppliers for rental or used by the contractor to allocate the cost of owned equipment to jobs.
- Consider the effects of potential cost increases during the period of the contract, including historical trends, the anticipated results of future labor negotiations, the effect of unusual geographic location, the sources and availability of materials and labor, and inflation.
- Verify the clerical accuracy of estimates.
- Determine that estimates are reviewed and approved by designated management personnel.
- Review contracts periodically to assess the extent and effect of management changes or revisions of bids without supporting data, such as revised cost estimates.
- Update estimates periodically based on documented discussions with engineering personnel responsible for the project.

Project Administration and Contract Evaluation

8.08 The quality and extent of project management often determine whether a construction contract is profitable or unprofitable. Timely and reliable progress, cost, and status reports on each contract are essential for management to evaluate the status and profitability of each project and to identify problems at an early stage. Regularly scheduled meetings with project managers and periodic management visits to job sites may also enhance the effectiveness of project administration.

8.09 In order to estimate the profit or loss on a contract in progress, it is essential that management review and evaluate regularly the status of each contract in progress. That procedure provides information that enables management to take corrective action to improve performance on a given contract, and such an evaluation is an integral part of effective internal control. Normally, the review should include a comparison of the detailed actual contract costs and the current estimate of costs to complete all phases of the project

with the details of the original estimate and the total contract price. Other information to be considered in the review includes the following items:

- Cost records, which may be used for a comparison of the principal components of actual costs with original estimates
- Open purchase orders and commitments
- Reports, such as engineering progress reports, field reports, and project managers' status reports
- Conferences with project engineers and independent architects
- Correspondence files
- Change orders, including unpriced and unsigned change orders

8.10 Generally, controls over subcontract costs should provide that payments to subcontractors are made only on the basis of work performed, that performance bonds are obtained, and that retentions are recorded and accounted for properly.

Job Site Accounting and Controls

8.11 The size and location of some construction projects may require a contractor to establish an accounting office at the job site, and all or part of the accounting function relating to that project—including payrolls, purchasing, disbursements, equipment control, and billings—may be performed at the job site. Establishing adequate internal control at job site accounting offices may be difficult because such offices are temporary and may be staffed with a limited number of trained accounting personnel. Therefore, it is essential that management pay particular attention to the areas discussed in the following paragraphs.

8.12 The temporary nature of the employment of most construction workers can make the establishment of controls difficult. Further, many job sites employ on-site payment of workers, with signing authority residing with an on-site employee, usually the project manager or project accountant, rather than a dedicated resource in a centrally located payroll department. Construction contractors ordinarily should consider having internal auditors, or corporate administrative personnel, periodically disburse or observe payrolls at job sites to strengthen controls over payrolls.

8.13 Established accounting procedures normally dictate that a designated level of management authorize all material purchases at job sites and clearly specify the types of acceptable documentation as evidence of receipt of materials. Additionally, effective accounting procedures prohibit making payments for materials without proper authorization and evidence of receipt.

8.14 Adequate physical controls over equipment, materials, and supplies at job sites help prevent loss by pilferage or unauthorized usage. Adequate internal control also includes taking an inventory of surplus materials at the completion of a contract and monitoring the subsequent disposition of such materials for adherence to company policy and appropriate accounting treatment. Maintaining effective supervision over job site offices, particularly if the size or nature of a contractor does not permit the establishment of an internal audit function, is also an important control.

Billing Procedures

8.15 Billing procedures in the construction industry differ from those in other industries. A typical manufacturing entity, for example, normally bills a customer upon the shipment of its product. In contrast, billing procedures in the construction industry vary widely among entities and are often not correlated with performance. Different types of contracts and different ways of measuring performance for billing purposes are prevalent. For example, billings may be based on various measures of performance, such as cubic yards excavated, architects' estimates of completion, costs incurred on cost-plus type contracts, or time schedules. Also, the data required to prepare a billing for a fixed-price contract differ from the data required for a cost-plus contract.

8.16 Adequate internal controls normally provide that personnel responsible for billing receive accurate, timely information from job sites and include billing procedures designed to recognize unique contract features. Because billing and payment terms often vary from contract to contract, the personnel responsible for billing normally should be familiar with the terms of the contracts. Billings that are not made in accordance with the terms of the contract generally should be approved by designated management personnel.

8.17 A contractor's receivables usually include retentions, that is, amounts that are not due until contracts are completed or until specified contract conditions or guarantees are met. Retentions are governed by contract provisions and are typically a fixed percentage (for example, 5 percent or 10 percent) of each billing. Some contracts provide for a reduction in the percentage retained on billings as the contract nears completion. Effective billing procedures and related internal control provide that a contractor bill retentions in accordance with the terms of a contract and that accounts are reviewed periodically to determine that retention payments are ultimately received. A contractor ordinarily would have a process in place to monitor past due receivables and related liens. Further, the contractor may consider an additional policy of re-filing expiring liens,² as necessary, within a prescribed period of their expiration, in order to provide assurance that lien rights are protected before they expire.

8.18 To provide continuing assurance that desirable internal control is maintained over the billing function, it is essential that assigned personnel regularly perform monitoring procedures. A contractor might assign personnel to perform the following tasks:

- Relate billings, including retentions, to the terms of the original contract and of approved change orders
- Accumulate and retain the data necessary to prepare and support billings, including costs incurred to date, engineers' estimates of completion, architects' certifications, and other pertinent information

² Many states have very strict laws concerning construction contractor liens and the timing of filing and refiling those liens. Contractors and auditors should be aware of the specific laws in the states in which they operate to ensure compliance.

Contract Costs

8.19 A contractor uses information on contract costs to control costs, evaluate the status and profitability of contracts, and prepare customer billings. Contract costs are also necessary in the determination of revenue when the percentage-of-completion approach is utilized. Thus, the importance of accurate cost information cannot be overemphasized.

8.20 Generally, contract cost records should facilitate detailed comparisons of actual costs with estimated costs and provide for the classification and summarization of costs into appropriate categories such as materials, subcontract charges, labor, labor-related costs, equipment costs, and overhead. It is essential that the accounting system be capable of producing detailed cost reports for management and project managers. Their review of the reports serves to identify potential problems on contracts, check on the reasonableness of the cost records, and minimize the possibility of having unauthorized costs charged to the contract.

8.21 Controls over contract costs, including the manner in which they are applied and the assignment of responsibility to designated personnel, are essential mechanisms to achieving the aforementioned objectives. Control activities might include, for example, periodic agreement of the detailed contract cost records to the general ledger control records and ensuring that proper cutoffs are made at the close of each accounting period. Other control activities that assigned personnel might regularly perform include

- comparing and relating the quantities and prices of materials charged to contracts to vendors' invoices, purchase orders, and evidence of receipt of materials and, if applicable, the withdrawal and return of documents from central stores.
- documenting labor charged to contracts by reference to payroll records and related documents (such as time cards, union contracts or pay authorizations, authorized deductions, and cancelled payroll checks) and reviewing payroll distribution to individual contracts.
- relating subcontract costs charged to contracts to the terms specified in the subcontract agreements and supporting documents.
- inspecting performance, guarantee, and similar bonds of subcontractors.
- obtaining and reviewing, for adequacy, insurance certificates obtained from subcontractors.
- comparing and relating retentions payable to subcontractors to subcontract agreements.
- inspecting waivers of lien on completed work from subcontractors.
- approving back charges, extras, and claims.
- comparing and relating equipment rental costs charged to contracts (*a*) to the contractor's standard rates for owned equipment and vendor invoices or rental agreements for leased equipment and (*b*) to delivery reports, production or maintenance records, or similar data.
- comparing equipment costs charged directly to a contract (purchased for exclusive use on a particular contract, such as a

cement plant and related trucks) to vendor invoices and related documents, and control the disposition of such equipment.

- reviewing the accumulation and allocation of indirect costs to contracts.
- reviewing the accumulation and segregation of reimbursable costs under cost-plus contracts.
- reviewing contract costs to ensure they are being allocated to the proper contract.

A contractor's monitoring of controls over contract costs ensures that internal control over contract costs continue to operate effectively. This process involves assessment by appropriate personnel of the design and operation of controls on a timely basis and responding to the results of the assessment.

Contract Revenues

8.22 It is important that controls over contract revenues be designed to provide reliable information on the amount and timing of contract revenue. The types of controls established depend on the method of revenue recognition used. Relevant considerations when designing these types of controls include the amount of revenue expected from contracts and the procedures and information used either in measuring progress toward completion (to determine the amount of earned revenue under the percentage-of-completion method) or in determining when a contract is substantially completed (under the completed-contract method).

8.23 Control activities that assigned personnel might regularly perform include

- preparing and supporting current estimates of total revenue under each contract in process.
- processing and approving change orders and informing personnel responsible for performance of contracts of those change orders.
- determining that revenue arising from unpriced change orders and claims does not exceed the related recoverable costs, and that only costs that are reimbursable in accordance with the terms of cost-plus contracts are included in revenue.
- providing for timely notification of, and adjustments for, contract cancellations and postponements and other provisions requiring notification required by the contract.
- selecting methods to measure progress that are suitable to the circumstances and apply the methods consistently.
- accumulating and verifying the information used to measure the extent of progress toward completion, such as total cost incurred, total labor hours incurred, and units of output, depending on the method used.
- verifying the accuracy of the computations of the percentage of completion, earned revenue, and the cost of earned revenue.
- reviewing and documenting contracts reported on the completed-contract basis for consistent application of completion criteria.

- evaluating periodically the profitability of contracts and providing for losses on loss contracts in full at the earliest date on which they are determinable.
- reconciling periodically the total earned revenue on a contract to total billings on the contract.

A contractor's monitoring of controls over contract revenues ensures that internal control continues to operate effectively.

Construction Equipment

8.24 Contractors frequently have substantial investments in construction equipment. The dollar amounts involved and the necessity of charging equipment costs to contracts make it necessary to maintain effective controls over equipment. Records normally should be maintained for all major equipment, including adequate cost information that is in agreement with the general accounting records; this information enables the contractor to charge each project with costs related to the equipment being used on it. Other essential controls include having reporting procedures in place to control and record the transfer of equipment between projects, having the project managers review periodic equipment reports that include the location of the equipment, and performing periodic inventories of field equipment at the completion of each project. During economic downturns, equipment frequently becomes idle; therefore, it is necessary to have procedures in place to ensure that such equipment is identified and its carrying amount is evaluated for recoverability in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 360, *Property, Plant, and Equipment*, as discussed in chapter 2, "Accounting for Performance of Construction-Type Contracts."

8.25 Adequate controls over small equipment, such as power hand tools, at the job site prevent loss or pilferage. Such equipment is often charged directly to a contract.

Claims, Extras, and Back Charges

8.26 Controls over claims, extras, back charges, and similar items are necessary to provide reasonable assurance that such items are properly documented and provide for the accumulation of related revenues and costs. For example, one desirable procedure is to require written authorizations for change orders from an authorized customer representative before doing extra work. Another effective control is to have procedures in place for identifying and evaluating the financial accounting and reporting implications of claims filed against the contractor pursuant to FASB ASC 450, *Contingencies*, including those arising from litigation and assessments.

Joint Ventures

8.27 Control over the operations of joint ventures is essential for the financial success of the venture and the participating contractors. Although the nature and extent of control over the operations and the accounting records of joint ventures vary with each venture, a joint venture participant generally should be satisfied that adequate accounting records and desirable controls are maintained.

Internal Audit Function

8.28 Contractors engaged in large, complex, and diverse operations especially benefit from internal auditing. An internal audit staff may conduct both operational and financial reviews at a contractor's administrative offices as well as at job sites. The reviews generally should cover the estimates of cost to complete and the methods used to measure performance on individual contracts. Internal auditors ordinarily should be involved in testing and evaluating every important control area discussed in this chapter. Their intimate involvement can provide management with continuous feedback on the effectiveness of internal control and the degree of compliance with company policies, and such involvement can enable the internal auditors to make recommendations for improvements in the entity's internal control.

8.29 One of the objectives of internal audits at job sites is to determine whether personnel at the sites are complying with the contractor's established policies and practices. Such audits may involve a physical inspection of equipment and review and testing of expenditures (including payroll disbursements) from a job site office, status reports to the home office, field equipment records, and contract billings to determine their appropriateness.

Chapter 9

Planning the Audit, Assessing and Responding to Audit Risk, and Additional Auditing Considerations

© Update 9-1 *Audit: Clarified Auditing Standards*

The auditing guidance in this guide edition has been conformed to Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) Nos. 122–127 (referred to as clarified SASs), which were issued as part of the Auditing Standards Board's Clarity Project. These clarified SASs are effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012. Although the Clarity Project was not intended to create additional requirements, some revisions have resulted in changes that may require auditors to make adjustments in their practices.

To assist auditors and financial reporting professionals in making the transition, this guide includes appendix B, "Mapping and Summarization of Changes—Clarified Auditing Standards," which provides a cross reference of the sections in the superseded auditing standards to the applicable sections in the clarified auditing standards and identifies the changes, either substantive or primarily clarifying in nature, that may affect an auditor's practice or methodology relative to the applicable sections of SAS Nos. 122–127. It also summarizes the changes resulting from the requirements of SAS Nos. 122–127.

The preface of this guide and the Financial Reporting Center on www.aicpa.org provide more information on the Clarity Project. Visit www.aicpa.org/sasclarity.

Scope of This Chapter

9.01 AU-C section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), addresses the independent auditor's overall responsibilities when conducting an audit of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS). Specifically, it sets out the overall objectives of the independent auditor (the auditor) and explains the nature and scope of an audit designed to enable the auditor to meet those objectives. It also explains the scope, authority, and structure of GAAS and includes requirements establishing the general responsibilities of the auditor applicable in all audits, including the obligation to comply with GAAS. Auditing standards provide a measure of audit quality and the objectives to be achieved in an audit. The preceding chapter discusses, from the perspective of management, the features of effective internal control that a contractor ordinarily should establish and maintain. This chapter provides guidance primarily on the application of certain standards. Specifically, this chapter provides guidance on the risk assessment process (which includes, among other things, obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment, including its internal control) and some general auditing considerations for construction contractors.

9.02 In some instances, a practitioner may be engaged to examine and to express an opinion on the design and operating effectiveness of a nonissuer's internal control over financial reporting that is integrated with an audit of the nonissuer's financial statements. The auditor's responsibility in connection with this type of attest engagement is beyond the scope of this guide. This type of engagement is discussed in AT section 501, *An Examination of an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting That Is Integrated With An Audit of Its Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). AT section 501 converges the standards practitioners use for reporting on a nonissuer's internal control with Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB) Auditing Standard No. 5, *An Audit of Internal Control That Is Integrated with An Audit of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *PCAOB Standards and Related Rules*, Auditing Standards). AT section 501 is effective when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after December 15, 2008.

Planning and Other Auditing Considerations

9.03 The objective of an audit of a construction contractor's financial statements is to provide financial statement users with an opinion by the auditor on whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework, which enhances the degree of confidence that intended users can place in the financial statements. As the basis for the auditor's opinion, GAAS require the auditor to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. It is obtained when the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to reduce audit risk (that is, the risk that the auditor expresses an inappropriate opinion when the financial statements are materially misstated) to an acceptably low level. This section addresses general planning considerations and other auditing considerations relevant to construction contractors.

Planning the Audit

9.04 AU-C section 300, *Planning an Audit* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), states that the objective of the auditor is to plan the audit so that it will be performed in an effective manner and addresses the auditor's responsibility to plan an audit of financial statements and notes that planning an audit involves establishing the overall audit strategy for the engagement and developing an audit plan. Adequate planning benefits the audit of financial statements in several ways, including the following:

- Helping the auditor identify and devote appropriate attention to important areas of the audit
- Helping the auditor identify and resolve potential problems on a timely basis
- Helping the auditor properly organize and manage the audit engagement so that it is performed in an effective and efficient manner
- Assisting in the selection of engagement team members with appropriate levels of capabilities and competence to respond to anticipated risks and allocating team member responsibilities
- Facilitating the direction and supervision of engagement team members and the review of their work

- Assisting, when applicable, in coordination of work done by auditors of components and specialists

9.05 AU-C section 300 establishes requirements and provides guidance on the considerations and activities applicable to planning and supervision of an audit conducted in accordance with GAAS, including the involvement of key engagement team members in planning; preliminary engagement activities; general planning activities, including establishing an overall audit strategy that sets the scope, timing and direction of the audit and that guides the development of the audit plan; determining the extent of the involvement of professionals possessing specialized skills; additional considerations for initial audit engagements, including performing procedures required by AU-C section 220, *Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), and any necessary communications in accordance with AU-C section 210, *Terms of Engagement* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*); and documentation considerations.

9.06 The nature and extent of planning activities will vary according to the size and complexity of the entity, the key engagement team members' previous experience with the entity, and changes in circumstances that occur during the audit engagement. Planning is not a discrete phase of an audit but rather a continual and iterative process that often begins shortly after (or in connection with) the completion of the previous audit and continues until the completion of the current audit engagement. Planning, however, includes consideration of the timing of certain activities and audit procedures that need to be completed prior to the performance of further audit procedures.

Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance

9.07 The objectives of the auditor's communication with those charged with governance, as prescribed in AU-C section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), are to

- a. communicate clearly with those charged with governance the responsibilities of the auditor regarding the financial statement audit and an overview of the planned scope and timing of the audit.
- b. obtain from those charged with governance information relevant to the audit.
- c. provide those charged with governance with timely observations arising from the audit that are significant and relevant to their responsibility to oversee the financial reporting process.
- d. promote effective two-way communication between the auditor and those charged with governance.

9.08 AU-C section 260, recognizing the importance of effective two-way communication in an audit of financial statements, provides an overarching framework for the auditor's communication with those charged with governance and identifies some specific matters to be communicated.¹ Paragraph

¹ Additional matters to be communicated are identified in other AU-C sections. In addition, AU-C section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), establishes specific requirements regarding the communication of significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in internal control the auditor has identified during the audit

(continued)

.06 of AU-C section 260 defines *those charged with governance* as the person(s) or organization(s) (for example, a corporate trustee) with responsibility for overseeing the strategic direction of the entity and the obligations related to the accountability of the entity. This includes overseeing the financial reporting process. Those charged with governance may include management personnel; for example, executive members of a governance board or an owner-manager. In most entities, governance is the collective responsibility of a governing body, such as a board of directors; a supervisory board; partners; proprietors; a committee of management; trustees; or equivalent persons. In some smaller entities, however, one person may be charged with governance, such as the owner-manager, when there are no other owners, or a sole trustee. When governance is a collective responsibility, a subgroup, such as an audit committee or even an individual, may be charged with specific tasks to assist the governing body in meeting its responsibilities.

9.09 AU-C section 260 notes that clear communication of the auditor's responsibilities, the planned scope and timing of the audit and the expected general content of communications help establish the basis of effective two-way communication. Matters that may also contribute to effective two-way communication include discussion of the

- purpose of communications. When the purpose is clear, the auditor and those charged with governance are in a better position to have a mutual understanding of relevant issues and the expected actions arising from the communication process.
- form in which communications will be made.
- person(s) on the audit team and among those charged with governance who will communicate regarding particular matters.
- auditor's expectation that communication will be two-way and that those charged with governance will communicate with the auditor matters they consider relevant to the audit. Such matters might include (a) strategic decisions that may significantly affect the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures; (b) the suspicion or the detection of fraud; or (c) concerns with the integrity or competence of senior management.
- process for taking action and reporting back on matters communicated by the auditor.
- process for taking action and reporting back on matters communicated by those charged with governance.

9.10 Although AU-C section 260 applies regardless of an entity's governance structure or size, particular considerations apply when all of those charged with governance are involved in managing an entity. This section does not establish requirements regarding the auditor's communication with an entity's management or owners unless they are also charged with a governance role.

9.11 In some cases, all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity; for example, a small business in which a single owner

(footnote continued)

to those charged with governance. Further matters not required by generally accepted auditing standards may be required to be communicated by agreement with those charged with governance or management or in accordance with external requirements.

manages the entity and no one else has a governance role. In these cases, if matters required by this section are communicated with a person(s) with management responsibilities and that person(s) also has governance responsibilities, the matters need not be communicated again with the same person(s) in that person's governance role. These matters are noted in paragraph .14 of AU-C section 260. The auditor should, nonetheless, be satisfied that communication with person(s) with management responsibilities adequately informs all of those with whom the auditor would otherwise communicate in their governance capacity.

9.12 The communication process will vary with the circumstances, including the size and governance structure of the entity, how those charged with governance operate, and the auditor's view of the significance of matters to be communicated. The importance of effective two-way communication is evidenced by the statement in paragraph .A36 of AU-C section 260 that difficulty in establishing effective two-way communication may indicate that the communication between the auditor and those charged with governance is not adequate for the purpose of the audit.

9.13 In fact, if the two-way communication between the auditor and those charged with governance is not adequate and the situation cannot be resolved, the auditor may take actions such as the following:

- Modifying the auditor's opinion on the basis of a scope limitation
- Obtaining legal advice about the consequences of different courses of action
- Communicating with third parties (for example, a regulator) or a higher authority in the governance structure that is outside the entity, such as the owners of a business (for example, shareholders in a general meeting), or the responsible government agency for certain governmental entities
- Withdrawing from the engagement when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation

9.14 The auditor should communicate the auditor's responsibilities with regards to the financial statement audit and these communications should include that

- a. the auditor is responsible for forming and expressing an opinion about whether the financial statements that have been prepared by management, with the oversight of those charged with governance, are prepared, in all material respects, in conformity with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- b. the audit of the financial statements does not relieve management or those charged with governance of their responsibilities.

9.15 Paragraph .12 of AU-C section 260 identifies the following matters related to significant findings or issues in the audit that the auditor should communicate with those charged with governance:

- a. The auditor's views about qualitative aspects of the entity's significant accounting practices, including accounting policies, accounting estimates, and financial statement disclosures. When applicable, the auditor should

- i. explain to those charged with governance why the auditor considers a significant accounting practice that is acceptable under the applicable financial reporting framework not to be most appropriate to the particular circumstances of the entity and
 - ii. determine that those charged with governance are informed about the process used by management in formulating particularly sensitive accounting estimates, including fair value estimates, and about the basis for the auditor's conclusions regarding the reasonableness of those estimates.
- b. Significant difficulties, if any, encountered during the audit.
 - c. Disagreements with management, if any.
 - d. Other findings or issues, if any, arising from the audit that are, in the auditor's professional judgment, significant and relevant to those charged with governance regarding their responsibility to oversee the financial reporting process.

9.16 Further, and more specifically, with respect to uncorrected misstatements in the audit, the auditor should communicate with those charged with governance uncorrected misstatements accumulated by the auditor and the effect that they, individually or in the aggregate, may have on the opinion in the auditor's report and the effect of uncorrected misstatements related to prior periods on the relevant classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures, and the financial statements as a whole. The auditor's communication should identify material uncorrected misstatements individually and should request that uncorrected misstatements be corrected.

9.17 In the case when not all of those charged with governance are involved in management, the auditor should also communicate

- a. material, corrected misstatements that were brought to the attention of management as a result of audit procedures.
- b. significant findings or issues, if any, arising from the audit that were discussed, or the subject of correspondence, with management.
- c. the auditor's views about significant matters that were the subject of management's consultations with other accountants on accounting or auditing matters when the auditor is aware that such consultation has occurred.
- d. written representations the auditor is requesting.

9.18 Readers can refer to AU-C section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), and chapter 11, "Other Audit Considerations," for guidance pertaining to the communication of internal control related matters. Readers can refer to AU-C section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), and chapter 12, "Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit," for guidance pertaining to communication about possible fraud. For additional matters to be communicated to those charged with governance, readers can refer to the "Application and Other Explanatory Material" section of AU-C section 260.

9.19 Nothing in AU-C section 260 precludes the auditor from communicating any other matters to those charged with governance.

Audit Risk

9.20 AU-C section 200 states that *audit risk* is the risk that the auditor expresses an inappropriate audit opinion when the financial statements are materially misstated and is a function of the risks of material misstatement and detection risk. The auditor should obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level and thereby enable the auditor to draw reasonable conclusions on which to base the auditor's opinion.

9.21 *Detection risk* is the risk that the procedures performed by the auditor to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level will not detect a misstatement that exists and that could be material, either individually or when aggregated with other misstatements. The *risk of material misstatement* is the risk that the financial statements are materially misstated prior to the audit and consists of inherent risk and control risk, both at the assertion level.

9.22 GAAS does not ordinarily refer to inherent risk and control risk separately, but rather to a combined assessment of the risks of material misstatement. However, the auditor may make separate or combined assessments of inherent and control risk depending on preferred audit techniques or methodologies and practical considerations. The assessment of the risks of material misstatement may be expressed in quantitative terms, such as in percentages or in nonquantitative terms. In any case, the need for the auditor to make appropriate risk assessments is more important than the different approaches by which they may be made.

9.23 The auditor should, while establishing a basis for designing and performing further audit procedures, identify and assess the risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level and at the relevant assertion level for classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures. Risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level for classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures need to be considered because such consideration directly assists in determining the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures at the assertion level necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

9.24 In identifying and assessing risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level, the auditor may conclude that the identified risks relate more pervasively to the financial statements as a whole and potentially affect many relevant assertions. Risks of this nature are not necessarily risks identifiable with specific assertions at the class of transactions, account balance, or disclosure level. Rather, they represent circumstances that may increase the risks of material misstatement at the assertion level (for example, through management override of internal control). For audits of construction contractors, a major area of risks of misstatements is in the area of contracts. Contracts have a pervasive effect at the account balance, class of transactions, and disclosure level. The factors in exhibit 9-1 indicate the effect of various aspects of construction contracts on audit risk.

Exhibit 9-1

Factor	<i>Characteristics That Normally Reduce Audit Risk</i>	<i>Characteristics That Normally Increase Audit Risk</i>
Percent of contract complete	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0% to 10% • > 90 % 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 10% to 90%
Size of project	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Relatively small job 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Relatively large job
Type of project	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Simple/routine • Within contractor's expertise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Complex, one of a kind • Not within contractor's expertise
Timing and scheduling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Short-term project • Work is on schedule • Comfortable time frame • No penalties for late completion 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Long-term project • Work is falling behind schedule • Accelerated time frame • Significant penalties for late completion
Location	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Established area with past successful projects • Materials and labor readily available 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New area • Remote area—materials and labor not readily available
Weather	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Low susceptibility to adverse weather 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High susceptibility to adverse weather
Owner/investor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Many previous contracts with contractor • Solid financial position 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Very few previous contracts with contractor • Weak financial position
Subcontractors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large portion of work performed by subcontractors • Many previous contracts with contractor • Solid financial position • Majority of significant subcontract agreements finalized 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Small portion of work performed by subcontractors • Very few previous contracts with contractor • Weak financial position • Majority of significant subcontract agreements not finalized
Bid spread	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Narrow variances in bid amounts among competing contractors 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Significant variances in bid amounts among competing contractors
Profit fade	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No significant profit fade 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Significant profit fade

<i>Factor</i>	<i>Characteristics That Normally Reduce Audit Risk</i>	<i>Characteristics That Normally Increase Audit Risk</i>
Underbilling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Nominal underbilling (cost and estimated earnings in excess of billings) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unusual/significant underbilling
Type of contract	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cost-type, clear definition of reimbursable costs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fixed-price Cost-type, difficult to determine reimbursable costs
Claims	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No claims 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Significant claims
Material costs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Low susceptibility to price escalations during performance of contract 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High susceptibility to price escalations during performance of contract

Materiality

9.25 The concept of materiality is applied by the auditor both in planning and performing the audit; evaluating the effect of identified misstatements on the audit and the effect of uncorrected misstatements, if any, on the financial statements; and in forming the opinion in the auditor's report. In planning the audit, the auditor makes judgments about the size of misstatements that will be considered material. These judgments provide a basis for

- a. determining the nature and extent of risk assessment procedures;
- b. identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement; and
- c. determining the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures.

9.26 The auditor's determination of materiality is a matter of professional judgment and is affected by the auditor's perception of the financial information needs of users of the financial statements.

9.27 The materiality determined when planning the audit does not necessarily establish an amount below which uncorrected misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, will always be evaluated as immaterial. The circumstances related to some misstatements may cause the auditor to evaluate them as material even if they are below materiality. Although it is not practicable to design audit procedures to detect misstatements that could be material solely because of their nature (that is, qualitative considerations), the auditor considers not only the size but also the nature of uncorrected misstatements, and the particular circumstances of their occurrence, when evaluating their effect on the financial statements.

9.28 When establishing the overall audit strategy, the auditor should determine materiality for the financial statements as a whole. If, in the specific circumstances of the entity, one or more particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures exist for which misstatements of lesser amounts than materiality for the financial statements as a whole could reasonably be

expected to influence the economic decisions of users, then, taken on the basis of the financial statements, the auditor also should determine the materiality level or levels to be applied to those particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures.

9.29 Once established during planning, materiality is not static throughout the audit. The auditor should revise materiality for the financial statements as a whole (and, if applicable, the materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures) in the event of becoming aware of information during the audit that would have caused the auditor to have determined a different amount (or amounts) initially.

Performance Materiality

9.30 Planning the audit solely to detect individual material misstatements overlooks the fact that the aggregate of individually immaterial misstatements may cause the financial statements to be materially misstated and leaves no margin for possible undetected misstatements. To address this concern, performance materiality is considered. Performance materiality is the amount or amounts set by the auditor at less than materiality for the financial statements as a whole to reduce to an appropriately low level the probability that the aggregate of uncorrected and undetected misstatements exceeds materiality for the financial statements as a whole. If applicable, *performance materiality* also refers to the amount or amounts set by the auditor at less than the materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures. Performance materiality is to be distinguished from tolerable misstatement.

Qualitative Aspects of Materiality

9.31 Determining whether a classification misstatement is material involves the evaluation of qualitative considerations, such as the effect of the classification misstatement on debt or other contractual covenants, the effect on individual line items or subtotals, or the effect on key ratios. Circumstances may exist in which the auditor concludes that a classification misstatement is not material in the context of the financial statements as a whole, even though it may exceed the materiality level or levels applied in evaluating other misstatements. For example, a misclassification between balance sheet line items may not be considered material in the context of the financial statements as a whole when the amount of the misclassification is small in relation to the size of the related balance sheet line items and the misclassification does not affect the income statement or any key ratios.

9.32 The circumstances related to some misstatements may cause the auditor to evaluate them as material, individually or when considered together with other misstatements accumulated during the audit, even if they are lower than materiality for the financial statements as a whole. Paragraph .A23 of AU-C section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), provides qualitative factors that the auditor may consider relevant in determining whether misstatements are material.

Use of Assertions in Obtaining Audit Evidence

9.33 Paragraphs .A113–.A115 of AU-C section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*

(AICPA, *Professional Standards*), discuss the use of assertions in obtaining audit evidence. In representing that the financial statements are in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, management implicitly or explicitly makes assertions regarding the recognition, measurement, presentation, and disclosure of the various elements of financial statements and related disclosures. Assertions used by the auditor to consider the different types of potential misstatements that may occur fall into the following three categories and may take the following forms:

Categories of Assertions

	<i>Description of Assertions</i>		
	<i>Classes of Transactions and Events During the Period Under Audit</i>	<i>Account Balances at the End of the Period</i>	<i>Presentation and Disclosure</i>
Occurrence/ Existence	Transactions and events that have been recorded have occurred and pertain to the entity.	Assets, liabilities, and equity interests exist.	Disclosed events and transactions have occurred.
Rights and Obligations	—	The entity holds or controls the rights to assets, and liabilities are the obligations of the entity.	Disclosed events and transactions pertain to the entity.
Completeness	All transactions and events that should have been recorded have been recorded.	All assets, liabilities, and equity interests that should have been recorded have been recorded.	All disclosures that should have been included in the financial statements have been included.
Accuracy/ Valuation and Allocation	Amounts and other data relating to recorded transactions and events have been recorded appropriately.	Assets, liabilities, and equity interests are included in the financial statements at appropriate amounts, and any resulting valuation or allocation adjustments are recorded appropriately.	Financial and other information is disclosed fairly and at appropriate amounts.

(continued)

Categories of Assertions—continued

	Description of Assertions		
	<i>Classes of Transactions and Events During the Period Under Audit</i>	<i>Account Balances at the End of the Period</i>	<i>Presentation and Disclosure</i>
Cut-off	Transactions and events have been recorded in the correct accounting period.	Transactions and events have been recorded in the correct accounting period.	—
Classification and Understandability	Transactions and events have been recorded in the proper accounts.	—	Financial information is appropriately presented and described, and information in disclosures is expressed clearly.

9.34 The auditor should use relevant assertions for classes of transactions, account balances, and presentation and disclosures in sufficient detail to form a basis for the assessment of risks of material misstatement and the design and performance of further audit procedures. The auditor should use relevant assertions in assessing risks by the identified risks to what can go wrong at the relevant assertion, taking account of relevant controls that the auditor intends to test, and designing further audit procedures that are responsive to the assessed risks.

Understanding the Entity, Its Environment, and Its Internal Control

9.35 AU-C section 315 addresses the auditor's responsibility to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement in the financial statements through understanding the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control.

9.36 Obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment, including its internal control, is a continuous, dynamic process of gathering, updating, and analyzing information throughout the audit.

9.37 The auditor is required to exercise professional judgment² to determine the extent of the required understanding of the entity. The auditor's primary consideration is whether the understanding of the entity that has been

² Paragraph .18 of AU-C section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), requires the auditor to exercise professional judgment in planning and performing an audit.

obtained is sufficient to meet the objective stated in this section. Note that the depth of the overall understanding that is required by the auditor is less than that possessed by management in managing the entity.

Risk Assessment Procedures

9.38 As described AU-C section 315, audit procedures performed to obtain an understanding of the entity and its environment, including its internal control, to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, at the financial statement and relevant assertion levels are referred to as *risk assessment procedures*. Paragraph .05 of AU-C section 315 states that the auditor should perform risk assessment procedures to provide a basis for the identification and assessment of risks of material misstatement at the financial statement and relevant assertion levels. Risk assessment procedures by themselves, however, do not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the audit.

9.39 In accordance with paragraph .06 of AU-C section 315, risk assessment procedures should include

- inquiries of management and others within the entity who, in the auditor's professional judgment, may have information that is likely to assist in identifying risks of material misstatement due to fraud or error.
- analytical procedures.
- observation and inspection.

Discussion Among the Audit Team

9.40 The engagement partner and other key engagement team members should discuss the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement and the application of the applicable financial reporting framework to the entity's facts and circumstances. The engagement partner should determine which matters are to be communicated to engagement team members not involved in the discussion. This discussion may be held concurrently with the discussion among the engagement team that is required by paragraph .15 of AU-C section 240 to discuss the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to fraud.

Understanding the Entity and Its Environment

9.41 The auditor should obtain an understanding of the following:

- a. Relevant industry, regulatory, and other external factors, including the applicable financial reporting framework
- b. The nature of the entity, including
 - i. its operations;
 - ii. its ownership and governance structures;
 - iii. the types of investments that the entity is making and plans to make, including investments in entities formed to accomplish specific objectives; and
 - iv. the way that the entity is structured and how it is financed, to enable the auditor to understand the classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures to be expected in the financial statements

- c. The entity's selection and application of accounting policies, including the reasons for changes thereto. The auditor should evaluate whether the entity's accounting policies are appropriate for its business and consistent with the applicable financial reporting framework and accounting policies used in the relevant industry
- d. The entity's objectives and strategies and those related business risks that may result in risks of material misstatement
- e. The measurement and review of the entity's financial performance

Refer to the "Application and Other Explanatory Material" section of AU-C section 315 for examples of matters that the auditor may consider in obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment relating to categories (a)–(e).

Review of Contracts

9.42 As part of obtaining the required understanding described in the preceding paragraphs, the auditor would normally review the terms of a representative sample of the contractor's contracts applicable to the period under audit. This review includes both contracts with customers and contracts with subcontractors. Information that the auditor would expect to find is set forth in the following. This information can be used in the preliminary review of contracts and also in the other stages of the audit:

- Job number
- Type of contract
- Contract price
- Original cost estimate and related gross profit
- Billing and retention terms
- Provisions for changes in contract prices and terms, such as escalation, cancellation, and renegotiation
- Penalty or bonus features relating to completion dates and other performance criteria
- Bonding and insurance requirements
- Location and description of project

9.43 Contract files may indicate bids entered by other contractors. If these are available, the auditor would normally investigate significant differences between such bids and the related contracts to evaluate whether there may be inherent errors in the estimating and bidding process.

Understanding of Internal Control

9.44 AU-C section 315 defines *internal control* as "a process effected by those charged with governance, management, and other personnel that is designed to provide reasonable assurance about the achievement of the entity's objectives with regard to the reliability of financial reporting, effectiveness and efficiency of operations, and compliance with applicable laws and regulations."

9.45 The auditor should obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit. Although most controls relevant to the audit are likely to relate to financial reporting, not all controls that relate to financial reporting are relevant to the audit. When obtaining an understanding of controls that are relevant to the audit, the auditor should evaluate the design of those controls

and determine whether they have been implemented by performing procedures in addition to inquiry of the entity's personnel.

9.46 Evaluating the design of a control involves considering whether the control, individually or in combination with other controls, is capable of effectively preventing, or detecting and correcting, material misstatements. Implementation of a control means that the control exists and that the entity is using it. Assessing the implementation of a control that is not effectively designed is of little use, and so the design of a control is considered first. An improperly designed control may represent a significant deficiency or material weakness in the entity's internal control.

9.47 Risk assessment procedures to obtain audit evidence about the design and implementation of relevant controls may include

- inquiring of entity personnel.
- observing the application of specific controls.
- inspecting documents and reports.
- tracing transactions through the information system relevant to financial reporting.

Inquiry alone, however, is not sufficient for such purposes.

9.48 Obtaining an understanding of an entity's controls is not sufficient to test their operating effectiveness, unless some automation provides for the consistent operation of the controls. Tests of the operating effectiveness of controls are further described in AU-C section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

9.49 Internal control consists of five interrelated components:

- The control environment
- The entity's risk assessment process
- The information system, including the related business processes relevant to financial reporting and communication
- Control activities
- Monitoring of controls

Refer paragraphs .15–.25 of AU-C section 315 for a detailed discussion of the internal control components.

Control Environment

9.50 The auditor should obtain an understanding of the control environment. As part of obtaining this understanding, the auditor should evaluate whether

- a. management, with the oversight of those charged with governance, has created and maintained a culture of honesty and ethical behavior and
- b. the strengths in the control environment elements collectively provide an appropriate foundation for the other components of internal control and whether those other components are not undermined by deficiencies in the control environment.

Risk Assessment Process

9.51 The auditor should obtain an understanding of whether the entity has a process for

- a. identifying business risks relevant to financial reporting objectives,
- b. estimating the significance of the risks,
- c. assessing the likelihood of their occurrence, and
- d. deciding about actions to address those risks.

9.52 If the entity has established a risk assessment process, the auditor should obtain an understanding of it and the results thereof. If the entity has not established such a process, or has an ad hoc process, the auditor should discuss with management whether business risks relevant to financial reporting objectives have been identified and how they have been addressed. The auditor should evaluate whether the absence of a documented risk assessment process is appropriate in the circumstances or determine whether it represents a significant deficiency or material weakness in the entity's internal control.

The Information System, Including the Related Business Processes Relevant to Financial Reporting and Communication

9.53 The auditor should obtain an understanding of the information system, including the related business processes relevant to financial reporting, including the following areas:

- a. The classes of transactions in the entity's operations that are significant to the financial statements
- b. The procedures within both IT and manual systems by which those transactions are initiated, authorized, recorded, processed, corrected as necessary, transferred to the general ledger, and reported in the financial statements
- c. The related accounting records supporting information and specific accounts in the financial statements that are used to initiate, authorize, record, process, and report transactions. This includes the correction of incorrect information and how information is transferred to the general ledger. The records may be in either manual or electronic form
- d. How the information system captures events and conditions, other than transactions, that are significant to the financial statements
- e. The financial reporting process used to prepare the entity's financial statements, including significant accounting estimates and disclosures
- f. Controls surrounding journal entries, including nonstandard journal entries used to record nonrecurring, unusual transactions, or adjustments
- g. The way that the entity communicates financial reporting roles and responsibilities and significant matters relating to financial reporting, including communications between management and those charged with governance and external communications, such as those with regulatory authorities

Control Activities

9.54 The auditor should obtain an understanding of control activities relevant to the audit, which are those control activities the auditor judges necessary to understand in order to assess the risks of material misstatement at the assertion level and design further audit procedures responsive to assessed risks.

9.55 An audit does not require an understanding of all the control activities related to each significant class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure in the financial statements or to every assertion relevant to them. However, the auditor should obtain an understanding of the controls relevant to the audit; those over financial reporting necessary to assure the financial information is appropriately accumulated and reported.

9.56 Control activities that are relevant to the audit are those that are required to be treated as such, being control activities that relate to significant risks and those that relate to risks for which substantive procedures alone do not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence or considered to be relevant in the professional judgment of the auditor.

9.57 Further, in understanding the entity's control activities, the auditor should obtain an understanding of how the entity has responded to risks arising from IT.

Monitoring of Controls

9.58 The auditor should obtain an understanding of the major activities that the entity uses to monitor internal control over financial reporting, including those related to those control activities relevant to the audit, and how the entity initiates remedial actions to deficiencies in its controls.

9.59 If the contractor has an internal audit function, the auditor, to determine whether the internal audit function is likely to be relevant to the audit, should obtain an understanding of

- The nature of the internal audit function's responsibilities and how the internal audit function fits in the entity's organizational structure
- The activities performed or to be performed by the internal audit function

9.60 The auditor should obtain an understanding of the sources of the information used in the entity's monitoring activities and the basis upon which management considers the information to be sufficiently reliable for the purpose.

Assessment of Risks of Material Misstatement and the Design of Further Audit Procedures

9.61 As discussed previously, risk assessment procedures allow the auditor to gather the information necessary to obtain an understanding of the entity and its environments, including its internal control. This knowledge provides a basis for assessing the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements. These risk assessments are then used to design further audit procedures, such as tests of controls, substantive tests, or both. This section

provides guidance on assessing the risks of material misstatement and how to design further audit procedures that effectively respond to those risks.

Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement

9.62 Paragraph .26 of AU-C section 315 states that the auditor should identify and assess the risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level and at the relevant assertion level related to classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures. For this purpose, the auditor should

- identify risks throughout the process of obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment, including relevant controls that relate to the risks, by considering the classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures in the financial statements.
- assess the identified risks and evaluate whether they relate more pervasively to the financial statements as a whole and potentially affect many assertions.
- relate the identified risks to what can go wrong at the relevant assertion level, taking account of relevant controls that the auditor intends to test; and
- consider the likelihood of misstatement, including the possibility of multiple misstatements, and whether the potential misstatement is of a magnitude that could result in a material misstatement.

9.63 The auditor should use information gathered by performing risk assessment procedures, including the audit evidence obtained in evaluating the design of controls and determining whether they have been implemented, as audit evidence to support the risk assessment. The auditor should use the assessment of the risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level as the basis to determine the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures to be performed.

Identification of Significant Risks

9.64 As part of the assessment of the risks of material misstatement, the auditor should determine whether any of the risks identified are, in the auditor's professional judgment, a significant risk, those that require special audit consideration (such risks are defined as *significant risks*).

9.65 Significant risks often relate to significant nonroutine transactions and matters that require significant judgment. *Nonroutine transactions* are transactions that are unusual, either due to size or nature, and that, therefore, occur infrequently. Matters that require significant judgment, and are especially significant in the construction industry, may include the development of accounting estimates for which a significant measurement uncertainty exists.

9.66 In exercising professional judgment about which risks are significant risks, the auditor should consider at least

- a. whether the risk is a risk of fraud;
- b. whether the risk is related to recent significant economic, accounting, or other developments and, therefore, requires specific attention;
- c. the complexity of transactions;

- d. whether the risk involves significant transactions with related parties;
- e. the degree of subjectivity in the measurement of financial information related to the risk, especially those measurements involving a wide range of measurement uncertainty; and
- f. whether the risk involves significant transactions that are outside the normal course of business for the entity or that otherwise appears to be unusual.

9.67 In the construction industry, auditors may find that a significant risk exists with regards to the accuracy of management's estimates of costs to complete for contracts in progress. Another example of a significant risk area may include contract revenues due to the possible effects of unsigned or unpriced change orders and claims. The auditor's understanding of the contractor's controls for such significant risks includes, for example, whether control activities (such as a review of estimates and contract prices by senior management and the existence of formal processes for compiling estimates) have been implemented to address the significant risks.

Designing and Performing Further Audit Procedures

9.68 AU-C section 330 addresses the auditor's responsibility to design and implement responses to the risks of material misstatement identified and assessed by the auditor in accordance with AU-C section 315 and to evaluate the audit evidence obtained in an audit of financial statements. The objective, outlined by AU-C section 330, is for the auditor to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the assessed risks of material misstatement through designing and implementing appropriate responses to those risks.

9.69 To reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level, the auditor (a) should design and implement overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level and (b) should design and perform further audit procedures whose nature, timing, and extent are based on, and are responsive to, the assessed risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level.

Overall Responses

9.70 The auditor's overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level may include emphasizing to the audit team the need to maintain professional skepticism in gathering and evaluating audit evidence, assigning more experienced staff or those with specialized skills or using specialists, providing more supervision, or incorporating additional elements of unpredictability in the selection of further audit procedures to be performed. Additionally, the auditor may make general changes to the nature, timing, or extent of further audit procedures as an overall response, for example, by performing substantive procedures at period end instead of at an interim date.

Further Audit Procedures

9.71 The auditor should design and perform further audit procedures whose nature, timing, and extent are based on, and are responsive to, the assessed risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level.

9.72 In some cases, an auditor may determine that performing only substantive procedures is appropriate for particular assertions, and therefore, the auditor excludes the effect of controls from the relevant risk assessment. This may be because the auditor's risk assessment procedures have not identified any effective controls relevant to the assertion or because testing controls would be inefficient, and therefore, the auditor does not intend to rely on the operating effectiveness of controls in determining the nature, timing, and extent of substantive procedures.

9.73 However, the auditor may determine that in addition to the substantive procedures that are required for all relevant assertions, in accordance with paragraph .18 of AU-C section 330, an effective response to the assessed risk of material misstatement for a particular assertion can be achieved only by also performing tests of controls. The auditor often will determine that a combined audit approach using both tests of the operating effectiveness of controls and substantive procedures is an effective audit approach.

9.74 The auditor should design and perform tests of controls to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of relevant controls if the auditor's assessment of risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level includes an expectation that the controls are operating effectively (that is, the auditor intends to rely on the operating effectiveness of controls in determining the nature, timing, and extent of substantive procedures) or substantive procedures alone cannot provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence at the relevant assertion level.

9.75 Tests of the operating effectiveness of controls are performed only on those controls that the auditor has determined are suitably designed to prevent, or detect and correct, a material misstatement in a relevant assertion.

9.76 Testing the operating effectiveness of controls is different from obtaining an understanding of and evaluating the design and implementation of controls. However, the same types of audit procedures are used. The auditor may, therefore, decide it is efficient to test the operating effectiveness of controls at the same time the auditor is evaluating their design and determining that they have been implemented.

9.77 When performing tests of controls, the auditor should obtain audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of the controls. This includes obtaining audit evidence about how controls were applied at relevant times during the period under audit, the consistency with which they were applied, and by whom or by what means they were applied, including, when applicable, whether the person performing the control possesses the necessary authority and competence to perform the control effectively. If substantially different controls were used at different times during the period under audit, the auditor should consider each separately.

9.78 Further, in designing and performing tests of controls, the auditor should determine whether the controls to be tested depend upon other controls (indirect controls) and, if so, whether it is necessary to obtain audit evidence supporting the operating effectiveness of those indirect controls.

9.79 Although some risk assessment procedures that the auditor performs to evaluate the design of controls and determine that they have been implemented may not have been specifically designed as tests of controls, they may

nevertheless provide audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of the controls and, consequently, serve as tests of controls.

9.80 The discussion of tests of controls relates only to those aspects of a contractor's internal control that relate to the relevant assertions that are likely to prevent or detect a material misstatement in the account balances, classes of transactions, and disclosure components of the financial statements. The preceding chapter outlines desirable components of internal control for, among other things, estimating and bidding, billings, contract costs, and contract revenues. Some of those controls may not be relevant to an audit and, therefore, need not be considered by the auditor. The auditor considers only those aspects of internal control that relate to the relevant assertions that are likely to prevent or detect a material misstatement in the account balances, classes of transactions, and disclosure components of the financial statements.

9.81 Tests of controls may consist of procedures such as inquires of appropriate entity personnel; observation of the application of the control; inspection of documents, reports, or electronic files indicating performance of the control; and reperformance of the application of the control by the auditor (such as tracing transactions through the information system). AU-C section 530, *Audit Sampling* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*),³ provides guidance on the use of audit sampling in audits conducted in accordance with GAAS. That guidance may be useful to auditors in determining the extent of tests of controls.

9.82 Substantive procedures are performed to detect material misstatements at the assertion level and include tests of details of classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures and substantive analytical procedures.

9.83 Regardless of the assessed risks of material misstatement, the auditor should design and perform substantive procedures for all relevant assertions related to each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure. This requirement reflects the facts that (a) the auditor's assessment of risk is judgmental and may not identify all risks of material misstatement and (b) inherent limitations to internal control exist, including management override.

Evaluating Misstatements

9.84 Based on the results of substantive procedures, the auditor may identify misstatements in accounts or notes to the financial statements. Per paragraph .05 of AU-C section 450, the auditor should accumulate misstatements identified during the audit, other than those that are clearly trivial, and should communicate on a timely basis with the appropriate level of management all misstatements accumulated during the audit, as well as request management to correct those misstatements

9.85 If management refuses to correct some or all of the misstatements communicated by the auditor, the auditor should obtain an understanding of management's reasons for not making the corrections and should take that understanding into account when evaluating whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement.

³ Refer to the AICPA Audit Guide *Audit Sampling*, which provides guidance to help auditors apply audit sampling in accordance with AU-C section 530, *Audit Sampling* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). This guide may be used both as a reference source for those who are knowledgeable about audit sampling and as initial background for those who are new to this area.

9.86 The auditor should determine whether uncorrected misstatements are material, individually or in the aggregate. In making this determination, the auditor should consider

- a. the size and nature of the misstatements, both in relation to particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures and the financial statements as a whole, and the particular circumstances of their occurrence and
- b. the effect of uncorrected misstatements related to prior periods on the relevant classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures and the financial statements as a whole.

Audit Documentation

9.87 Audit documentation that meets the requirements AU-C section 230, *Audit Documentation* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), and the specific documentation requirements of other relevant AU-C sections provides evidence of the auditor's basis for a conclusion about the achievement of the overall objectives of the audit and evidence that the audit was planned and performed in accordance with GAAS and applicable legal and regulatory requirements.

9.88 The objective of the auditor is to prepare documentation that provides a sufficient and appropriate record of the basis for the auditor's report and evidence that the audit was planned and performed in accordance with GAAS and applicable legal and regulatory requirements.

9.89 Audit documentation should be prepared on a timely basis and be sufficient to enable an experienced auditor, having no previous connection with the audit, to understand the nature, timing, extent and result of the procedures performed, the audit evidence obtained and the significant finding or issues which arose, the conclusions reached thereon and the significant professional judgments made in reaching those conclusions.

9.90 In documenting the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures performed, the auditor should record the identifying characteristics of the specific items or matters tested, who performed the work and the date such work was completed, and who reviewed the audit work performed and the date and extent of such review.

9.91 With respect to construction contracts and agreements used in audit procedures related to the inspection of significant contracts or agreements, the auditor should include abstracts or copies of those contracts or agreements in the audit documentation.

9.92 The auditor should assemble the audit documentation in an audit file and complete the administrative process of assembling the final audit file on a timely basis, no later than 60 days following the report release date. Statutes, regulations, or the audit firm's quality control policies may specify a shorter period of time in which this assembly process should be completed. After the documentation completion date, the auditor should not delete or discard audit documentation before the end of the specified retention period. Such retention period should not be shorter than five years from the report release date. Statutes, regulations, or the audit firm's quality control policies may specify a retention period longer than five years.

9.93 In many cases, the report release date will be the date the auditor delivers the audit report to the entity. When there are delays in releasing the report, a fact may become known to the auditor that, had it been known to the auditor at the date of the auditor's report, may have caused the auditor to revise the auditor's report. AU-C section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), addresses the auditor's responsibilities in such circumstances, and paragraph .14 of AU-C section 230 addresses the documentation requirements in the rare circumstances in which the auditor performs new or additional audit procedures or draws new conclusions after the date of the auditor's report.

9.94 Paragraph .41 of AU-C section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), states that the auditor's report should not be dated earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the auditor's opinion on the financial statements. Among other things, sufficient appropriate audit evidence includes evidence that the audit documentation has been reviewed and that the entity's financial statements, including the related notes, have been prepared and that management has asserted that it has taken responsibility for them.

9.95 Audit documentation is the property of the auditor, and some states recognize this right of ownership in their statutes. The auditor may make available to the entity at the auditor's discretion copies of the audit documentation, provided such disclosure does not undermine the effectiveness and integrity of the audit process.

9.96 Audit documentation requirements contained in other SASs can be found in the "Application and Other Explanatory Material" section of AU-C section 230.

Identifying and Evaluating Control Deficiencies

9.97 The auditor is required to obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit when identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control. The auditor may identify deficiencies in internal control not only during this risk assessment process but also at any other stage of the audit.

9.98 The auditor should determine whether, on the basis of the audit work performed, the auditor has identified one or more deficiencies in internal control. If the auditor has identified one or more deficiencies in internal control, the auditor should evaluate each deficiency to determine, on the basis of the audit work performed, whether, individually or in combination, they constitute significant deficiencies or material weaknesses. If the auditor determines that a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control is not a material weakness, the auditor should consider whether prudent officials, having knowledge of the same facts and circumstances, would likely reach the same conclusion.

9.99 The auditor should communicate in writing to those charged with governance on a timely basis significant deficiencies and material weaknesses

identified during the audit, including those that were remediated during the audit.

9.100 The auditor also should communicate to management at an appropriate level of responsibility, on a timely basis in writing, significant deficiencies and material weaknesses that the auditor has communicated or intends to communicate to those charged with governance, unless it would be inappropriate to communicate directly to management in the circumstances. Further, the auditor should communicate to management at an appropriate level of responsibility, on a timely basis in writing or orally, other deficiencies in internal control identified during the audit that have not been communicated to management by other parties and that, in the auditor's professional judgment, are of sufficient importance to merit management's attention. If other deficiencies in internal control are communicated orally, the auditor should document the communication.

9.101 The auditor should not issue a written communication stating that no significant deficiencies were identified during the audit.

Chapter 10

Major Auditing Procedures for Contractors

© Update 10-1 *Audit: Clarified Auditing Standards*

The auditing guidance in this guide edition has been conformed to Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) Nos. 122–127 (referred to as clarified SASs), which were issued as part of the Auditing Standards Board's Clarity Project. These clarified SASs are effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012. Although the Clarity Project was not intended to create additional requirements, some revisions have resulted in changes that may require auditors to make adjustments in their practices.

To assist auditors and financial reporting professionals in making the transition, this guide includes appendix B, "Mapping and Summarization of Changes—Clarified Auditing Standards," which provides a cross reference of the sections in the superseded auditing standards to the applicable sections in the clarified auditing standards and identifies the changes, either substantive or primarily clarifying in nature, that may affect an auditor's practice or methodology relative to the applicable sections of SAS Nos. 122–127. It also summarizes the changes resulting from the requirements of SAS Nos. 122–127.

The preface of this guide and the Financial Reporting Center on www.aicpa.org provide more information on the Clarity Project. Visit www.aicpa.org/sasclarity.

10.01 This chapter provides guidance on the major auditing procedures applicable to financial statement audits of construction contractors. The areas discussed are job site visits, accounts receivable, liabilities related to contracts, contract costs, income recognition, and review of backlog on existing contracts. As discussed in chapter 9, "Planning the Audit, Assessing and Responding to Audit Risk, and Additional Auditing Considerations," the nature, timing, and extent of these procedures should be responsive to the assessed risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level. In accordance with AU-C section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), certain substantive procedures should be performed on all engagements. These procedures include

- performing substantive procedures for all relevant assertions related to each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure;
- agreeing or reconciling the financial statements to the underlying accounting records; and
- examining material journal entries and other adjustments made during the course of preparing the financial statements.

Job Site Visits and Interim Audit Procedures

10.02 In certain situations, job site visits are essential for the auditor to understand the contractor's operations and to relate the internal accounting information to events that occur at the job sites. All or part of the accounting function relating to a given project may be performed at a temporary job site office staffed by a limited number of trained accounting personnel, and internal control at job sites may be ineffective. Observations and discussions with operating personnel at the job sites may also assist the auditor in assessing physical security, the status of projects, and the representations of management (for example, representations about the stage of completion and estimated costs to complete). The auditor should consider using specialists, such as outside engineering consultants, in performing job site audit procedures. AU-C section 620, *Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), provides guidance and establishes requirements in this area. Job site visits assist the auditor in meeting the following objectives:

- Gaining an understanding of the contractor's method of operations
- Determining that the job actually exists
- Obtaining information from field employees to corroborate the information obtained from management, including whether employees at the job site are the same ones whose time is charged to the job
- Obtaining an understanding of those components of internal control maintained at the job site
- Obtaining information relating to job status, including whether materials charged to the job have been installed, and problems (if any) that may be useful in other phases of the audit
- Obtaining information of fixed assets, including equipment or company vehicles, obtaining the VIN or equipment numbers and physically confirming the existence

10.03 These objectives can usually be achieved during one visit to a job site. To do so, however, requires careful planning so that the information to be obtained or examined will be identified before the visit. Furthermore, to meet the third objective, it is usually desirable, before selecting the job sites to be visited, to consider (a) the contractor's internal control; (b) the size, nature, significance, and location of projects; and (c) projects that have unusual features or that appear to be troublesome. Unusual or troublesome contracts may include those accounted for under the percentage-of-completion method on the basis of estimates in ranges, or on the basis of zero profit estimates, those that are combined or segmented for accounting purposes, and those with significant unpriced change orders or unsatisfied claims, all of which are discussed in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 605-35.

10.04 Other characteristics of troublesome contracts may include those that have significant profit fades from the prior interim or annual period, those that have a significant underbilling, and those subject to unusual risks because of factors such as location, ability to complete turnkey projects satisfactorily, postponement or cancellation provisions, or disputes between the parties.

10.05 To accomplish audit objectives, job site visits may be made at any time during the year or at the end of the year. When considering obtaining

audit evidence about the effectiveness of internal controls during an interim period, the auditor should determine what additional audit evidence should be obtained for the remaining period. In making this determination, the auditor should consider the significance of the assessed risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level. Factors that support the risk assessment may include the design, implementation, and effectiveness of internal control; the number, size, and significance of projects; the existence of projects with unusual or troublesome features; and the method of accounting for revenue. However, if the contractor's internal control is inadequate and if the contractor has in progress any large projects that individually have a material effect on the contractor's results of operations or any projects that have unusual features or that appear to be troublesome, the auditor should select those projects for visits at or near the year-end. The auditor should also consider the length of the remaining period, the extent to which the auditor intends to reduce further substantive procedures based on the reliance of controls, and the control environment. Further guidance concerning the timing of tests of controls in connection with the audit of financial statements is provided in paragraphs .11–.17 of AU-C section 330.

10.06 AU-C section 330 provides guidance and establishes requirements for applying principal substantive tests at an interim date. The higher the risk of material misstatement, the more likely it is that the auditor may decide it is more effective to perform substantive procedures nearer to, or at, the period end rather than at an earlier date, or to perform audit procedures unannounced or at unpredictable times (for example, performing audit procedures at selected locations on an unannounced basis). Further guidance concerning the timing of substantive procedures is also provided in paragraphs .23–.24 of AU-C section 330.

10.07 In addition to obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment, including its internal control and performing tests of the accounting records, the independent auditor might consider performing the following procedures during a job site visit:

- Observation of uninstalled materials
- Observation of work performed to date
- Observation of contractor-owned or rented equipment
- Discussions with project managers, superintendents, and other appropriate individuals, including if possible the independent architect, regarding the status of the contract and any significant problems, uninstalled materials, as it relates to financial statement presentation, or deferred costs

Job site visits facilitate the auditor's collection of information concerning the organization and management of the job, the accounting reports submitted to the general accounting office, the present status of the job, and unusual matters affecting the estimated costs to complete the project.

Accounts Receivable

10.08 Accounts receivable for a construction contractor may differ significantly from that of an industrial or commercial enterprise in that contract receivables do not have a direct correlation to revenue recognized on the

completed contract or percentage-of-completion method as noted in paragraph 10.32; however, the basic approach to the auditing of receivables is similar.

10.09 AU-C section 505, *External Confirmations* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), provides guidance about the confirmation process in audits performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS). The auditor confirms accounts receivable, including retentions.

10.10 The confirmation ordinarily contains other pertinent information, such as the contract price, payments made, and status of the contract. Exhibit 10-1 is a sample confirmation letter requiring positive confirmation. Negative confirmations may also be used, provided the conditions described in paragraph .15 of AU-C section 505 exist.

10.11 Certain characteristics of a construction contractor's accounts receivable, such as the following, may require special audit consideration:

- Unbilled receivables
- Retentions
- Unapproved change orders, extras, and claims
- Contract scope changes
- Contract guarantees and cancellation or postponement provisions
- Collectibility

Other characteristics that may require special audit consideration regarding the scope of the work to be performed include approved but unpriced change orders and government contracts under which the contractor proceeds with all phases of the contract even though government funding is approved piecemeal.

The auditor may elect to review management's receivables aging schedules to determine if there are any additional significant aged receivable balances, make inquiries about identified balances, and review those balances for subsequent collection.

Unbilled Receivables

10.12 Unbilled receivables arise when revenues have been recorded due to the performance of contract work being performed, but the amount cannot be billed under the terms of the contract until a later date. Specifically, such balances may represent (a) unbilled amounts, (b) incurred cost to be billed under cost-reimbursement-type contracts, or (c) amounts arising from routine lags in billing (for example, for work completed in one month but not billed until the next month). It may not be possible to confirm those amounts as receivables directly with the customer; consequently, the auditor should apply alternative audit procedures, such as the subsequent examination of the billing and collection of the receivables and evaluation of billing information on the basis of accumulated cost data.

Exhibit 10-1**Sample Confirmation Request to Owner, General Contractor, or Other Buyer¹**

Re: *[Description of Contract]*

Gentlemen:

Our independent auditors, *[name and address]*, are engaged in an audit of our financial statements. For verification purposes only, would you kindly respond directly to them about the accuracy of the following information at *[date]*:

1. Original contract price \$ _____
2. Total approved change orders \$ _____
3. Total billings \$ _____
4. Total payments \$ _____
5. Total unpaid balance \$ _____ including retentions of \$ _____
6. Details of any claims, back charges, or disputes concerning this contract (attach separate sheet if necessary)
7. Estimated completion date _____
8. Estimated percent complete _____

We have enclosed a self-addressed, stamped envelope for your convenience in replying directly to our auditors. Your prompt response will be greatly appreciated.

Very truly yours,

Enc.

The above information is:

- Correct
 Incorrect (please submit details of any differences)

By:

Signature

Date

Title

¹ AU-C section 505, *External Confirmations* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), notes that when a confirmation allows for electronic responses or when an electronic confirmation process or system is used, the auditor's consideration of the following risks includes the consideration of risks that the electronic confirmation process is not secure or is improperly controlled:

- The information obtained may not be from an authentic source.
- A respondent may not be knowledgeable about the information to be confirmed.
- The integrity of the information may have been compromised.

Further, responses received electronically (for example, by fax or e-mail) involve risks relating to reliability because proof of origin or identity of the confirming party may be difficult to establish, and alterations may be difficult to detect. The auditor may determine that it is appropriate to address such risks by utilizing a system or process that validates the respondent or by directly contacting the purported sender (for example, by telephone) to validate the identity of the sender of the response and to validate that the information received by the auditor corresponds to what was transmitted by the sender.

Retentions

10.13 The contractor's accounting records ordinarily should provide for separate control for retentions because they are generally withheld until the contract is completed and, in certain instances, for even longer periods. They may also be subject to restrictive conditions, such as fulfillment guarantees. The auditor should test retentions as part of performing further audit procedures whose nature, timing, and extent are responsive to the assessed risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level. Relevant assertions are assertions that have a meaningful bearing on whether the account is fairly stated. For example, the completeness assertion is relevant to retentions in that it relates to whether all retentions are recorded, but the valuation assertion may be less relevant.

10.14 Auditors may consider including testing retentions via reviewing contract retentions percentages, typically 5 percent to 10 percent of the amounts billed. While the contract is in progress, retentions generally have a direct percentage relationship to billings to date or other specified performance criteria.

Unapproved Change Orders and Claims

10.15 Unapproved change orders and claims are often significant and recurring in the construction industry, and receivables arising from those sources may require special audit consideration. Paragraphs 25–31 of FASB ASC 605-35-25 set forth the circumstances and conditions under which amounts may be recorded as revenue from unapproved change orders and claims. Because of the nature of those receivables, the auditor may encounter difficulties in evaluating their propriety or the collectibility of the related additional revenue. The auditor may be able to confirm the amounts of unapproved change orders or claims with customers; however, if confirmation is not possible or if the amounts are disputed, the auditor should obtain evidence to evaluate the likelihood of settlement on satisfactory terms and the collectibility of the recorded amounts. The auditor might consider how the contractor has historically collected on its unapproved change orders. For example, if historically the contractor does not get the ultimate approval for a change order, or if it is approved for an amount less than what is expected by management, the auditor should consider this when determining the reasonableness of the current and pending change orders. To determine whether the conditions specified in FASB ASC 605-35 to record a receivable have been met, the auditor should review the terms of the contract and should document the amounts by discussions with the contractor's legal counsel and with contractor personnel who are knowledgeable about the contract.

10.16 When unapproved change orders and claims are the basis for significant additional contract revenues, or are otherwise identified for testing as part of the auditor's consideration of substantive procedures to perform, the auditor should evaluate the propriety of accumulated costs underlying the unapproved change orders. The following are some of the procedures that may be used in auditing such accumulated costs:

- Tests of the accumulation of costs to underlying invoices, time records, and other supporting documentation. In some circumstances, confirmation of relevant data and related amounts with subcontractors and others may be feasible.

- Consideration of whether the work performed or costs incurred were authorized in writing by the customer. If not, additional contract revenues may not be billable, and the costs may not be recoverable.
- Evaluation of whether the costs relate to work within or outside the scope of the contract. If the costs relate to work within the scope of a lump-sum contract, no basis for additional contract revenues may exist, and the costs may not be recoverable.

10.17 The auditor might also evaluate the nature and reasonableness of claimed damages that are attributable to customer-caused delays, errors in specifications that caused incorrect bids, or various other reasons. In connection with such an evaluation, the auditor should consider the quality and extent of the documentary evidence supporting the claim and the extent to which management has pursued the claim; the auditor also should consider consultation with technical personnel. It may also be appropriate to obtain an opinion from legal counsel (*a*) on the contractor's legal right to file such a claim against the customer, and (*b*) on the contractor's likelihood of success in pursuing the claim.

10.18 A claim may be properly supported, but, nevertheless, may be uncollectible. Many factors influence collectibility, including the relationship between the contractor and the customer. For example, a contractor may be less likely to press for collection of a claim from a major customer. In evaluating a claim, the auditor may consider the contractor's past experience in settling similar claims. If, for example, the contractor has demonstrated a reasonable degree of success in negotiating and settling similar types of claims and if the documentation supporting a claim under review appears to be similar in scope, depth, and content, the auditor may consider such prior experience in evaluating the collectibility of the claim. The auditor's use of heightened skepticism is warranted toward claims for which the contractor cannot provide collaborative evidence to support but rather are recorded based solely on management's feel or estimate.

Contract Scope Changes

10.19 Scope changes on contracts, particularly cost-plus contracts, are often not well documented. Large cost-plus contracts frequently evolve through various stages of design and planning, with numerous starts and stops on the part of both the customer and the contractor. As a result, the final scope of the contract is not always clearly defined. The auditor should carefully examine costs designated to be passed through to the customer under such contracts and should determine whether the costs are reimbursable or whether they should be absorbed by the contractor as unreimbursable contract costs. If receivables arise from contract scope changes that are unapproved or disputed by customers, the previous discussion on claims applies.

Contract Guarantees and Cancellation or Postponement Provisions

10.20 Many contracts provide for contract guarantees, such as a guarantee that a power plant, when completed, will generate a specified number of kilowatt hours. A contract may specify a fixed completion date, which, if not met, may result in substantial penalties. For some contracts, retentions and their ultimate realization are related to the fulfillment of contract guarantees.

The auditor should carefully read the contracts to identify guarantees or contingencies associated with a project to determine whether the contractor has given adequate consideration to the cost of fulfilling contract guarantees.

10.21 In addition, the auditor should carefully read the contracts to identify cancellation and postponement provisions associated with a project. Effective internal procedures provide for the contractor's timely notification to subcontractors of contracts cancelled or postponed in order to minimize problems and the possibility of litigation.

10.22 Cancelled or postponed contracts may be identified in the contractor's records or may be disclosed in other ways during the audit. For example, the auditor's confirmation procedures may disclose cancelled or postponed contracts. The auditor should then satisfy himself or herself that the open balance of accounts receivable, which may in effect be a claim, is valid and collectible.

10.23 For a contract that has been cancelled, the auditor should evaluate the contractor's right and ability to recover costs and damages under the contract. If the amounts that the contractor seeks to recover under the contracts are in dispute, the auditor should evaluate them as claims in accordance with the previous discussion on claims.

10.24 For contracts that have been postponed, the auditor should evaluate whether the estimated cost to complete is documented and reflects inflationary factors that may cause costs to increase because of the delay in the performance of the contract. The auditor should consider the reason for postponement and its ultimate implications because a postponement could ultimately lead to a cancellation with attendant problems relating to the recoverability of costs. In this area of the audit, the auditor should consider consultation with legal counsel in evaluating the client's contractual rights.

Collectibility

10.25 As work progresses on the contract, construction contractors may experience problems relating to the collectibility of receivables that differ from those found in industrial and commercial entities. Problems may result from the long period of the contract, the size of the contract, the possibility for disputes, the type of financing the customer has arranged, or the current economic environment. The contractor ordinarily should evaluate whether the customer has financial substance or has made financing arrangements through a third party with financial substance. The auditor might review the contractor's determination and also consider performing such auditing procedures as a review of financial statements of the customer or a review of the financing arrangements entered into by the customer with a third party, even though there may be no apparent indication that the receivable might not be collectible.

10.26 In the evaluation of the ability of the customer to satisfy his obligations, the auditor should also consider the stage of completion of the contract, the past payment performance of the customer, and the amount of the contract price yet to be billed under the contract—not solely the customer's ability to remit the year-end outstanding balance. In the event of indications that a customer may be unable to pay the contractor, the auditor should consider the extent to which bonding arrangements and lien rights will limit possible losses by the contractor. The auditor should consider whether lien rights have been filed to protect the contractor's rights. Some of the information obtained in the

evaluation of collectibility may be useful in the audit of amounts recognized as income on the contract.

Liabilities Related to Contracts

10.27 The auditor should satisfy himself or herself that liabilities include not only amounts currently due but also retained percentages that apply to both subcontractors and suppliers who bill the contractor in that manner. The auditor might request confirmation of balances, as well as other relevant information, from specific suppliers and subcontractors. Exhibit 10-2 is a suggested confirmation form for subcontractors.

Exhibit 10-2**Sample Confirmation Request to Subcontractor²**

Gentlemen:

Our independent auditors, [*name and address*], are engaged in an audit of our financial statements. For verification purposes only, would you kindly submit directly to them the following information with respect to each (or specific) contract(s) in force at [*date*]:

1. Original contract price \$
2. Total approved change orders \$
3. Total billings \$
4. Total payments \$
5. Total unpaid balance, including retentions \$
6. Total retentions included in total balance due \$
7. Total amount and details of pending extras and claims in process of preparation, if any (attach separate sheet if necessary) \$
8. Estimated completion date

We have enclosed a self-addressed, stamped envelope for your convenience in replying directly to our auditors. Your prompt response will be greatly appreciated.

Very truly yours,

Enc.

10.28 The auditor should satisfy himself or herself that the contractor has made a proper cutoff and that all costs, including charges from subcontractors, have been recorded in the correct period. The auditor should also perform audit procedures to test whether charges by subcontractors are in accordance with the terms of their contracts and the work performed by the subcontractor and are not simply advances that may be allowable under contract terms. The amounts billable by a subcontractor under the terms of a contract is the amount that should be recorded in accounts payable; however, the actual work performed on the job represents the amount that should be recorded as allowable cost in determining the extent of progress toward completion. In reviewing liabilities, it is essential that the auditor be alert for indications of claims and extras that may be billed by the subcontractor. The review may also disclose amounts that should be accounted for as back charges to the subcontractor under the terms of the contract.

10.29 All invoices for services rendered should be recorded as accounts payable even though the amount may not be used in measuring the performance to date on the contract. The auditor should satisfy himself or herself that the contractor has not included amounts not used in measuring performance in both the cost incurred to date and the estimated cost to complete.

10.30 The auditor should review older invoices and retentions included in accounts payable for an indication of defective work, failure on performance

² See footnote 1.

guarantees, or other contingencies that may not have been recorded on the contractor's records or included in the estimated cost to complete.

10.31 Under the Uniform Commercial Code (UCC), financial institutions and other creditors often file a notice of a security interest in personal property on which they have advanced credit. Notices may be filed with both the state and county in which the property is located. The auditor should consider sending UCC inquiry forms to states and counties in which the contractor has significant jobs. Such inquiries may disclose unrecorded liabilities and security interests, as defined in the UCC.

Contract Costs

10.32 The auditing of contract costs involves two primary areas: the accumulated costs to date and the estimated cost to complete. The auditor is reminded that in the audit of a contractor, the emphasis is on the contract and the proper recording of contract revenues and costs. The determination of the accuracy of both the costs incurred to date and the estimated costs to complete is necessary for each contract in order to determine whether the gross profit on a contract is recognized in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. Further, the auditor's consideration of the proper allocation of costs to individual contracts is crucial to mitigate a possible significant fraud risk.

10.33 Income for a contractor is determined by the ultimate profit or estimated profit on each contract and is not based on the billings to date or the cost incurred to date. Under the completed-contract method, profit recognition is deferred until the contract is substantially completed; therefore, the cost incurred to date on uncompleted contracts is not reflected in the determination of current income unless a loss on the contract is anticipated. Conversely, the percentage-of-completion method requires that projected gross profit on the contract be estimated before the gross profit for the period under audit can be determined.

10.34 The audit considerations concerning both the accumulated cost to date and the estimated cost to complete are discussed in this section.

Costs Incurred to Date

10.35 The auditor should satisfy himself or herself that the contractor has properly recorded costs incurred to date by contract. The auditor should satisfy himself or herself that the contractor has included in accumulated contract costs identifiable direct and indirect costs and an acceptable and consistent allocation of overhead to specific contracts. For cost-plus contracts, the auditor should satisfy himself or herself that the contractor has not recognized contract revenue based on unreimbursable contract costs. The extent of substantive testing will depend on the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement, as discussed in chapter 9.

Estimated Cost to Complete

10.36 One of the most important phases of the audit of a construction contractor relates to estimated costs to complete contracts in process because that information is used in determining the estimated final gross profit or

loss on contracts. Estimated costs to complete involve expectations about future performance, and the auditor should (a) critically review representations of management, (b) obtain explanations of apparent disparities between estimates and past performance on contracts, experience on other contracts, and information gained in other phases of the audit, and (c) document the results of work in these areas. Because of the direct effect on the estimated interim and final revenue and gross profit or loss on the contract, the auditor should evaluate whether the contractor's estimate of cost to complete is reasonable, including any special provisions, for example, guaranteed maximum price shared savings provisions. AU-C section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), provides guidance to auditors on obtaining and evaluating sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support significant accounting estimates in an audit of financial statements in accordance with GAAS.

10.37 The information that the auditor should consider using in the review of estimated costs to complete includes the following:

- The auditor's knowledge of internal control, with particular emphasis on the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement in areas such as estimating and bidding; project management and contract evaluation; contract costs; and claims, extras, and back charges, including a summary of the results of internal audits and a discussion of the contractor's historical experience.
- A comparison of costs incurred to date plus estimated cost to complete with the original bid estimate, along with explanations of unusual variances and changes in trends.
- A summary of work performed to determine that actual or expected contract price and estimated costs to complete include price and quantity increases, penalties for termination or late completion, warranties or contract guarantees, and related items.
- A review of project engineers' reports and interim financial data, including reports and data issued after the balance sheet date, with explanations for unusual variances or changes in projections. Of particular importance would be a review of revised or updated estimates of cost to complete and a comparison of the estimates with the actual costs incurred after the balance sheet date. Contracts with margin percentages below the normal percentage range for the year, or historically, may call for particular attention.
- A review of information received from customers or other third parties in confirmations and in conversations about disputes, contract guarantees, and so forth that could affect total contract revenue and estimated cost to complete.
- Discussions with the contractor's engineering personnel and project managers who are familiar with, and responsible for, the contract in process.
- A review of the reports of independent architects and engineers.
- A review of information received from the contractor's attorney that relates to disputes and contingencies.

- Analytical procedures,³ including comparing prior year's estimates with subsequent actual results and determining the reasonableness of the estimated gross profit percentage as compared to jobs completed during the current fiscal period.

10.38 Not all of the previously listed types of evidence are available for all audits of all construction contractors. The auditor should consider the sufficiency and appropriateness of each type of evidence in forming an opinion. The auditor's objective is to test the overall reasonableness of the estimated cost to complete in the light of the information obtained from those and other available sources.

Income Recognition

10.39 The amount and timing of income recognized from contracts depend primarily on the methods and bases used to account for those contracts, including those contracts that may be combined or segmented in accordance with the paragraphs that follow. The auditor should satisfy himself or herself that contracts are accounted for in accordance with FASB ASC 605-35, and that the guidance is applied consistently to all like contracts and in all periods. To form an opinion on the reasonableness of the amount and timing of income recognized, the auditor should obtain an overview of costs and revenues by contract.

10.40 As a result of the technological complexity or the nature of the contractor's work, the auditor might use the work of independent specialists, such as engineers, architects, and attorneys, to obtain audit evidence in various phases of the audit. For example, on some complex contracts, the auditor might use a specialist to evaluate the percentage of completion or the estimated cost to complete. AU-C section 620 provides guidance in this area.

10.41 Anticipated losses on contracts, including contracts on which work has not started, should be recognized in full at the earliest date at which they are determinable. In addition, the contractor ordinarily should consider the need to recognize other contract costs or revenue adjustments, such as guarantees or warranties, penalties for late completion, bonuses for early completion, unreimbursable costs under cost-plus contracts, and foreseeable losses arising from terminated contracts.

Evaluating the Acceptability of Income Recognition Methods

10.42 Paragraphs 1–2 of FASB ASC 605-35-25 provide guidance for evaluating the acceptability of a contractor's basic policy for income recognition. The audit procedures described in this and the preceding chapter are closely interrelated, and together they assist the auditor in satisfying himself or herself in regard to the acceptability of the method of income recognition and the bases of applying that method. The procedures include all those previously discussed (review of contracts; understanding the entity and its environment, including its internal control, particularly as it relates to costs and contract revenues; job

³ Refer to the AICPA Audit Guide *Analytical Procedures*, which provides guidance on the effective use of analytical procedures with an emphasis on analytical procedures as substantive tests. This includes a discussion of AU-C section 520, *Analytical Procedures* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), and the underlying concepts and definitions, a series of questions and answers, an illustrative case study, and an appendix that includes useful financial ratios.

site visits; and procedures applied in the audit of receivables, liabilities related to contracts, and contract costs) and the procedures discussed in this section on income recognition.

10.43 In evaluating the acceptability of the accounting method used by a contractor, the auditor should satisfy himself or herself that the contractor has followed the guidance in FASB ASC 605-35-25-57, which states that the use of the percentage-of-completion method as the basic accounting policy is considered preferable when reasonably dependable estimates can be made, and the contracts meet all the conditions specified. If contracts meet those conditions, FASB ASC 605-35-25-58 states that the presumption is a contractor has the ability to make estimates that are sufficiently dependable to justify the use of the percentage-of-completion method of accounting. Normally, as provided in FASB ASC 605-35-25-60, estimates of total contract revenue and total contract cost in single amounts should be used as the basis of accounting for contracts under the percentage-of-completion method. However, estimates based on ranges of amounts or on a breakeven or zero-profit basis are acceptable in circumstances described in FASB ASC 605-35-25-60. The auditor should satisfy himself or herself that the aforementioned guidance has been reasonably applied.

10.44 Paragraphs 79–81 of FASB ASC 605-35-25 discuss the considerations that should underlie the selection of a method of measuring the extent of progress toward completion under the percentage-of-completion method. The auditor should evaluate the methods used by the contractor in accordance with those considerations.

10.45 In evaluating the acceptability of the percentage-of-completion method as a contractor's basic accounting policy, as well as the acceptability of the basis used to measure the extent of progress toward completion, the auditor should consider procedures such as the following:

- Performing a risk assessment of all of the contracts, measuring degrees of risk based on, but not limited to, the following risks:
 - Phase of contract (percent complete)
 - Contracts with significant or unusual costs and estimated earnings in excess of billings
 - Contracts with estimated losses
 - Contracts with significant declines in estimates from the prior year
- Reviewing a selected sample of contracts to evaluate whether the contracts meet the basic conditions in FASB ASC 605-35-25-57 for use of the percentage-of-completion method
- Obtaining, reviewing, and evaluating documentation of estimates of contract revenues, costs, and the extent of progress toward completion for the selected sample of contracts
- Consulting, if necessary, with independent engineers or independent architects
- Obtaining and reviewing a representative sample of completed contracts to evaluate the quality of the contractor's original and periodic estimates of profit on those contracts

- Obtaining a representation from management on the acceptability of the method

10.46 If the contractor applies the percentage-of-completion method on the basis of estimates in terms of ranges or in terms of zero profit for any contracts, the auditor should obtain separate schedules for contracts accounted for on each of those bases and for contracts initially reported on those bases but changed to the normal basis during the period. For contracts in each of those categories, the auditor should consider the following procedures in evaluating the acceptability of those approaches to applying the percentage-of-completion method:

- For a selected sample of such contracts, obtaining documentation from management of the circumstances justifying the approaches
- Discussing with management personnel and, if necessary, independent architects and engineers the reasonableness of the approaches used for the sample of contracts selected in each category
- Obtaining representation from management on the circumstances justifying each of the approaches

10.47 Paragraphs 90–93 of FASB ASC 605-35-25 describe the appropriate circumstances for use of the completed-contract method as the basic accounting policy. When the lack of dependable estimates or inherent hazards cause forecasts to be doubtful, the completed-contract method is preferable. The completed-contract method may also be used as an entity's basic accounting policy in circumstances in which financial position and results of operations would not vary materially from those resulting from use of the percentage-of-completion method (for example, in circumstances in which an entity has primarily short-term contracts).

10.48 In evaluating whether the circumstances in the preceding paragraph exist, the auditor should consider the use of procedures such as the following:

- Reviewing the nature of the contractor's contracts and the period required to perform them
- Obtaining a schedule of uncompleted contracts at the beginning and end of the period and evaluating whether the volume is significant in relation to the volume of contracts started and completed during the period
- Estimating the effect of reporting on the percentage-of-completion basis and evaluating whether the results would produce a material difference in financial position or results of operations

The Percentage-of-Completion Method

10.49 The auditor's objective in examining contracts accounted for by the percentage-of-completion method is to determine that the income recognized during the current period is based on (a) the total gross profit projected for the contract on completion and (b) the work performed to date. The total gross profit expected from each contract is derived from an estimate of the final contract price less the total of contract costs to date and estimated cost to complete. The auditor tests those components in connection with other auditing procedures previously discussed.

10.50 The auditor should satisfy himself or herself that, in relation to the nature of the contract, the method selected and used by the contractor to measure progress (such as measures based on architectural or engineering estimates, cost-to-cost, labor hours, machine hours, or units produced) produces a reasonable measurement of the work performed to date. Information obtained from job site visits may be particularly useful in reviewing costs incurred to date when the cost-to-cost method is used. Such information may point out the need to disregard certain costs (such as advance billings by subcontractors, cost of undelivered materials, or cost of uninstalled materials) in order to measure more accurately the work performed to date. Contract billings to customers may signify the percentage of completion if the contract provisions require that billings be associated with various stages of work performed on the contract.

10.51 The auditor should examine unbilled contract revenues to determine the reasons that they have not been billed. If such revenues relate to change orders or claims, the auditor should evaluate the collectibility of the change orders or claims.

The Completed-Contract Method

10.52 The objectives of the auditor in examining contracts accounted for by the completed-contract method are to determine (a) the proper amount and accounting period for recognition of the profit from completed contracts, (b) the amount of anticipated losses, if any, on uncompleted contracts to be recognized in the current period, and (c) consistency in application of the method of determining completion.

10.53 The auditor should review events, contract costs, and contract billings subsequent to the end of the accounting period to obtain additional assurance that all contract revenues and related costs are included in the period in which the contracts are deemed to be substantially completed for income recognition purposes. As established in FASB ASC 605-35-25-96, a contract may be regarded as substantially completed, as a general rule, if remaining cost and potential risks are insignificant in amount. The overriding accounting objectives are to maintain consistency in determining when contracts are substantially completed and to avoid arbitrary acceleration or deferral of income.

Combining and Segmenting

10.54 Income recognition in a given period may be significantly affected by the combining or segmenting of contracts. In the course of the audit, the auditor may find that contracts have been, or in his or her opinion should have been, combined or segmented. The auditor should, therefore, evaluate the propriety of combining contracts or, conversely, segmenting components of a contract or a group of contracts in accordance with the criteria in paragraphs 3–14 of FASB ASC 605-35-25. In evaluating the propriety of combining a group of contracts and the propriety of segmenting a contract or a group of contracts, the auditor should satisfy himself or herself that the criteria are applied consistently to contracts with similar characteristics in similar circumstances. The auditor should consider procedures such as the following:

- Reviewing combined contracts to determine whether they meet the aforementioned criteria and reviewing a representative sample of other contracts to determine if any other contracts meet those criteria

- Reviewing contracts or groups of contracts that are reported on a segmented basis to determine whether they meet the aforementioned criteria and whether the criteria are applied consistently

Review of Earned Revenue

10.55 For significant contracts, the auditor should obtain and review working paper schedules that summarize contract information from the contractor's books and records together with audit data arising from the audit of contract activity. The schedules are valuable because they permit an orderly analysis of the relationship of costs and revenues on a contract-by-contract basis. Illustrations of such schedules, prepared for fixed-price contracts accounted for by the percentage-of-completion method, are presented in exhibits 10-3-10-4.

10.56 The illustrations are based on the assumption that the contractor determines the stage of completion and adjusts his accounts accordingly. Even so, as demonstrated by the illustrations, the schedules enable the auditor to pinpoint the need for adjustments.

10.57 Similar, although less detailed, schedules should also be considered for significant cost-plus contracts in process and for significant contracts closed during the period.

Analysis of Gross Profit Margins

10.58 Finally, the auditor should consider analyzing gross profit margins on contracts and investigating and obtaining explanations for contracts with unusually high or low profit margins in the light of present and past experience on similar contracts. The auditor should consider a review of the original estimates of any contracts in question and a comparison of the results on those contracts for the current period with the results of prior periods. Audit procedures performed might include comparison of profit margins recognized on open contracts (with the final results on similar closed contracts) and comparison of the final profit on closed contracts (with the estimated profit on those contracts in the prior year). Similarly, at or near the date of the auditor's report, the auditor should obtain the contractor's most recent interim financial statements and work-in-process analysis to review, among other things, the contractor's most recent cost estimates on contracts not completed at the balance sheet date. Paragraph .11 of AU-C section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), states that if as a result of this review and the additional procedures performed as required by paragraphs .09-.10 of AU-C section 560, the auditor identifies subsequent events that require adjustment of, or disclosure in, the financial statements, the auditor should determine whether each such event is appropriately reflected in the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

10.59 The auditor should consider maintaining a summary of the historical information (the most recent four to five years, preferably) developed in the analysis for a reference in future audits. As provided in paragraph .A38 of AU-C section 330, in certain circumstances, audit evidence obtained from previous audits may provide audit evidence, provided that the auditor has determined whether changes have occurred since the previous audit that may affect its relevance to the current audit.

Exhibit 10-3

**XYZ Company, Inc.
Fixed-Price Contracts in Process
Summary of Original and Revised Contract Estimates
As of Balance Sheet Date**

Contract Identification	Original Contract		Original Estimate of Contract Costs	Original Estimate of Gross Profit Amount	Original Estimate of Gross Profit %	Net Changes in Contract Price	Revised Contract Price	Revised Estimate of Contract Costs			Revised Estimate of Gross Profit		% of Completion Measured by
	Price	Costs						Costs to Date	Costs to Complete	Estimated Total Costs	Amount	%	
	(1)	(2)	(2)	(2)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(5)	(6)			(6)
A	\$100,000	\$55,000	\$45,000	45%	0	\$100,000	\$42,000	\$18,000	\$60,000	\$40,000	40%	Cost to cost	
B	130,000	110,000	20,000	15.4%	20,000	150,000	80,000	40,000	120,000	30,000	20%	Cu. Yds. Completed	
C	175,000	125,000	50,000	28.6%	25,000	200,000	125,000	75,000	200,000	0	—	Labor hours	
D	250,000	200,000	50,000	20%	150,000	400,000	270,000	330,000	600,000	(200,000)	—	Cost to cost	

(1) Per original contract.

(2) Per original bid.

(3) Supported by change orders or claims, or both, meeting accounting criteria for inclusion.

(4) Per audit of contract costs.

(5) Per audit of estimated costs to complete.

(6) Reviewed for appropriateness and consistency.

Exhibit 10-4

**XYZ Company, Inc.
Fixed-Price Contracts in Process
Analysis of Contract Status
As of Balance Sheet Date**

Contract Identification	Per Contractor's Books and Records				Auditor's Adjustment				Adjusted Gross Profit							
	Costs Incurred to Date		Revenue Earned to Date		Gross Profit to Date		Revised Earned Revenue to Date		Provision for Projected Loss Adjustments		To Date		Prior Periods		Current Period	
	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	Amount	%	Amount	%	Amount	%	Amount	%	Amount	%	Amount	%
A	\$80,000	\$42,000	70%	\$80,000	\$38,000	47.5%	70%	70,000	(\$10,000) (A)	(7)	(8)	40%	\$20,250	45%	\$7,750	31%
B	82,500	80,000	65%	97,500	17,500	17.9%	67%	100,500	3,000 (B)		(8)	20%	8,500	18.9%	12,000	21.6%
C	150,000	125,000	55%	110,000	(15,000)	—	62.5%	125,000	15,000 (C)		(8)	—	28600	28.6%	(28,600)	—
D	300,000	270,000	45%	300,000	30,000	10%	45%	180,000	(120,000) (A)	(7)	(8)	—	—	—	(200,000)	—

(1) Per audit of contract billings.
 (2) Per audit of contract costs.
 (3) Management's estimate of completion.
 (4) Per contract revenue accounts on books.
 (5) Per auditor—based on review and analysis of costs, billings, management's estimate, of completion, job site visits.
 (6) Result of applying revised percentage of completion to revised contract price.
 (7) Adjustments to be reviewed with and accepted by management.
 (8) Should be compared with prior periods and with similar contracts.
 (9) Per audit of prior periods.
 (A) Adjustment necessary to reduce recorded earned revenue and recognize excess billings.
 (B) Adjustment necessary to increase recorded earned revenue and recognize unbilled revenue.
 (C) Adjustment necessary to increase recorded earned revenue and reduce recorded excess billings in order to reflect projected "break-even" on contract. Remaining revenue (\$75,000) now equals estimated costs to complete.
 (D) Adjustment necessary to provide for balance of the total projected loss on contract. Remaining revenue (\$220,000) now equals estimated costs to complete (\$330,000) less provision for projected loss (\$110,000).

Review of Backlog Information on Signed Contracts and Letters of Intent

10.60 The accounting section of this guide encourages contractors to present in the basic financial statements backlog information for signed contracts whose cancellation is not expected, and it suggests that contractors may include additional backlog information on letters of intent and a schedule showing backlog at the beginning of the year, new contracts awarded during the year, revenue recognized during the year, and backlog at the end of the year (see the section "Backlog on Existing Contracts" in chapter 6, "Financial Statement Presentation"). The presentation of such information helps users of the contractor's financial statements assess the contractor's current level of activity and prospects for maintaining that level of activity in future periods.

10.61 Information on signed contracts whose cancellation by the parties is not expected is within the scope of an audit of the contractor's financial statements. If a contractor elects to present backlog information on signed contracts outside of the basic financial statements, in an auditor-submitted document (that is, rather than as a note to the financial statements), paragraph .09 of AU-C section 725, *Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*),⁴ states that the auditor should report on the supplementary information in either (a) an other-matter paragraph in accordance with AU-C section 706, *Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), or (b) in a separate report on the supplementary information.

10.62 Although an auditor has no obligation to apply auditing procedures to supplementary information presented outside the basic financial statements, the auditor may choose to modify or redirect certain of the procedures to be applied in the audit of the basic financial statements so that the auditor may express an opinion on the supplementary information in relation to the financial statements as a whole. Such procedures should include a review of the information and an evaluation of its completeness in light of other audit procedures for contract receivables, contract-related liabilities, contract costs, and contract revenues. For that purpose, the auditor should obtain a schedule of all uncompleted signed contracts showing for each contract total estimated revenue, total estimated cost, earned revenue to date, costs incurred to date, and cost of earned revenue.

10.63 If a contractor elects to present backlog information for both signed contracts and letters of intent and the auditor intends to express an opinion on this accompanying information, the auditor's responsibility for the information is less clear because letters of intent are not normally within the scope of the audit of a contractor's financial statements. The auditor may, however, be able to satisfy himself or herself regarding the completeness and reliability of the information on letters of intent. The auditor should consider obtaining a schedule of signed letters of intent, confirming the letters with customers, and reviewing their terms with the contractor's legal counsel.

⁴ Refer to chapter 11, "Other Auditing Considerations," for a detailed discussion of auditing supplementary information in relation to the financial statements as a whole and appendix J, "Reporting on Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole," for a detailed discussion of reporting on supplementary information in relation to the financial statements as a whole.

10.64 As indicated in chapter 6, the presentation of backlog information by a contractor is desirable only if a reasonably dependable determination of total revenue and a reasonably dependable estimate of total cost under signed contracts or letters of intent can be made, and the information on signed contracts should be segregated from the information on letters of intent.

Management Representations

10.65 The auditor must obtain written representations from management in accordance with the requirements of AU-C section 580, *Written Representations* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). Written representations from management should be obtained for all financial statements and periods covered by the auditor's report.⁵ The specific written representations to be obtained depend on the circumstances of the engagement and the nature and basis of the presentation of the financial statements. AU-C section 580 lists matters ordinarily included in management's representation letter. Additional representations specific to construction contractors that may be obtained include the following:

- Method of income recognition used
- Provisions for losses on contracts
- Unapproved change orders, claims, and contract postponements or cancellations
- Backlog information if presented in the financial statements
- Contracts completed during the year and in process as of the balance sheet date if presented in the financial statements
- Joint venture participations and other related party transactions

In addition to the foregoing items, the auditor should obtain specific management representations relating to all the types of matters suggested in AU-C section 580 that are relevant to the engagement.

⁵ The written representation should be addressed to the auditor and should be made as of the date of the auditor's report.

Chapter 11

Other Audit Considerations

🕒 Update 11-1 *Audit: Clarified Auditing Standards*

The auditing guidance in this guide edition has been conformed to Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) Nos. 122–127 (referred to as clarified SASs), which were issued as part of the Auditing Standards Board's Clarity Project. These clarified SASs are effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012. Although the Clarity Project was not intended to create additional requirements, some revisions have resulted in changes that may require auditors to make adjustments in their practices.

To assist auditors and financial reporting professionals in making the transition, this guide includes appendix B, "Mapping and Summarization of Changes—Clarified Auditing Standards," which provides a cross reference of the sections in the superseded auditing standards to the applicable sections in the clarified auditing standards and identifies the changes, either substantive or primarily clarifying in nature, that may affect an auditor's practice or methodology relative to the applicable sections of SAS Nos. 122–127. It also summarizes the changes resulting from the requirements of SAS Nos. 122–127.

The preface of this guide and the Financial Reporting Center on www.aicpa.org provide more information on the Clarity Project. Visit www.aicpa.org/sasclarity.

11.01 This chapter addresses additional audit considerations that are essential in audits of construction contractors. They include affiliated entities, capitalization and cash flow, types of auditor's reports, and legal and regulatory requirements.

Affiliated Entities

11.02 In the construction industry, contractors frequently participate in joint ventures or have a direct or indirect affiliation with other entities and, as a consequence, are frequently involved in related party transactions as the term *related parties* is defined in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 850, Related Party Disclosures*. The prevalence of such arrangements in the industry can be attributed to factors such as legal liability, taxation, competition, ownership and operating arrangements, labor and labor union considerations, and regulatory requirements. Auditing and reporting considerations appropriate in the circumstances are discussed in this section.

Participation in Joint Ventures

11.03 The auditor should review a contractor's participations in joint ventures to evaluate whether investments in joint ventures are reported in accordance with the recommendations in chapter 3, "Accounting for and Reporting Investments in Construction Joint Ventures," of this guide. The following are among the factors that may influence the auditor's evaluation:

- The method or methods of reporting joint venture investments
- The nature of capital contributions and the methods of recording capital contributions
- The timeliness of the available financial statements of joint ventures in relation to those of the reporting investor
- The appropriateness of the accounting for joint venture losses that exceed a contractor's loans and investments
- The adequacy of joint venture related disclosures in the contractor's financial statements

11.04 The auditor should review joint venture agreements and document a contractor's participation. Information that the auditor might consider documenting includes the following:

- Capital contributions and funding requirements of the venture participants
- Ownership percentages
- Profit or loss participation ratios
- Duration of the venture
- Performance requirements of the venture participants
- Financial guarantees or recourse, or both, between the parties

11.05 The audit considerations for a contractor's participation in a partnership (for example, in a real estate tax shelter partnership) are similar to those for participation in corporate joint ventures. They may differ primarily in relation to the contractor's unlimited liability as a general partner for partnership obligations.

11.06 For partnership interests, the auditor might document the following information:

- The extent and nature of fees and other amounts to be paid by the partnership to the contractor and the conditions and events that would require such payments
- The contractor's obligations to the partnership for capital contributions and other funding
- Performance and other requirements of the contractor as a general partner and specified penalties for nonperformance, if any
- Profit participation ratios of the partners and events or conditions that change such ratios
- The duration of the partnership

11.07 The auditor should assess the economic and tax incentives underlying the creation of the partnership, the events requiring capital contribution installments by limited partners, and temporary and permanent financing arrangements and related costs. The auditor should also assess the extent of actual and contingent obligations that arise from the contractor's role as a general partner. To that end, the auditor should review the financial condition of the other general partners and their ability to participate in the funding of required capital contributions, partnership obligations, and partnership losses, if any. The inability of other general partners to provide their share of such funding may require the contractor to recognize additional obligations based on the contractor's legal liability as a general partner for all partnership obligations.

11.08 For any type of venture, the auditor should evaluate the nature of the venture, the scope of its operations, and the extent of involvement of each participant. To further the auditor's understanding, the auditor should obtain financial statements of the venture entity for the period under review. AU-C section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), provides guidance and establishes requirements for audit engagements in which the financial statements of the venture are audited by another independent auditor.

11.09 If the venture's financial statements are unaudited, the principal auditor should perform such procedures as he or she deems necessary in the circumstances to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. For determining what procedures to perform, AU-C section 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), provides guidance and establishes requirements on auditing investments in debt and equity securities and investments accounted for under FASB ASC 323, *Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures*. When such procedures cannot be performed, and the resulting effect is a restriction on the scope of the audit, AU-C section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), provide applicable guidance.

Auditing Affiliated Entities and Related Party Transactions

11.10 An auditor engaged to audit one of a group of affiliated entities that comprises an economic unit may find that an examination of the records of that entity does not satisfy him in regard to such aspects as substance, nature, business purpose, and transfer prices of significant transactions between the parties. AU-C section 550, *Related Parties* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), provides guidance and establishes requirements for identifying and reporting on related party transactions. The auditor should be aware of the possible existence of material related party transactions that could affect the financial statements and of common ownership or management control relationships, even though no transactions exist. The auditing of affiliated entities and related party transactions will often necessitate the consideration of the applicability of accounting, presentation and disclosure requirements of variable interest entities, as required by FASB ASC 850. Consolidated or combined financial statements in place of, or supplementary to, the separate financial statements of the entity being audited may sometimes be necessary to present the financial position, results of operations, and cash flows of the entity being audited in accordance with the recommendations in chapter 4, "Financial Reporting by Affiliated Entities," of this guide.

Participation in a Group Audit¹

11.11 AU-C section 600 identifies a *group audit* as the audit of group financial statements, that is, financial statements that include the financial information of more than one component. A group audit exists, for example,

¹ For more information on AU-C section 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), the AICPA has developed the Audit Risk Alert *Understanding the Responsibilities of Auditors for Audits of Group Financial Statements*.

when management prepares financial information that is included in the group financial statements related to a function, process, product or service, or geographical location (subsidiary in a foreign country).

11.12 A group audit engagement includes the following entities and actors:

- The *component* is an entity or business activity for which group or component management prepares financial information that is required by the applicable financial reporting framework to be included in the group financial statements.
- The *component auditor* is the auditor who performs work on the financial information of a component that will be used as audit evidence for the group audit. A component auditor may be part of the group engagement partner's firm, a network firm of the group engagement partner's firm, or another firm.
- The *group engagement partner* is the partner or other person in the firm who is responsible for the group audit engagement and its performance and for the auditor's report on the group financial statements that is issued on behalf of the firm. When joint auditors conduct the group audit, the joint engagement partners and their engagement teams collectively constitute the group engagement partner and the group engagement team.

11.13 Auditors of construction contractors, due to the potential for the involvement of component auditors in audit processes such as job site visits and inventory considerations, should carefully consider the requirements of AU-C section 600 when planning and performing their audits.

Capitalization and Cash Flow

11.14 Contractors often follow practices that accelerate the cash collections to be generated from a contract. The practices include the use of unbalanced bids and other front-end loading procedures that allocate a relatively larger portion of the total contract price to phases of work likely to be completed in early stages of the contract than to phases likely to be completed later. Also, overestimating the percentage of work completed in computing billings on contracts may have a similar effect on cash collections.

11.15 If a contractor incurs substantial losses on contracts that have been front-end loaded, a cash deficiency toward the end of those contracts may be experienced. The deficiency may prevent the contractor from meeting current obligations, and the contractor may have to front-end load new contracts to generate funds to meet those obligations. The necessity to generate cash may cause the contractor to accept jobs that are only marginally profitable.

11.16 Therefore, the auditor should review uncompleted contracts not only to assess the adequacy of provisions for losses in the current period but also to determine the effect of projected cash receipts and payments on the contractor's cash position and ability to meet current obligations.

Types of Auditor's Reports on Financial Statements²

11.17 The auditor's conclusion to issue an unqualified opinion on the financial statements may be expressed only when the auditor has formed such an opinion on the basis of an audit performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS). When evaluating the quantity and quality of audit evidence, and thus its sufficiency and appropriateness, to support the audit opinion, AU-C section 500, *Audit Evidence* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), provides applicable guidance. Restrictions on the scope of the audit, the inability to obtain sufficient competent audit evidence, or an inadequacy in the accounting records may require the auditor to qualify his or her opinion or to disclaim an opinion as appropriate in the circumstances. The following are examples of situations that may preclude the auditor from issuing a standard report on the financial statements:

- The auditor is unable to evaluate the propriety or collectibility of significant amounts of contract revenue related to claims. Those circumstances may require the auditor to issue a qualified opinion or disclaim an opinion, depending on the particular circumstances.
- A contractor does not maintain detailed cost records by contract, and the auditor is unable to perform extended auditing procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence that the data purporting to represent accumulated costs to date are reasonably correct. In this situation, a modified opinion may be appropriate.
- An entity has cash problems because of undercapitalization or because losses have eroded its net worth and threaten its ability to continue to operate as a viable entity. When, in such a situation, the auditor has evaluated management's plans and concludes that substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time exists, the auditor should (a) consider the adequacy of disclosure about the entity's possible inability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, and (b) include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph in the audit report to reflect his or her conclusion in accordance with AU-C section 570, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole³

11.18 AU-C section 725, *Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), defines *supplementary information* as information presented outside the basic financial statements, excluding required supplementary information that is not considered necessary for the financial statements to be fairly presented in accordance

² See appendix I, "The Auditor's Report," for further discussion and illustrative examples of auditor's reports meeting the requirements of AU-C section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

³ See appendix J, "Reporting on Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole," for a discussion of reporting on supplementary information in relation to the financial statements as a whole, including example supplementary information and an illustrative auditor's report example.

with the applicable financial reporting framework. Such information may be presented in a document containing the audited financial statements or separate from the financial statements.

11.19 The objective of the auditor, when engaged to report on supplementary information in relation to the financial statements as a whole, is to evaluate the presentation of the supplementary information in relation to the financial statements as a whole and to report on whether the supplementary information is fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the financial statements as a whole.

11.20 In order to opine on whether supplementary information is fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the financial statements as a whole, the auditor should determine that the supplementary information was derived from, and relates directly to, the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the financial statements and relates to the same period as the financial statements. Further, the auditor must have issued an audit report on the financial statements that contained neither an adverse opinion nor a disclaimer of opinion and the supplementary information will accompany those audited financial statements, or such audited financial statements will be made readily available by the entity.

11.21 The auditor should obtain the agreement of management that it acknowledges and understands its responsibility for the preparation of the supplementary information in accordance with the applicable criteria. Management must also acknowledge that it will include the auditor's report on the supplementary information in any document that contains the supplementary information and that indicates that the auditor has reported on such supplementary information.

11.22 The auditor should also obtain the agreement of management that management will present the supplementary information with the audited financial statements or, if the supplementary information will not be presented with the audited financial statements, to make the audited financial statements readily available to the intended users of the supplementary information no later than the date of issuance by the entity of the supplementary information and the auditor's report thereon.

11.23 In addition to the procedures performed during the audit of the financial statements, in order to opine on whether supplementary information is fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the financial statements as a whole, the auditor should perform the following procedures using the same materiality level used in the audit of the financial statements:

- a.* Inquire of management about the purpose of the supplementary information and the criteria used by management to prepare the supplementary information, such as an applicable financial reporting framework, criteria established by a regulator, a contractual agreement, or other requirements.
- b.* Determine whether the form and content of the supplementary information complies with the applicable criteria.
- c.* Obtain an understanding about the methods of preparing the supplementary information and determine whether the methods of preparing the supplementary information have changed from those used in the prior period and, if the methods have changed, the reasons for such changes.

- d. Inquire of management about any significant assumptions or interpretations underlying the measurement or presentation of the supplementary information.
- e. Compare and reconcile the supplementary information to the underlying accounting and other records used in preparing the financial statements or to the financial statements themselves.
- f. Evaluate the appropriateness and completeness of the supplementary information, considering the results of the procedures performed and other knowledge obtained during the audit of the financial statements.
- g. Obtain written representations from management
 - i. that it acknowledges its responsibility for the presentation of the supplementary information in accordance with the applicable criteria;
 - ii. that it believes the supplementary information, including its form and content, is fairly presented in accordance with the applicable criteria;
 - iii. that the methods of measurement or presentation have not changed from those used in the prior period or, if the methods of measurement or presentation have changed, the reasons for such changes;
 - iv. about any significant assumptions or interpretations underlying the measurement or presentation of the supplementary information; and
 - v. that when the supplementary information is not presented with the audited financial statements, management will make the audited financial statements readily available to the intended users of the supplementary information no later than the date of issuance by the entity of the supplementary information and the auditor's report thereon.

11.24 The auditor has no responsibility for the consideration of subsequent events with respect to the supplementary information. However, if information comes to the auditor's attention prior to the release of the auditor's report on the financial statements regarding subsequent events that affect the financial statements, or subsequent to the release of the auditor's report on the financial statements regarding facts that, had they been known to the auditor at the date of the auditor's report, may have caused the auditor to revise the auditor's report, the auditor should apply the relevant requirements in AU-C section 560, *Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

Auditor's Communications Related to Internal Control Matters

11.25 Whenever an auditor expresses an opinion (including a disclaimer of opinion) on the financial statements of a nonissuer, AU-C section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), states that the auditor must communicate, in writing, to those charged with governance, significant deficiencies or material weaknesses identified during the audit, including those that were remediated during the

audit. The communication required by AU-C section 265 includes significant deficiencies and material weaknesses identified and communicated to management and those charged with governance in prior audits but not yet remediated. The written communication should be made no later than 60 days following the report release date. Nothing precludes the auditor from communicating to management and those charged with governance other matters that the auditor believes to be of potential benefit to the entity or that the auditor has been requested to communicate, which may include, for example, control deficiencies that are not significant deficiencies or material weaknesses. The auditor should not issue a written communication stating that no significant deficiencies were identified during the audit because of the potential for misinterpretation of the limited degree of assurance provided by such a communication. See paragraphs 9.07–.19 of this guide for additional guidance regarding auditor communication, including considerations under AU-C section 260, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

Legal and Regulatory Considerations

State Statutes Affecting Construction Contractors

11.26 The auditor should be aware of the existence in some states of *lien* laws. Those laws vary from state to state but generally provide that funds received or receivable by a contractor constitute trust funds that may only be used to pay specified contract-related costs. The auditor should review with the contractor and the contractor's counsel the applicable statute in each state in which the contractor operates to evaluate whether amounts that constitute trust funds under those statutes have been properly applied. Other state statutes may also have audit or disclosure requirements. The auditor should consider such statutes in the performance of an audit and in the evaluation of the adequacy of financial statement disclosures.

11.27 AU-C section 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), states that the auditor should be aware of the possibility that illegal acts may have occurred. If specific information comes to the auditor's attention that provides evidence concerning the existence of possible illegal acts that could have a material indirect effect on the financial statements, the auditor should apply audit procedures specifically directed to ascertaining whether an illegal act has occurred. An audit made in accordance with GAAS provides no assurance that illegal acts will be detected or that any contingent liabilities will be disclosed. However, when the auditor concludes, based on information obtained and, if necessary, consultation with legal counsel, that an illegal act has or is likely to have occurred, the auditor should consider the effect on the financial statements as well as the implications for other aspects of the audit.

Governmental Prequalification Reporting

11.28 Contractors are often required to file reports with agencies of the federal, state, or county governments in order to qualify for bidding on or performing work for such agencies. The report format required by the regulatory agencies may include preprinted auditors' reports, which differ from reports issued in conformity with GAAS.

11.29 If the auditor is required by law or regulation to use a specific layout, form, or wording of the auditor's report, the auditor's report should refer to GAAS only if the auditor's report includes, at a minimum, each of the following elements:

- a. A title
- b. An addressee
- c. An introductory paragraph that identifies the special purpose financial statements audited
- d. A description of the responsibility of management for the preparation and fair presentation of the special purpose financial statements
- e. A reference to management's responsibility for determining that the applicable financial reporting framework is acceptable in the circumstances when required by paragraph .18a of AU-C section 800, *Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*)
- f. A description of the purpose for which the financial statements are prepared when required by paragraph .18b of AU-C section 800
- g. A description of the auditor's responsibility to express an opinion on the special purpose financial statements and the scope of the audit, that includes
 - i. A reference to GAAS and, if applicable, the law or regulation
 - ii. A description of an audit in accordance with those standards
- h. An opinion paragraph containing an expression of opinion on the special purpose financial statements and a reference to the special purpose framework used to prepare the financial statements (including identifying the origin of the framework) and, if applicable, an opinion on whether the special purpose financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles when required by paragraph .21 of AU-C section 800
- i. An *emphasis-of-matter* paragraph that indicates that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework when required by paragraph .19 of AU-C section 800
- j. An *other-matter* paragraph that restricts the use of the auditor's report when required by paragraph .20 of AU-C section 800
- k. The auditor's signature
- l. The auditor's city and state
- m. The date of the auditor's report

11.30 If the prescribed specific layout, form, or wording of the auditor's report is not acceptable or would cause an auditor to make a statement that the auditor has no basis to make, the auditor should reword the printed forms or schedules of report or attach an appropriately worded separate report.

Chapter 12

Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement

© Update 12-1 Audit: Clarified Auditing Standards

The auditing guidance in this guide edition has been conformed to Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) Nos. 122–127 (referred to as clarified SASs), which were issued as part of the Auditing Standards Board's Clarity Project. These clarified SASs are effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012. Although the Clarity Project was not intended to create additional requirements, some revisions have resulted in changes that may require auditors to make adjustments in their practices.

To assist auditors and financial reporting professionals in making the transition, this guide includes appendix B, "Mapping and Summarization of Changes—Clarified Auditing Standards," which provides a cross reference of the sections in the superseded auditing standards to the applicable sections in the clarified auditing standards and identifies the changes, either substantive or primarily clarifying in nature, that may affect an auditor's practice or methodology relative to the applicable sections of SAS Nos. 122–127. It also summarizes the changes resulting from the requirements of SAS Nos. 122–127.

The preface of this guide and the Financial Reporting Center on www.aicpa.org provide more information on the Clarity Project. Visit www.aicpa.org/sasclarity.

12.01 AU-C section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), is the primary source of authoritative guidance about an auditor's responsibilities concerning the consideration of fraud in a financial statement audit. AU-C section 240 establishes standards and provides guidance to auditors in fulfilling their responsibility to plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether caused by error or fraud, as stated in AU-C section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditors and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

12.02 Two types of misstatements that are relevant to the auditor's consideration of fraud in a financial statement audit are misstatements arising from fraudulent financial reporting and misstatements arising from misappropriation of assets. Additionally, three conditions generally are present when fraud occurs. First, management or other employees have an *incentive* or are under *pressure*, which provides a reason to commit fraud. Second, circumstances exist—for example, the absence of controls, ineffective controls, or the ability of management to override controls—that provide a perceived *opportunity* for a fraud to be perpetrated. Third, those involved are able to *rationalize* committing a fraudulent act.

The Importance of Exercising Professional Skepticism

12.03 Because of the characteristics of fraud, the auditor's exercise of professional skepticism is important when considering the risk of material misstatement due to fraud. Professional skepticism is an attitude that includes a questioning mind and a critical assessment of audit evidence. The auditor should conduct the engagement with a mindset recognizing the possibility that a material misstatement due to fraud could exist, notwithstanding the auditor's past experience of the honesty and integrity of the entity's management and those charged with governance. Furthermore, professional skepticism requires an ongoing questioning of whether the information and audit evidence obtained suggests that a material misstatement due to fraud may exist.

Discussion Among Engagement Personnel Regarding the Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud

12.04 AU-C section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), requires a discussion among the key engagement team members, including the engagement partner, and a determination by the engagement partner of which matters are to be communicated to those team members not involved in the discussion. This discussion should include an exchange of ideas or brainstorming among the engagement team members about how and where the entity's financial statements might be susceptible to material misstatement due to fraud, how management could perpetrate and conceal fraudulent financial reporting, and how assets of the entity could be misappropriated.

12.05 The discussion should occur setting aside beliefs that the engagement team members may have that management and those charged with governance are honest and have integrity, and should, in particular, also address

- a. known external and internal factors affecting the entity that may create an incentive or pressure for management or others to commit fraud, provide the opportunity for fraud to be perpetrated, and indicate a culture or environment that enables management or others to rationalize committing fraud;
- b. the risk of management override of controls;
- c. consideration of circumstances that might be indicative of earnings management or manipulation of other financial measures and the practices that might be followed by management to manage earnings or other financial measures that could lead to fraudulent financial reporting;
- d. the importance of maintaining professional skepticism throughout the audit regarding the potential for material misstatement due to fraud; and
- e. how the auditor might respond to the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement due to fraud.

Communication among the engagement team members about the risks of material misstatement due to fraud should continue throughout the audit, particularly upon discovery of new facts during the audit.

12.06 Although there certainly are a number of large national and international construction contractors, some of which are public entities, the vast

majority of contractors are privately owned businesses. The latter group within the construction industry tends to be dominated by a large number of family-owned contractors whose operations are conducted through various forms of organizations including corporations, partnerships, and limited liability entities. Those organizations, in turn, enter into joint ventures of all forms. It is common for construction contractors to own or control more than one operating entity. The term *double-breasting* refers to simultaneous operation of both a union contractor and a nonunion contractor. This is done to enable bidding on jobs regardless of the contract-mandated labor requirements.

12.07 In certain regions of the country, especially those that are highly unionized, the construction industry has historically experienced corruption. Despite the absence of any existing evidence of corruption, and regardless of any past experience with the industry, the entity, or management, the discussion among the auditing team should emphasize the need to maintain a questioning mind and to exercise professional skepticism in gathering and evaluating evidence throughout the audit.

12.08 Although every commercial transaction may be subject to the risk of fraud, the construction industry has been especially affected by frauds resulting from, among other factors

- dependence on consultants or government officials, or both, for obtaining regulatory approvals.
- noncompliance with labor laws and collective bargaining agreements.
- high-dollar value of many of the contracts.
- requirements to accept lowest bidders.
- dependence on consultants, including development managers, architects, and engineers for good-faith exercise of discretion.

12.09 Certain aspects of the construction industry can create a higher risk of the presence of fraud occurring at a construction entity. These items are discussed in the following list:

- *Incentives and Pressures*
 - The percentage of completion method requires that loss contacts be accrued. A strong incentive exists for contractors to avoid such recognition by charging costs on jobs that are likely to result in losses to more profitable jobs to prevent the loss accrual or the contractor may allocate additional costs to a job that is already showing a loss, while underallocating costs to profitable jobs in order to make those jobs reflect more profits.
 - Bonding generally is a requirement to bid on most large and nearly all government contracts. Bonding companies go through a working capital type calculation to determine *bonding capacity*. That calculation assigns differing weights by category of assets and generally excludes prepaid amounts, amounts due from related parties, and aged receivables (generally over 90 days) and provides credit for only half of the inventory. Knowing the formula behind the calculation provides the contractor an incentive to mask amounts due from related parties and

allocate inventory and prepaid amounts to current job costs, thus reclassifying those costs on the balance sheet by either increasing underbillings or decreasing overbillings (and, as a further consequence of the abuse, accelerating revenue recognition on the jobs to which they are charged).

- Profit fade (the reduction of the estimated gross profit over the life of a contract) is recognized as evidence of a contractor's inability to effectively estimate or manage a job, or both. In order to prevent profit fade from appearing on an older job, contractors may attempt to inappropriately charge costs on those older jobs to newer ones.
 - Very few bidders on a job and very high gross profit margins on jobs both may be signs that the bidding process is influenced by corruption.
 - Depending on the nature of the employee-employer relationship and the construction contract, some employees may feel little loyalty to the projects they work on and have no inclination to complete work on time. Line employees may steal materials or intentionally create time and cost overruns to extend their own employment. As material and labor costs soar during the construction phase, support personnel in accounting or purchasing departments may concoct inventory or accounts payable schemes to defraud their employers or customers.
 - Pressure to meet covenants required by financial institutions for lines of credit or borrowings.
 - Incentives due to management or employee, or both, bonus arrangements, based on job profitability.
- *Opportunities*
 - Completed jobs often have unused materials left over. A scheme used by some contractors is to commingle those materials with recently purchased ones. In the year-end physical inventory, those with no cost are not identified as such, and the "recycled" inventory is repriced at historical cost along with the other items counted. And the book to physical inventory adjustment masks the reintroduction of the "recycled" materials into inventory.
 - Most job costs are for materials and labor, which are costs that are not always project-specific. It is not unheard of for a contractor to charge personal costs to a job. Vehicle costs are not uncommon for construction contracts, and the cost of personal vehicles leased for family members do not stand out as unusual job costs. It is not unheard of for contractors to have built personal residences for themselves, family members, government and union officials and to charge those costs to a job or to a series of jobs. Similarly, "favors" in the form of repaving driveways, excavating a lot, or building a stonewall are some of

the inappropriate items that sometimes may be charged to contracts.

- Significant equipment purchases are charged directly to contract job costs. Some contractors may inappropriately charge to a job the entire cost of capitalizable construction equipment all at once instead of capitalizing this equipment, depreciating it over its useful life, and allocating to the job only an applicable portion of depreciation expense. When a contractor uses the percentage of completion method, this will accelerate the revenue recognition process by increasing costs incurred to date. In an effort to further improve its profitability, the construction contractor may also attempt to charge its client for equipment that may be used on several jobs by either submitting change orders for fixed-price contracts or by simply including this equipment among costs for time-and-materials contracts.
 - Because the percentage of completion method of accounting for long-term construction-type contracts is required whenever contractors have the ability to make reasonably dependable estimates, the estimate of total contract costs (incurred and to be incurred) is uniquely critical to the revenue recognition process in this industry. Underestimation of total contract cost would present the contract as more complete than it is and, as a consequence, would result in excess gross profit on the job and overstated operating results for the entity. Because of the subjective nature inherent in estimating total costs and costs to complete, the contractor is in a unique position to influence those estimates and, as a direct consequence, the operating results for the period.
- *Attitudes and Rationalizations*
 - Many construction contractors will do whatever it takes to get the job. Financial reporting is considered merely a requirement to get the necessary loans and bonding to be able to effectively participate in the industry. The industry is a tough one in which to participate, and those who have been successful have had to apply good business judgment to overcome the constant challenges to their integrity.

Obtaining the Information Needed to Identify the Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud

12.10 AU-C section 315 establishes requirements and provides guidance about how the auditor obtains an understanding of the entity and its environment, including its internal control for the purpose of assessing the risks of material misstatement. In performing that work, information may come to the auditor's attention that should be considered in identifying risks of material misstatement due to fraud. As part of this work, the auditor should perform

the following procedures to obtain information that is used to identify the risks of material misstatement due to fraud:

- a. Make inquiries of management and others within the entity to obtain their views about the risks of fraud and how they are addressed.
- b. Consider any unusual or unexpected relationships that have been identified in performing analytical procedures in planning the audit.
- c. Consider whether one or more fraud risk factors exist.
- d. Consider other information that may be helpful in the identification of risks of material misstatement due to fraud.

12.11 In planning the audit, the auditor also should perform analytical procedures, including those related to revenue, with the objective of identifying unusual or unexpected relationships that may indicate a material misstatement due to fraudulent financial reporting. For example, in the construction industry, the following unusual or unexpected relationships may indicate a material misstatement due to fraud:

- Underbillings on uncompleted contracts that exceed 20 percent of equity or 25 percent of working capital, the explanation for which may include the masking losses or costs unrelated to a job being charged to that job
- Continually increasing underbillings, which may indicate that potential losses are being capitalized
- Overbillings that are not represented by cash, the explanation for which may include the use of excess cash collections to finance other possible loss contracts
- A higher gross profit on uncompleted contracts than on closed jobs, which may indicate an overly optimistic estimate of profitability on open jobs
- Inability to reconcile total costs incurred on open jobs and closed jobs to the total costs presented on the statement of operations, which may suggest that closed jobs may have been charged for current costs

Considering Fraud Risk Factors

12.12 The auditor may identify events or conditions that indicate incentives or pressures to perpetrate fraud, opportunities to carry out the fraud, or attitudes and rationalizations to justify a fraudulent action. Such events or conditions are referred to as *fraud risk factors*. Fraud risk factors do not necessarily indicate the existence of fraud; however, they often are present in circumstances where fraud exists.

12.13 AU-C section 240 provides fraud risk factor examples that have been written to apply to most enterprises. Paragraph 12.09 provides a list of fraud risk factors specific to the construction industry. Remember that fraud risk factors are only one of several sources of information an auditor considers when identifying and assessing risk of material misstatement due to fraud.

Identifying Risks That May Result in a Material Misstatement Due to Fraud

12.14 In identifying risks of material misstatement due to fraud, it is helpful for the auditor to consider the information that has been gathered in accordance with the requirements of AU-C section 240. The auditor's identification of fraud risks may be influenced by characteristics such as the size, complexity, and ownership attributes of the entity. In addition, the auditor should identify and assess the risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the financial statement level and at the assertion level for classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures. Certain accounts, classes of transactions, and assertions that have high inherent risk because they involve a high degree of management judgment and subjectivity also may present risks of material misstatement due to fraud because they are susceptible to manipulation by management.

12.15 As discussed, due to the nature of the construction industry, a number of accounts can be subject to fraudulent activities including underbillings and overbillings, inventory, prepaid expenses, and fixed assets. In addition, from a standpoint of potential manipulation of financial results, a few of the areas that involve the most judgment and, therefore, present the greatest risk of manipulation are described as follows:

- *Penalty clauses.* Municipal contracts, especially school contracts, very often contain penalty clauses for late completion of jobs. Those penalties are usually assessed on a daily basis, and they can become substantial. Often, contractors neglect to charge such costs to jobs as they are incurred in the hope that somehow those penalty amounts will be waived. Because they are contract costs, penalties should be accrued and charged to job costs as incurred. These penalty clauses may come in the form of liquidated damages (per the terms of the contract), actual damages assessed by the owner, or back charges.
- *Davis-Bacon Act consideration.* Contracts entered into by non-union contractors covered by the Davis-Bacon Act require that contractors pay for nonunion labor at the prevailing wage of union workers. The differential between the prevailing union wage and the actual wage often is not paid directly to the worker but to a supplemental benefit plan that benefits the worker. Such payments are made less often than payroll payments. It is not uncommon to discover that such unpaid costs have not been accrued and charged to the job on a contemporaneous basis.

A Presumption That Improper Revenue Recognition Is a Fraud Risk

12.16 Material misstatements due to fraudulent financial reporting often result from an overstatement of revenues (for example, through premature revenue recognition or recording fictitious revenues) or an understatement of revenues (for example, through improperly shifting revenues to a later period). Therefore, when identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement due to fraud, the auditor should, based on a presumption that risks of fraud exist in revenue recognition, evaluate which types of revenue, revenue transactions, or assertions give rise to such risks.

12.17 As discussed previously, revenue recognition process for construction contractors using the percentage of completion method is often based on an estimate of total cost. Underestimation of total contract cost would present the contract as more complete than it really is and, as a consequence, would result in excess gross profit on the job and acceleration of the revenue recognition process. Preparation of accurate work in process schedules is essential for proper revenue recognition. Care needs to be exercised to ensure that the costs incurred to date schedule includes all costs that actually have been incurred through the period-end and that no significant unrecorded liabilities exist. Then, the actual costs and the estimate of costs to be incurred are a meaningful estimate of total costs to use in estimating revenue. If the costs incurred to date schedule is incomplete, then total costs will most likely be understated, which will result in inaccurate revenue recognition, regardless of the revenue recognition method used by the contractor.

12.18 A popular misconception is that unrecorded liabilities only increase revenue in percentage of completion accounting. That would be so only if unrecorded liabilities excluded from the costs incurred to date were picked up in the estimate of costs to complete. However, this will not be the case if a contractor relies on an engineering assessment instead of the accounting system to estimate costs to complete by observing what has been done and what remains to be done. Auditors should select certain job sites for observation and discussion of stage of completion with engineering personnel. Contracts under 10 percent complete and over 90 percent complete generally present less risk to the auditor. This is simply because those under 10 percent complete have relatively little revenue recognized based on the estimates. Those over 90 percent complete are at a stage at which most of the costs have been incurred; therefore, the risk of revenue manipulation is minimized at this point.

12.19 Revenue recognition may be accelerated if a contractor reclassifies inventory and prepaid amounts to current job costs to satisfy working capital requirements of bonding companies.

12.20 Contractors also may accelerate revenue recognition by inappropriately charging to a job the entire cost of capitalizable construction equipment all at once instead of capitalizing this equipment, depreciating it over its useful life, and allocating to the job only an applicable portion of depreciation expense. When a contractor uses the percentage of completion method, this will accelerate the revenue recognition process by increasing costs incurred to date. In an effort to further increase its revenues, the construction contractor may also attempt to charge its client for equipment that may be used on several jobs by either submitting change orders for fixed-price contracts or by simply including this equipment among costs for time-and-materials contracts.

12.21 If the contractor has adopted the accounting policy that allows for total costs recognition on claims receivable, then the amount to be recognized should be limited to the actual costs incurred deemed to be realizable. Often, claims information is based on estimates prepared by outside consultants who are preparing for litigation. Those estimates generally include costs that are not recognizable under Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 605-35, and care needs to be exercised to ensure that amounts recognized are limited to the actual costs incurred.

12.22 Some construction contractors may assert the inability to estimate costs in an attempt to justify continued use of the completed contract method

allowed in FASB ASC 605-35 under such circumstances. Such claims may have had some validity decades ago when estimates were done by hand; however, the abundance of off-the-shelf software that assists in making estimates and tracking costs on contracts renders most of such claims invalid.

Key Estimates

12.23 Key estimates in the construction industry involve the following items:

- Cost to complete
- Contract penalties and incentives
- Profit from change orders
- Revenue from claims
- Allocation of equipment costs
- Stage of completion
- Accounts receivable allowance
- Assumptions regarding impairments of long-lived assets
- Assumptions regarding deferred tax valuation allowances and effective tax rates

Assessing the Identified Risks After Taking Into Account an Evaluation of the Entity's Programs and Controls That Address the Risks

12.24 Paragraph .27 of AU-C section 240 provides guidance and sets forth requirements concerning an entity's programs and controls that address identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud. The following are examples of programs and controls that can be found in construction entities:

- Contractors have extensive systems for the identification and recognition of costs by job.
- Contractors have sophisticated systems to assist engineering personnel in making cost to complete estimates.
- Construction contractors generally are hands-on managers with intimate knowledge of the job, the progress on the job, and the expected completion of the job.
- Many privately owned construction entities are owned and managed by someone who has participated in the trades at many levels and therefore has intimate knowledge of the complexities of the trade and what can go wrong.
- Contractors have corporate policies, particularly in the areas of employee relations and enforcement, to establish an environment that minimizes the risk of fraud. Both management and lower level employees are less likely to engage in fraud, commercial crime, or destructive acts if they believe they have a stake in the entity and
 - they are being fairly treated, for example, with respect to compensation.

- any employee will be severely dealt with for any breach of the law or the entity's policies.
- Construction contractors have physical access restrictions, for example, with respect to construction materials and supplies at the entity's premises and at work sites, will deter theft or sabotage.
- Contractors have supervisory performance, quality control, and independence checks to ensure that the entity's work is up to contract standards and minimize the potential for materials substitution or other quality problems.
- Contractors carry adequate insurance (for example, fidelity, liability, and theft).

Responding to the Results of the Assessment¹

12.25 AU-C section 240 provides requirements and guidance about an auditor's response to the results of the assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.

12.26 The auditor should determine overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the financial statement level. In determining overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the financial statement level, the auditor should

- a. assign and supervise personnel, taking into account the knowledge, skill, and ability of the individuals to be given significant engagement responsibilities and the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud for the engagement;
- b. evaluate whether the selection and application of accounting policies by the entity, particularly those related to subjective measurements and complex transactions, may be indicative of fraudulent financial reporting resulting from management's effort to manage earnings, or a bias that may create a material misstatement; and
- c. incorporate an element of unpredictability in the selection of the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures.

12.27 The auditor should design and perform further audit procedures whose nature, timing, and extent are responsive to the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the assertion level. Construction audit procedures may include the following:

- Holding regular meetings with owners and project managers.
- Reviewing monthly internal financial reports with appropriate contractor personnel to include detailed review of work in process job schedule.
- Performing testing of the contractor's internal controls over job costing and contracts receivable.

¹ Paragraph .06 of AU-C section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), states that the auditor should design and perform further audit procedures whose nature, timing, and extent are based on, and are responsive to, the assessed risks of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level.

- Reviewing analytical review procedures used by the contractor to identify fraudulent actions and understand the results of these analyses. Depending on the results, additional procedures may be necessary.
- Scheduling job site visits at or near year end and discuss progress on job to date with on-site personnel, especially those not directly involved in the preparation of the estimate of costs to complete.
- Inquiring with employees of various levels regarding their understanding of fraud risk factors, controls in place, and any known illegal acts or fraud.

12.28 Even if specific risks of material misstatement due to fraud are not identified by the auditor, a possibility exists that management override of controls could occur. Accordingly, the auditor should address the risk of management override of controls apart from any conclusions regarding the existence of more specifically identifiable risks by designing and performing audit procedures to

- a. test the appropriateness of journal entries recorded in the general ledger and other adjustments made in the preparation of the financial statements, including entries posted directly to financial statement drafts. In designing and performing audit procedures for such tests, the auditor should
 - i. obtain an understanding of the entity's financial reporting process and controls over journal entries and other adjustments, and the suitability of design and implementation of such controls;
 - ii. make inquiries of individuals involved in the financial reporting process about inappropriate or unusual activity relating to the processing of journal entries and other adjustments;
 - iii. consider fraud risk indicators, the nature and complexity of accounts, and entries processed outside the normal course of business;
 - iv. select journal entries and other adjustments made at the end of a reporting period; and
 - v. consider the need to test journal entries and other adjustments throughout the period.
- b. review accounting estimates for biases and evaluate whether the circumstances producing the bias, if any, represent a risk of material misstatement due to fraud. In performing this review, the auditor should
 - i. evaluate whether the judgments and decisions made by management in making the accounting estimates included in the financial statements, even if they are individually reasonable, indicate a possible bias on the part of the entity's management that may represent a risk of material misstatement due to fraud. If so, the auditor should reevaluate the accounting estimates taken as a whole, and
 - ii. perform a retrospective review of management judgments and assumptions related to significant accounting estimates reflected in the financial statements of the prior

year. Estimates selected for review should include those that are based on highly sensitive assumptions or are otherwise significantly affected by judgments made by management.

- c. evaluate, for significant transactions that are outside the normal course of business for the entity or that otherwise appear to be unusual given the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment and other information obtained during the audit, whether the business rationale (or the lack thereof) of the transactions suggests that they may have been entered into to engage in fraudulent financial reporting or to conceal misappropriation of assets.

Evaluating Audit Evidence

12.29 Paragraphs .34–.37 of AU-C section 240 provide requirements and guidance for evaluating audit evidence. The auditor should evaluate, at or near the end of the audit, whether the accumulated results of auditing procedures (including analytical procedures² that were performed as substantive tests or when forming an overall conclusion) affect the assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud made earlier in the audit or indicate a previously unrecognized risk of material misstatement due to fraud. The auditor also should consider whether responses to inquiries of management, those charged with governance, or others are inconsistent or otherwise unsatisfactory (for example, vague or implausible), and, if determined to be so, the auditor should further investigate the inconsistencies or unsatisfactory responses.

Responding to Misstatements That May Be the Result of Fraud

12.30 When audit test results identify misstatements in the financial statements, the auditor should consider whether such misstatements may be indicative of fraud. If such an indication exists, the auditor should evaluate the implications of the misstatement with regard to other aspects of the audit, particularly the auditor's evaluation of materiality, management and employee integrity, and the reliability of management representations, recognizing that an instance of fraud is unlikely to be an isolated occurrence.

12.31 If the auditor identifies a misstatement, whether material or not, and the auditor has reason to believe that it is, or may be, the result of fraud and that management (in particular, senior management) is involved, the auditor should reevaluate the assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud and its resulting effect on the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures to respond to the assessed risks. The auditor should also consider whether circumstances or conditions indicate possible collusion involving employees, management, or third parties when reconsidering the reliability of evidence previously obtained.

² Refer to the AICPA Audit Guide *Analytical Procedures* for guidance on the effective use of analytical procedures with an emphasis on analytical procedures as substantive tests. This includes a discussion of AU section 329, *Analytical Procedures* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), and the underlying concepts and definitions, a series of questions and answers, an illustrative case study, and an appendix that includes useful financial ratios.

12.32 If the auditor concludes that, or is unable to conclude whether, the financial statements are materially misstated as a result of fraud, the auditor should evaluate the implications for the audit.

12.33 If, as a result of identified fraud or suspected fraud, the auditor encounters circumstances that bring into question the auditor's ability to continue performing the audit, the auditor should

- a. determine the professional and legal responsibilities applicable in the circumstances, including whether a requirement exists for the auditor to report to the person or persons who engaged the auditor or, in some cases, to regulatory authorities;
- b. consider whether it is appropriate to withdraw from the engagement, when withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation; and
- c. if the auditor withdraws
 - i. discuss with the appropriate level of management and those charged with governance the auditor's withdrawal from the engagement and the reasons for the withdrawal, and
 - ii. determine whether a professional or legal requirement exists to report to the person or persons who engaged the auditor or, in some cases, to regulatory authorities, the auditor's withdrawal from the engagement and the reasons for the withdrawal.

Communicating About Possible Fraud to Management, Those Charged With Governance, and Others

12.34 Whenever the auditor has determined that there is evidence that fraud may exist, that matter should be brought to the attention of an appropriate level of management. See paragraphs .39–.41 of AU-C section 240 for further requirements and guidance about communications with management, those charged with governance, and others.

Documenting the Auditor's Consideration of Fraud

12.35 In order to document the auditor's consideration of fraud, the auditor should include the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment and the assessment of the risks of material misstatements by documenting

- the significant decisions reached during the discussion among the engagement team regarding the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement due to fraud, and how and when the discussion occurred and the audit team members who participated
- the identified and assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the financial statement level and at the assertion level

The auditor should also include the communications about fraud made to management, those charged with governance, regulators and other, in addition to the communications within the audit team.

12.36 In addition, the auditor should include the audit documentation of the auditor's responses to the assessed risks of material misstatement the overall responses to the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the financial statement level and the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures, and the linkage of those procedures with the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the assertion level, as well as the results of the audit procedures, including those designed to address the risk of management override of controls.

12.37 Lastly, if the auditor has concluded that the presumption that there is a risk of material misstatement due to fraud related to revenue recognition is overcome in the circumstances of the engagement, the auditor should include in the audit documentation the reasons for that conclusion.

Appendix A

Guidance Updates

This appendix includes information on guidance issued through the "as of" date of this guide that is not yet effective but that will be effective for the next edition of this guide. References to this guidance, where applicable, are included throughout the chapters of this guide in shaded text. The references use a guidance update number that consists of the chapter number followed by the sequentially numbered guidance update number within any given chapter (for example, update 3-1 would be the first guidance update in chapter 3, "Accounting for and Reporting Investments in Construction Joint Ventures"). The guidance in this appendix is cross-referenced using the same guidance update numbers found throughout the chapters of this guide, as applicable. Readers should consider this information for the reporting period to which it applies.

Accounting and Reporting Updates

A.01 ASU No. 2012-02

Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2012-02, *Intangibles—Goodwill and Other (Topic 350): Testing Indefinite-Lived Intangible Assets for Impairment*, issued in July 2012, is effective for entities for fiscal years, and interim periods within those years, beginning after September 15, 2012. Early adoption is permitted, including for annual and interim impairment tests performed as of a date before July 27, 2012, if a public entity's financial statements for the most recent annual or interim period have not yet been issued or, for nonpublic entities, have not yet been made available for issuance.

Accounting and Reporting: Goodwill [Update 5-1]

The paragraph that follows replaces existing paragraph 5.40 in the section "Intangibles—Other" in chapter 5, "Other Accounting Considerations," of this guide upon the effective date of ASU No. 2012-02:

The FASB ASC glossary defines *intangibles* as assets (not including financial assets) that lack physical substance. The term *intangible assets* is used to refer to intangible assets other than goodwill. FASB ASC 350-30-35-1 states that the accounting for a recognized intangible asset is based on its useful life to the reporting entity. An intangible asset with a finite useful life shall be amortized; an intangible asset with an indefinite useful life shall not be amortized. "Pending Content" in paragraph 18 of FASB ASC 350-30-35 explains that an intangible asset that is not subject to amortization should be tested for impairment annually and more frequently if events or changes in circumstances indicate that it is more likely than not that the asset might be impaired.

The entity may first perform a qualitative assessment to determine whether it is necessary to perform the quantitative impairment test as described in "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 350-30-35-19. Note

that the entity has an unconditional option to bypass the qualitative assessment for any indefinite-lived intangible asset in any period and proceed directly to performing the quantitative impairment test as described in "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 350-30-35-19. The entity may resume performing the qualitative assessment in any subsequent period. If the entity elects to perform a qualitative assessment, it first should assess qualitative factors to determine whether it is more likely than not (that is, a likelihood of more than 50 percent) that an indefinite-lived intangible asset is impaired.

In assessing whether it is more likely than not that an indefinite-lived intangible asset is impaired, the entity should assess all relevant events and circumstances that could affect the significant inputs used to determine the fair value of the indefinite-lived intangible asset. Examples of such events and circumstances include the following:

- a.* Cost factors such as increases in raw materials, labor, or other costs that have a negative effect on future expected earnings and cash flows that could affect significant inputs used to determine the fair value of the indefinite-lived intangible asset
- b.* Financial performance such as negative or declining cash flows or a decline in actual or planned revenue or earnings compared with actual and projected results of relevant prior periods that could affect significant inputs used to determine the fair value of the indefinite-lived intangible asset
- c.* Legal, regulatory, contractual, political, business, or other factors, including asset-specific factors that could affect significant inputs used to determine the fair value of the indefinite-lived intangible asset
- d.* Other relevant entity-specific events such as changes in management, key personnel, strategy, or customers; contemplation of bankruptcy; or litigation that could affect significant inputs used to determine the fair value of the indefinite-lived intangible asset
- e.* Industry and market considerations such as a deterioration in the environment in which an entity operates, an increased competitive environment, a decline in market-dependent multiples or metrics (in both absolute terms and relative to peers), or a change in the market for an entity's products or services due to the effects of obsolescence, demand, competition, or other economic factors (such as the stability of the industry, known technological advances, legislative action that results in an uncertain or changing business environment, and expected changes in distribution channels) that could affect significant inputs used to determine the fair value of the indefinite-lived intangible asset
- f.* Macroeconomic conditions such as deterioration in general economic conditions, limitations on accessing capital, fluctuations in foreign exchange rates, or other developments in equity and credit markets that could affect significant

inputs used to determine the fair value of the indefinite-lived intangible asset

Note that this listing is not all-inclusive, and the entity should consider other relevant events and circumstances that could affect the significant inputs used to determine the fair value of the indefinite-lived intangible asset.

Based on the weight of the evidence, the significance of all identified events and circumstances that could affect the significant inputs used to determine the fair value of the indefinite-lived intangible asset should be evaluated in order to determine whether it is more likely than not that the indefinite-lived intangible asset is impaired.

If after assessing the totality of events and circumstances and their potential effect on significant inputs to the fair value determination the entity determines that it is *not* more likely than not that the indefinite-lived intangible asset is impaired, then the entity need not calculate the fair value of the intangible asset and perform the quantitative impairment test described in "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 350-30-35-19.

If after assessing the totality of events and circumstances and their potential effect on significant inputs to the fair value determination the entity determines that it *is* more likely than not that the indefinite-lived intangible asset is impaired, then the entity need not calculate the fair value of the intangible asset and perform the quantitative impairment test described in "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 350-30-35-19.

"Pending Content" in FASB ASC 350-30-35-19 states that the quantitative impairment test for an indefinite-lived intangible asset should consist of a comparison of the fair value of the asset with its carrying amount. If the carrying amount of the intangible asset exceeds its fair value, the entity should recognize an impairment loss in an amount equal to that excess. After an impairment loss is recognized, the adjusted carrying amount of the intangible asset will be its new accounting basis.

Appendix B

Mapping and Summarization of Changes—Clarified Auditing Standards

This appendix maps the extant¹ AU sections to the clarified AU-C sections. As a result of the Auditing Standards Board's (ASB's) Clarity Project, all extant AU sections have been modified. In some cases, individual AU sections have been revised into individual clarified standards. In other cases, some AU sections have been grouped together and revised as one or more clarified standards. In addition, the ASB revised the AU section number order established by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 1, *Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, AU sec. 110), to follow the same number order used in International Standards on Auditing (ISAs) for all clarified AU sections for which there are comparable ISAs. The clarified standards are effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012.

Although the Clarity Project was not intended to create additional requirements, some revisions have resulted in changes that may require auditors to make adjustments in their practices. To assist auditors in the transition process, these changes have been organized into the following four types:

- Substantive changes
- Primarily clarifying changes
- Primarily formatting changes
- Standards not yet issued in the Clarity Project

This appendix identifies those AU-C sections associated with these four types of changes.

Substantive Changes

Substantive changes are considered likely to affect the firms' audit methodology and engagements because they contain *substantive* or *other changes*, defined as having one or both of the following characteristics:

- A change or changes to an audit methodology that may require effort to implement
- A number of small changes that, although not individually significant, may affect audit engagements

Primarily Clarifying Changes

Primarily clarifying changes are intended to explicitly state what may have been implicit in the extant standards, which, over time, resulted in diversity in practice.

(continued)

¹ The term *extant* is used throughout this appendix in reference to the standards that are superseded by the clarified standards.

Primarily Formatting Changes

Primarily formatting changes from the extant standards do not contain changes that expand the extant sections in any significant way and may not require adjustments to current practice.

Standards Not Yet Issued in the Clarity Project

Standards not yet issued in the Clarity Project contain the remaining sections that are in exposure or have not yet been reworked.

The preface of this guide and the Financial Reporting Center at www.aicpa.org/frc provide more information about the Clarity Project. You can also visit www.aicpa.org/sasclarity.

Extant AU Sections Mapped to the Clarified AU-C Sections

Extant AU Section		AU Section Super-seded	New AU-C Section		Type of Change
110	Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor	All	200	Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards [1]	Primarily formatting changes
120	Defining Professional Requirements in Statements on Auditing Standards	All			
150	Generally Accepted Auditing Standards	All			
161	The Relationship of Generally Accepted Auditing Standards to Quality Control Standards	All	220	Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards	Primarily clarifying changes
201	Nature of the General Standards	All	200	Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards [1]	Primarily formatting changes
210	Training and Proficiency of the Independent Auditor	All			
220	Independence	All			
230	Due Professional Care in the Performance of Work	All			
311	Planning and Supervision	All except paragraphs .08-.10	300	Planning an Audit	Primarily formatting changes
		Paragraphs .08-.10	210	Terms of Engagement	Primarily clarifying changes

(continued)

Extant AU Sections Mapped to the Clarified AU-C Sections—continued

Extant AU Section		AU Section Super-seded	New AU-C Section		Type of Change
312	Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit	All	320	Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit	Primarily formatting changes
			450	Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit	Primarily formatting changes
314	Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement	All	315	Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement	Primarily formatting changes
315	Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors	All except paragraphs .03–.10 and .14	510	Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements	Primarily clarifying changes
		Paragraphs .03–.10 and .14	210	Terms of Engagement	Primarily clarifying changes
316	Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit	All	240	Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit	Primarily formatting changes
317	Illegal Acts by Clients	All	250	Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements	Substantive changes
318	Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained	All	330	Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained	Primarily formatting changes

Extant AU Sections Mapped to the Clarified AU-C Sections—continued

Extant AU Section		AU Section Superseded	New AU-C Section		Type of Change
322	The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements	All	Planned to be issued as AU-C section 610	The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements	Standards not yet issued in the Clarity Project
324	Service Organizations	All	402	Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization	Primarily clarifying changes
325	Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit	All	265	Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit	Substantive changes
326	Audit Evidence	All	500	Audit Evidence	Primarily formatting changes
328	Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures	All	540	Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures [2]	Primarily formatting changes
329	Analytical Procedures	All	520	Analytical Procedures	Primarily formatting changes
330	The Confirmation Process	All	505	External Confirmations	Primarily clarifying changes
331	Inventories	All	501	Audit Evidence— Specific Considerations for Selected Items [3]	Primarily clarifying changes
332	Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities	All	501	Audit Evidence— Specific Considerations for Selected Items [3]	Primarily clarifying changes

(continued)

Extant AU Sections Mapped to the Clarified AU-C Sections—continued

Extant AU Section		AU Section Superseded	New AU-C Section		Type of Change
333	Management Representations	All	580	Written Representations	Primarily formatting changes
334	Related Parties	All	550	Related Parties	Substantive changes
336	Using the Work of a Specialist	All	620	Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist	Primarily Clarifying Changes
337	Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments	All	501	Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items [3]	Primarily clarifying changes
339	Audit Documentation	All	230	Audit Documentation	Primarily formatting changes
341	The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern	All	570	The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern	Primarily formatting changes
342	Auditing Accounting Estimates	All	540	Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures [2]	Primarily formatting changes
350	Audit Sampling	All	530	Audit Sampling	Primarily formatting changes
380	The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance	All	260	The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance	Primarily formatting changes
390	Consideration of Omitted Procedures After the Report Date	All	585	Consideration of Omitted Procedures After the Report Release Date	Primarily formatting changes

Extant AU Sections Mapped to the Clarified AU-C Sections—continued

Extant AU Section		AU Section Superseded	New AU-C Section		Type of Change
410	Adherence to Generally Accepted Accounting Principles	All	700	Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements [4]	Substantive changes
420	Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles	All	708	Consistency of Financial Statements	Primarily clarifying changes
431	Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements	All	705	Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report [5]	Primarily formatting changes
504	Association With Financial Statements	All	N/A	Withdrawn	

(continued)

Extant AU Sections Mapped to the Clarified AU-C Sections—*continued*

Extant AU Section		AU Section Super-seded	New AU-C Section		Type of Change	
508	Reports on Audited Financial Statements	Para-graphs .01–.11, .14–.15, .19–.32, .35–.52, .58–.70, and .74–.76	700	Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements [4]	Substantive changes	
			705	Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report [5]	Primarily formatting changes	
			706	Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report [6]	Substantive changes	
			Para-graphs .12–.13	600	Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)	Substantive changes
			Para-graphs .16–.18 and .53–.57	708	Consistency of Financial Statements	Primarily clarifying changes
			Para-graphs .33–.34	805	Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement	Primarily clarifying changes
			Para-graphs .71–.73	560	Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts [7]	Primarily formatting changes

Extant AU Sections Mapped to the Clarified AU-C Sections—continued

Extant AU Section		AU Section Superseded	New AU-C Section		Type of Change
530	Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report	Para-graphs .01–.02	700	Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements [4]	Substantive changes
		Para-graphs .03–.08	560	Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts [7]	Primarily formatting changes
532	Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report	All	905	Alert That Restricts the Use of the Auditor's Written Communication	Primarily clarifying changes
534	Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries	All	910	Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Financial Reporting Framework Generally Accepted in Another Country	Primarily clarifying changes
543	Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors	All	600	Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)	Substantive changes
544	Lack of Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles	All	800	Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks [8]	Primarily clarifying changes
550	Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements	All	720	Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements	Primarily formatting changes

(continued)

Extant AU Sections Mapped to the Clarified AU-C Sections—continued

Extant AU Section		AU Section Superseded	New AU-C Section		Type of Change
551	Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole	All	725	Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole	Primarily formatting changes
552	Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data	All	810	Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements	Primarily clarifying changes
558	Required Supplementary Information	All	730	Required Supplementary Information	Primarily formatting changes
560	Subsequent Events	All	560	Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts [7]	Primarily formatting changes
561	Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report	All			

Extant AU Sections Mapped to the Clarified AU-C Sections—continued

Extant AU Section		AU Section Superseded	New AU-C Section		Type of Change
623	Special Reports	Para- graphs .19–.21	806	Reporting on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements in Connection With Audited Financial Statements	Primarily formatting changes
		Para- graphs .01–.10 and .22–.34	800	Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks [8]	Primarily clarifying changes
		Para- graphs .11–.18	805	Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement	Primarily clarifying changes
625	Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles	All	915	Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework	Primarily formatting changes
634	Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties	All	920	Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties	Primarily formatting changes
711	Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes	All	925	Filings With the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission Under the Securities Act of 1933	Primarily formatting changes

(continued)

Extant AU Sections Mapped to the Clarified AU-C Sections—continued

Extant AU Section		AU Section Superseded	New AU-C Section		Type of Change
722	Interim Financial Information	All	930	Interim Financial Information	Primarily formatting changes
801	Compliance Audits	All	935	Compliance Audits	Primarily formatting changes
901	Public Warehouses—Controls and Auditing Procedures for Goods Held	All	501	Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items [3]	Primarily clarifying changes
Legend:					
[n] Bracketed number indicates a clarity standard that supersedes more than one extant AU section.					

The AICPA has developed an Audit Risk Alert to assist auditors and members in practice prepare for the transition to the clarified standards. It has been organized to give you the background information on the development of the clarified standards and to identify the new requirements and changes from the extant standards. Check out the Audit Risk Alert *Understanding the Clarified Auditing Standards* (product no. ARACLA12P, ARACLA12E, and ARACLA12O), which is available in the AICPA store on www.cpa2biz.com.

Appendix C

Illustrations of Segmenting Criteria

Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 605-35 provides revenue recognition guidance for contractors. Information relating to the segmenting of contracts for revenue recognition purposes and the criteria for segmenting are discussed in paragraphs 10–13 of FASB ASC 605-35-25. The following examples illustrate the application of those criteria in specific circumstances:

1. A design or build contractor, or both, negotiates a contract that provides for design engineering, procurement, and construction of a nuclear power plant. The contract specifies the separate phases of the work, and, for this type of project, the phases are frequently contracted separately. Moreover, the contractor has a significant history of providing similar services to other customers contracting for the phases separately. Such a history shows a relatively stable pricing policy. The contractor's normal fee on design engineering is 15 percent; on procurement, 2 percent; and on construction, 5 percent. These rates are commensurate with the different levels of risk attributable to the separate phases, and the aggregate of the values of the separate phases produced from such a fee structure is approximately equal to the overall contract price. The similarity of services and prices in the contract segments to services and the prices of such services to other customers contracted separately is documented and verifiable. The contract does not meet the first set of criteria in FASB ASC 605-35-25-12 but does meet the second set of criteria in FASB ASC 605-35-25-13 and, therefore, qualifies for segmenting. However, if any one of the required conditions in FASB ASC 605-35-25-13 is not met, segmenting would not be appropriate. For example, the contractor's significant history might have been with fossil fueled instead of nuclear powered generating plants. Or the different gross profit rates, even though supported by the contractor's history, might not be justified by different levels of risk or by disparities in the relationship of supply and demand for the segment services. Such circumstances could arise from an erratic or unusual labor market for a particular project.
2. A contract provides for construction of an apartment building, swimming pool, and other amenities. The contractor has a significant history of providing similar services to other customers who have contracted for such services separately. His or her significant history is one of a relatively stable pricing policy. He or she wishes to assign values to the segments on the basis of his or her normal historical prices and terms to such customers. On that basis, the aggregate of the segment values will approximate the total contract price. However, although this contractor performs the phases separately, the practice is unusual and is not done by other contractors in the industry. Also, the different gross profit rates that the contractor would ascribe to the segments based on his or her history cannot practicably be related to economic risk or supply and demand disparities. Because the facts do not meet the criteria

in paragraphs 12–13 of FASB ASC 605-35-25, the contract should not be segmented.

3. A contractor is a road builder, performing alternately under contracts in which much of the work is subcontracted and under contracts in which he or she performs all the work himself or herself. Under contracts involving subcontractors, the contractor generally realizes a lower profit margin due to the spread of risk to subcontractors. He or she, therefore, wishes to segment his or her contract revenues between the subcontracted portions of the work and the portions that he or she performs himself or herself, assigning a greater amount of revenue to the latter and a lesser amount to the former. His or her history with both types of work is significant and is supported by a relatively stable pricing policy. However, it is not customary for the portions of the work to which the greater amounts of revenue are to be ascribed to be contracted separately from the other portions. The contract should not be segmented because the criteria in neither FASB ASC 605-35-25-12 nor FASB ASC 605-35-25-13 are met.
 4. An electrical and mechanical subcontractor is awarded both the electrical and mechanical work based on separate, independent bids. Separate subcontracts are signed and become the profit centers for profit recognition purposes. Had the work been negotiated as a package, the contract might have been segmented only if the criteria in either FASB ASC 605-35-25-12 or FASB ASC 605-35-25-13 had been met.
 5. A contractor is awarded a contract to construct three virtually identical generating power plants in different locations. His or her costs will vary because of differences in site work, transportation, labor conditions, and other factors at the three locations. He or she wishes to segment contract revenues in response to cost differences. He or she has a significant history of constructing generating plants under separate contracts under a relatively stable pricing policy. However, segmenting contract revenues on this basis would not be commensurate with the different levels of risk or the supply or demand disparities of the three projects. The contract should not be segmented in these circumstances.
-

Appendix D

Computing Income Earned Under the Percentage-of-Completion Method

Illustration of the Alternative A Procedure

The following hypothetical data are used to illustrate the computation of income earned under the alternative A procedure described in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 605-35-25-83*. A contracting company has a lump-sum contract for \$9 million to build a bridge at a total estimated cost of \$8 million. The construction period covers 3 years. Financial data during the construction period are as follows.

	<u>Year 1</u>	<u>Year 2</u>	<u>Year 3</u>
	<i>(in thousands of dollars)</i>		
Total estimated revenue	<u>\$9,000</u>	<u>\$9,100</u>	<u>\$9,200</u>
Cost recognized	<u>\$2,050</u>	<u>\$6,100</u>	<u>\$8,200</u>
Estimated cost to complete	<u>6,000</u>	<u>2,000</u>	<u>—</u>
Total estimated cost	<u>\$8,050</u>	<u>\$8,100</u>	<u>\$8,200</u>
Estimated gross profit	<u>\$950</u>	<u>\$1,000</u>	<u>\$1,000</u>
Billings to date	<u>\$1,800</u>	<u>\$5,500</u>	<u>\$9,200</u>
Collections to date	<u>\$1,500</u>	<u>\$5,000</u>	<u>\$9,200</u>
Measure of progress	<u>25%</u>	<u>75%</u>	<u>100%</u>

The amount of revenue, costs, and income recognized in the three periods would be as follows.

	<u>To Date</u>	<u>Recognized Prior Year(s)</u>	<u>Current Year</u>
Year 1			
Earned revenue			
(\$9,000 × .25)	\$2,250		\$2,250
Cost of earned revenue	<u>2,050</u>		<u>2,050</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$200</u>		<u>\$200</u>
Gross profit rate	<u>8.8%</u>		<u>8.8%</u>

Construction Contractors

	<u>To Date</u>	<u>Recognized Prior Year(s)</u>	<u>Current Year</u>
Year 2			
Earned revenue			
(\$9,100 × .75)	\$6,825	\$2,250	\$4,575
Cost of earned revenue	<u>6,100</u>	<u>2,050</u>	<u>4,050</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$725</u>	<u>\$200</u>	<u>\$525</u>
Gross profit rate	<u>10.6%</u>	<u>8.8%</u>	<u>11.5%</u>
Year 3			
Earned revenue	\$9,200	\$6,825	\$2,375
Cost of earned revenue	<u>8,200</u>	<u>6,100</u>	<u>2,100</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$1,000</u>	<u>\$725</u>	<u>\$275</u>
Gross profit rate	<u>10.9%</u>	<u>10.6%</u>	<u>11.6%</u>

Comparison of Alternative A and Alternative B

The following hypothetical data are used to compare the income statement and balance sheet effects of alternative A described in FASB ASC 605-35-25-83 and alternative B described in FASB ASC 605-35-25-84.

<i>Estimated Contract</i>		
	<u>To Date</u>	<u>Current</u>
Revenues		\$1,000,000
Cost		<u>900,000</u>
Gross profit		<u>\$100,000</u>
% of gross profit		<u>10%</u>
<u>Annual Information</u>	<u>To Date</u>	<u>Current</u>
Year 1		
Billings	\$200,000	\$200,000
Cost incurred	300,000	300,000
% complete	25%	
Year 2		
Billings	\$750,000	\$550,000
Cost incurred	650,000	350,000
% complete	75%	
Year 3		
Billings	\$1,000,000	\$250,000
Cost incurred	900,000	250,000
% complete	100%	

The results of measuring earned revenues, cost of earned revenues, and gross profit by alternative A and alternative B would be as follows.

	<u>Alternative A</u>	<u>Alternative B</u>
Income Statement		
Year 1		
Earned revenue	\$250,000	\$325,000
Cost of earned revenue	225,000	300,000
Gross profit	<u>\$25,000</u>	<u>\$25,000</u>
% of gross profit	<u>10%</u>	<u>7.7%</u>
Year 2		
Earned revenue	\$500,000	\$400,000
Cost of earned revenue	450,000	350,000
Gross profit	<u>\$50,000</u>	<u>\$50,000</u>
% of gross profit	<u>10%</u>	<u>12.5%</u>
Year 3		
Earned revenue	\$250,000	\$275,000
Cost of earned revenue	225,000	250,000
Gross profit	<u>\$25,000</u>	<u>\$25,000</u>
% of gross profit	<u>10%</u>	<u>9.1%</u>

Balance Sheet Debit (Credit)

Alternative A

Year 1

Cost of uncompleted contracts and estimated profit in excess of billings	\$50,000	
Unbilled revenues		\$50,000

Alternative B

Year 1

Cost of uncompleted contracts and estimated profit in excess of billings	\$125,000	
Unbilled revenues		\$125,000

Year 2

Excess of billings over costs incurred and estimated earnings on uncompleted contracts	\$(25,000)	
Excess billings		\$(25,000)

Discussion of the Results Under the Two Methods

Under alternative A, earned revenue, cost of earned revenue, and gross profit are measured by the extent of progress toward completion. Under alternative B, only the amount of gross profit is measured by the extent of progress toward completion. Therefore, the same amount of gross profit is reported under either method. However, under alternative B, earned revenue is the amount of costs incurred during the period plus the amount of gross profit recognized based on the extent of progress toward completion, and the cost of earned revenue is the amount of costs incurred during the period. For that reason, earned revenue and cost of earned revenue under alternative B are not comparable to the measurement of extent of progress toward completion unless the extent of progress is measured by the cost-to-cost method.

Appendix E

Examples of Computation of Income Earned

<i>Exhibit Description</i>	<i>Exhibit Number</i>
Cost-to-Cost Method	E-1
Labor-Hours Method	E-2
Construction Management	E-3
Units of Production	E-4
Zero Profit	E-5
Loss Contract	E-6
Combining	E-7
Segmenting	E-8

For convenience and consistency, all computations are based on the alternative A procedure described in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 605-35-25-83.

Exhibit E-1 — Cost-to-Cost Method

A general contractor specializes in the construction of commercial and industrial buildings. The contractor is experienced in bidding long-term construction projects of this type, with the typical project lasting 15–24 months. The contractor uses the percentage-of-completion method of revenue recognition because, given the characteristics of the contractor's business and contracts, it is the most appropriate method. That is, the contracts entered into by the contractor normally specify clearly the rights of the parties regarding services to be provided and consideration, and the contractor has demonstrated the ability to provide dependable estimates of contract revenue, contract costs, and gross profit. Progress toward completion is measured on the basis of incurred costs to estimated total costs because, in the opinion of management, this basis of measurement is most appropriate in the circumstances.

The entity began work on a lump-sum contract at the beginning of year 1. As bid, the statistics were as follows:

Lump-sum price		\$1,500,000
Estimated costs		
Labor	\$300,000	
Materials and subcontractors	800,000	
Indirect costs	100,000	1,200,000
Estimated gross profit		<u>\$300,000</u>

After construction began, a change order was negotiated, increasing the lump-sum price by \$150,000 at an estimated additional contract cost of \$120,000 (labor: \$10,000, materials: \$110,000).

At the end of the first year, the following was the status of the contract:

Billings to date		\$800,000
Costs incurred to date		
Labor	\$120,000	
Materials and subcontractors	478,000	
Indirect costs	<u>50,000</u>	<u>648,000</u>
Latest forecast total cost		<u><u>1,320,000</u></u>

Costs incurred to date include \$40,000 for standard electrical and mechanical materials stored on the job site and \$80,000 for steel in the fabricator's plant (including steel cost of \$60,000 and labor cost of \$20,000 based on 1,000 hours at \$20 per hour). The steel is 100 percent complete and has been fabricated specifically to meet the unique requirements of this job.

Computations for the percentage-of-completion method follow:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Measure of progress} &= \frac{\text{Costs incurred to date}}{\text{Estimated total cost}} \\
 &= \frac{\$648,000 - \$40,000}{\$1,320,000} \\
 &= 46\% \text{ complete} \\
 \text{Earned revenue} &= 46\% \times (\$1,500,000 + \$150,000) \\
 &= \$759,000 \\
 \text{Cost of earned revenue} &= 46\% \times (\$1,200,000 + \$120,000) \\
 &= \$608,000^1
 \end{aligned}$$

The costs of the electrical and mechanical materials at the job site are excluded from "costs incurred to date" because the materials consist of stock items and have not yet become an integral part of the project; on the other hand, the \$80,000 of steel is included in "costs incurred to date" because the steel is now specifically fabricated to meet the specifications of this project and, therefore, may be considered a part of the project at this point.

Therefore, an entry is required to reclassify the \$40,000 cost of materials not installed from accumulated cost of contracts in progress to materials inventory. Also, an entry must be made to reflect earned revenue and related costs in the income and expense accounts. On the assumption that all costs related to the contract have been charged to the balance sheet account (the costs of contracts in progress), and all billings have been credited to the balance sheet account (progress billings), the following entry would be made:

Balance Sheet	<u>DR</u>	<u>CR</u>
Progress billings	\$800,000	
Costs of contracts in progress		\$608,000
Billings in excess of costs and estimated earnings on uncompleted contracts		\$41,000

¹ This may also be calculated as indirect costs incurred to date of \$648,000 minus the stored standard electrical and mechanical materials stored on the job of \$40,000.

Income Statement	<u>DR</u>	<u>CR</u>
Earned contract revenue		\$759,000
Costs of earned contract revenue	\$608,000	

Assuming the contract is completed in the next year with no change in price or cost, the results would appear in the income statement as follows:

	<i>Year</i>		
	<u>1</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>Total</u>
Progress measurement at end of year	46%	100%	
Contract operations			
Earned revenue	\$759,000	\$891,000	\$1,650,000
Costs			
Labor	\$120,000	\$190,000	\$310,000
Materials and subcontractors	438,000	472,000	910,000
Indirect costs	50,000	50,000	100,000
	<u>\$608,000</u>	<u>\$712,000</u>	<u>\$1,320,000</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$151,000</u>	<u>\$179,000</u>	<u>\$330,000</u>
Gross profit rate	<u>20%</u>	<u>20%</u>	<u>20%</u>

Exhibit E-2—Labor-Hours Method

A general contractor specializes in the construction of industrial plants for manufacturing businesses. The construction period of the typical manufacturing facility ranges from 13 to 24 months. Because of the nature of the construction contracts and the practices followed by the contractor, the contractor has determined that the percentage-of-completion method of revenue recognition is appropriate and that the labor-hours method is the best measure of progress toward completion.

Estimated labor hours must include the labor hours of the entity as well as the labor hours of its subcontractors that produce goods specifically for the project. For example, labor hours incurred by a steel entity in the production of standard items for the project are not included in total labor hours; however, labor hours incurred by a steel entity in fabricating standard items specifically for the project are included in total hours. If management is unable to obtain accurate estimates of its own or all appropriate subcontractors' labor hours at the beginning of the project and as work progresses, the labor-hours method would not be appropriate.

The assumptions and data used in this illustration are identical to those used in exhibit E-1 except that the contractor uses the labor-hours method instead of the cost-to-cost method.

At the end of the first year, the entity had incurred 6,000 labor hours, the steel fabricator 1,000 labor hours, and all other subcontractors 3,080 labor hours. Estimated total labor hours for the project are 21,000.

Computations under the percentage-of-completion method follow:

Measure of progress	=	$\frac{\text{Labor hours to date (10,080)}}{\text{Estimated total labor hours (21,000)}}$
Percentage complete	=	48%
Earned revenue	=	$48\% \times (\$1,500,000 + \$150,000)$
	=	\$792,000
Cost of earned revenue	=	$48\% \times (\$1,200,000 + \$120,000)$
	=	\$633,600

An entry is required to transfer the \$40,000 cost of materials that have not entered into the revenue recognition process from accumulated cost of contracts in progress to materials inventory.

Materials inventory	\$40,000	
Cost of contracts in progress		\$40,000

After the adjustment, the balance in the cost-of-contracts-in-progress account is \$608,000 (\$648,000 – \$40,000); however, because the cost of earned revenue is \$633,600, an additional adjustment of \$25,600 (\$633,600 – \$608,000 = \$25,600) is required to properly state the cost associated with the revenue earned for the period.

Cost of contract in progress	\$25,600	
Liability for contract work to be performed		\$25,600

Assuming that the contract is completed in the next fiscal year with no change in price or cost, the results would appear in the income statement.

	<i>Year</i>		
	<u>1</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>Total</u>
Contract operations			
Earned revenue	\$792,000	\$858,000	\$1,650,000
Cost of revenue earned	633,600	686,400	1,320,000
Gross profit	<u>\$158,400</u>	<u>\$171,600</u>	<u>\$330,000</u>

Exhibit E-3—Construction Management

A construction entity enters into a construction management contract for the construction of a paper mill. The contract is a cost-plus contract in which the contractor acts solely in the capacity of an agent and has no risks associated with the costs managed. That is, the contractor is not responsible for the nature, type, characteristics, or specifications of materials or for the ultimate acceptance of the project; moreover, the contractor's fee was based on the lack of risk inherent in the negotiated contract.

Consistent with the "risk-free" nature of the management contract, the entity measures job progress based on the labor hours for which it has direct control. That is, only those labor hours incurred as a result of the actual management

effort should be used to measure job progress. Thus, the hours incurred by the various contractors and subcontractors on the project do not enter into the measure of job progress from the construction manager's standpoint.

The contractor may accrue his or her fees as they become billable, assuming they are at a constant percentage of costs incurred. The following example, which assumes that the contractor employs the labor-hours method, gives the same results, because labor hours are the basis for fee reimbursement. Because he or she has no risks associated with subcontractors' work, their labor hours are excluded from the computation.

Assume the following:

Total estimated construction management hours	10,000	
Cost per hour (includes indirect costs)	<u>\$20</u>	
Total estimated costs	<u>\$200,000</u>	
Fee (15%)	<u>30,000</u>	
Total estimated revenue	<u><u>\$230,000</u></u>	
At the end of the first year:		
Hours used	<u>4,000</u>	hrs.
Estimated total hours	<u><u>10,000</u></u>	hrs.
Measure of progress	<u><u>40%</u></u>	

If the contract is completed in the second year without any changes in contract revenues and costs, the results would appear in the income statement as follows.

	<u>First Year</u>	<u>Second Year</u>	<u>Total</u>
Contract revenues (hours used at \$20 × 115%)	\$92,000	\$138,000	\$230,000
Contract costs (includes indirect costs)	<u>80,000</u>	<u>120,000</u>	<u>200,000</u>
Gross profit (15%)	<u><u>\$12,000</u></u>	<u><u>\$18,000</u></u>	<u><u>\$30,000</u></u>

Exhibit E-4—Units of Production

A road builder performs work primarily as a subcontractor on large highway projects. On those projects, the entity's work consists only of laying concrete. All site preparation and other work is performed by the general contractor or by other subcontractors to the general contractor. The cost elements include labor and related costs, cost of expansion and contraction joints, the cost of reinforcing steel, the cost of cement and other materials, and equipment costs. The entity reports its income on the percentage-of-completion basis and measures progress toward completion on the basis of units of work completed because all costs are incurred essentially equally as square yards of concrete are laid (with the exception of mobilization and demobilization costs, which are incurred at the beginning and end of the job).

A contract sets forth 10 separate pay items, which, when totaled and converted to price per square yard of concrete, equal \$12 per square yard for concrete that

is to 9 inches thick. Estimated square yards of concrete to be laid approximate 450,000, and estimated total cost is \$5,000,000. Costs incurred through the end of the first year on the contract, excluding mobilization costs, total \$2,200,000, which includes \$100,000 of materials not used. Mobilization costs incurred total \$70,000, and projected demobilization costs total \$30,000. Physical output as reported by the state engineer and confirmed by the entity engineer totals 200,000 square yards at the end of the first year.

Input information (square yards of concrete poured) should not be used for determination of revenue because the entity must lay the concrete in excess of 9 inches thick to meet state requirements that concrete not be less than 9 inches thick based on test borings; thus, input in terms of cubic yards poured would exceed billable output. Accordingly, the output measure (square yards laid) is the appropriate measure of progress.

The entity's earned revenue and costs of earned revenue for the first year are computed on the following page.

Measure of progress	=	$\frac{\text{Square yards laid}}{\text{Total square yards to be laid}}$
	=	$\frac{200,000}{450,000}$
Percentage complete	=	44%
Earned revenue	=	44% × \$5,400,000
	=	\$2,376,000
Cost of earned revenue	=	44% × \$5,000,000
	=	\$2,200,000

Additional Considerations

If such a road builder served as the prime contractor and performed all site preparation, sewer, and other related work, no single unit would appropriately measure progress toward completion. Some other method, such as labor hours or cost to cost, would be preferable.

If the cost-to-cost method is used, it is necessary to include the mobilization costs and to exclude the cost of the materials not used from the cost incurred in the measure of progress calculation. The computation is as follows:

Measure of progress	=	$\frac{\text{Cost incurred to date}}{\text{Estimated total cost}}$
	=	$\frac{\$2,200,000 + \$70,000 - \$100,000}{\$5,000,000}$
Percentage complete	=	43%

Exhibit E-5—Zero Profit

A contractor has been awarded a fixed-price contract with escalation clauses for the construction of a housing project in Saudi Arabia. The contractor has no construction experience in that part of the world, and various uncertainties involving mobilization, procurement costs, and labor costs make it difficult to determine the amount of total contract revenue and costs. However, although the contractor is unable to estimate total contract costs as either a single

amount or range of amounts, the terms of the contract provide protection for the contractor from incurring a loss under any reasonable circumstances. The contract price is \$460,000,000.

For purposes of this illustration, it is assumed that there are no changes in estimates of contract revenues for the duration of the contract. The contractor is consistently using an acceptable measure of progress, and at the end of the first year relating to this contract, the project is considered to be 12 percent complete. Costs incurred to date are \$67,200,000. Since inception, there has been no improvement in the contractor's ability to estimate total costs in terms of a single amount or range of amounts.

Following is the status of the project for accounting purposes at the end of the first year:

Earned revenue	
(12% of \$460,000,000)	\$55,200,000
Cost of earned revenue	<u>55,200,000</u>
Gross profit	<u>—</u>
Deferred costs at end of year	<u>\$12,000,000</u>

That portion of the cost incurred to date (\$67,200,000) in excess of the cost of earned revenue (\$55,200,000) is reported as a deferred cost in the balance sheet.

At the end of the second year, the contractor can estimate that the total contract costs will be between \$410,000,000 and \$440,000,000. The measure of work completed indicated that the project is 31 percent complete at that date. Costs incurred to date are \$142,400,000.

Table 1 in this appendix gives the status of the project for accounting purposes at the end of the second year. The maximum estimated costs were used in accounting for the contract. The cumulative amount of earned revenue is \$142,600,000 (31 percent of \$460,000,000), and the cost of earned revenue is \$136,400,000 (31 percent of \$440,000,000). That portion of the cost incurred to date in excess of the cost of earned revenue is reported as a deferred cost in the balance sheet.

The change from the zero profit method is a change in estimate, and the effect of the change on the second year should be disclosed. In this illustration, the effect of the change is \$1,200,000, computed as follows:

At the end of the first year, using revised estimates, the effects of change are as follows:

Earned revenue, 12% of \$460,000,000	\$55,200,000
Cost of earned revenue, 12% of \$440,000,000	<u>52,800,000</u>
Gross profit	\$2,400,000
Gross profit recognized to date	<u>—</u>
Effect of change in estimate, before tax effect	\$2,400,000
Tax effect, at assumed 50% rate	<u>1,200,000</u>
Effect of change in estimate, after tax effect	<u>\$1,200,000</u>

Table 2 in this appendix is a summary of the contract for the first and second years and the remaining years to completion. For this purpose, it is

assumed there are no subsequent changes in estimates of contract costs from the \$440,000,000 maximum estimate at the end of the second year.

Table 1

	<u>First Year</u>	<u>Second Year</u>	<u>Total</u>
Earned revenue	\$55,200,000	\$87,400,000	\$142,600,000
Cost of earned revenue	<u>55,200,000</u>	<u>81,200,000</u>	<u>136,400,000</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$—</u>	<u>\$6,200,000</u>	<u>\$6,200,000</u>
Deferred costs	\$12,000,000	\$6,000,000	

Table 2

	<u>First Year</u>	<u>Second Year</u>	<u>Remaining Years to Completion</u>	<u>Total</u>
Earned revenue	\$55,200,000	\$87,400,000	\$317,400,000	\$460,000,000
Cost of earned revenue	<u>\$55,200,000</u>	<u>\$81,200,000</u>	<u>\$303,600,000</u>	<u>\$440,000,000</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$—</u>	<u>\$6,200,000</u>	<u>\$13,800,000</u>	<u>\$20,000,000</u>
Deferred costs at end of year	<u>\$12,000,000</u>	<u>\$6,000,000</u>	<u>\$—</u>	<u>\$—</u>

Exhibit E-6—Loss Contract

A contractor specializes in underground construction work. As a rule, the projects on which the contractor works take from two to three years to complete. The contractor uses the percentage-of-completion method of revenue recognition because, given the contractor's ability to estimate contract costs, revenue, and progress, it is the most appropriate method. Furthermore, the contractor's standard contract normally includes provisions that specify the enforceable rights regarding the work to be performed, consideration, and terms of settlement. Taken in combination, these factors provide a sound basis for the use of percentage-of-completion.

In year 1, the contractor obtained a contract for \$1,620,000 with an estimated total cost on the project of \$1,377,000 leaving an estimated gross profit of \$243,000. At December 31, year 1, \$500,000 had been billed, costs of \$510,000 had been incurred, and estimated costs to complete were projected to be \$867,000, resulting in the projected profit of \$243,000. The cost to complete was determined by the job superintendent and was checked against engineering estimates of units of work completed and units of work to be completed. During year 2, the entity encountered heavy rains, worse than anticipated soil conditions, and field supervision problems. As a result of this, a loss of \$60,000 was projected at the completion of the project. At December 31, year 2, billings of \$1,480,000 had been made, costs of \$1,545,400 had been incurred, and costs to complete were estimated at \$134,400. Work under the contract is completed in year 3, and there are no further changes in contract revenues and costs. As projected in year 2, a loss of \$60,000 was incurred on the contract upon completion in year 3.

Using the foregoing information, the percentage of completion is computed in the following table for both years, using the cost-to-cost method to measure progress. The cost-to-cost method is used in this situation because management believes it provides the most accurate measure of job progress under the current contract conditions.

Year 1

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Measure of progress} &= \frac{\text{costs incurred to date}}{\text{total estimated costs}} \\ &= \frac{\$510,000}{\$1,377,000} \\ &= 37\% \end{aligned}$$

Year 2

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Measure of progress} &= \frac{\$1,545,600}{\$1,680,000} \\ &= 92\% \end{aligned}$$

Year 3

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Measure of progress} &= \frac{\$1,680,000}{\$1,680,000} \\ &= 100\% \end{aligned}$$

The computation of earned revenue, job costs, and gross profit for income statement purposes is shown in the following tables:

	<u>Current Year</u>	<u>Total-to- Date</u>
Year 1 (37% completed)		
Earned revenue		
(\$1,620,000 × 37%)	\$599,400	\$599,400
Actual cost of earned revenue	<u>510,000</u>	<u>510,000</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$89,400</u>	<u>\$89,400</u>
Gross profit rate	<u>14.9%</u>	<u>14.9%</u>
Year 2 (92% completed)		
Earned revenue		
(\$1,620,000 × 92%) – 599,400	\$891,000	(\$1,620,000 × 92%) \$1,490,400
Cost of earned revenue (See note)	<u>1,040,400</u>	<u>1,550,400</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$(149,400)</u>	<u>\$(60,000)</u>
Gross profit rate	<u>(16.8%)</u>	<u>(4.0%)</u>
Year 3 (100% completed)		
Earned revenue		
(\$1,620,000 × 100%) – 1,490,400	\$129,600	(\$1,620,000 × 100%) \$1,620,000
Cost of earned revenue		
(\$1,620,000 × 100%) – 1,490,400	<u>129,600</u>	(\$1,620,000 × 100%) + 60,000 <u>1,680,000</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$0</u>	<u>\$(60,000)</u>
Gross profit rate	<u>—</u>	<u>(3.7%)</u>

Note: The cost of earned revenue at the end of year 2, the year in which the estimated loss became known, is computed as follows:

Estimated total contract cost excluding estimated loss	\$1,620,000
Measure of progress	<u>× 92%</u>
Actual cost of earned revenue before loss provision	\$1,490,400
Add 100% of estimated total loss	<u>\$60,000</u>
Cost of earned revenue at the end of year 2	<u>\$1,550,400</u>
Less amount previously recognized	\$510,000
Cost of earned revenue, year 2	\$1,040,400

In accordance with paragraphs 45–50 of FASB ASC 605-35-25, a provision for the entire anticipated contract should be made in the period in which the loss becomes evident, which is year 2 in this example.²

FASB ASC 605-35-45-1 establishes that, unless the provision for loss is material in amount or unusual or infrequent in nature, it should be included in contract cost and not shown separately in the income statement; however, if the loss provision is material, it should be presented separately as a component of the cost included in the computation of gross profit, either on the face of the income statement or in the notes to the financial statements.

Exhibit E-7—Combining

A contractor who specializes in the construction of multifamily residential and commercial properties was approached by a prospective customer late in the fall to discuss the construction of a residential housing and shopping center project. They arrived at a general conceptual agreement about the nature of the work and appropriate timing and magnitude of cost estimates for the project. After the meeting, the project developer obtained the final members of the investment groups for the properties, and drawings and building specifications were then completed. The contractor was awarded the job, but under separate contracts for the apartment complex portion of the project and the shopping center portion. The developer explained that he or she needed separate contracts due to financing requirements and in order to maximize tax benefits for the investors.

When presented the contracts, the contractor stated that the breakdown of price between the two sections of the project was not in agreement with his or her pricing structure. However, the contractor noted that the combined contract

² As an alternative to including the entirety of the anticipated loss in the normal calculation of the cost of earned revenues to date at the end of year 2, the contractor may record separately the balance of the total anticipated loss. Under this scenario, the cost of earned revenue in year 2 would be calculated normally by multiplying the total estimated contract cost by the percentage of completion on the contract: $(\$1,680,000) \times 92\% = \$1,545,600$. The journal entry to record the remainder of the anticipated loss would be calculated as the estimated total loss multiplied by the remaining percent complete on the contract, as follows:

	<u>DR</u>	<u>CR</u>
Income Statement	\$4,800	
Provision for loss on uncompleted contract ($\$60,000 \times 8\%$)		
Balance Sheet		\$4,800
Accrued loss on uncompleted contract		

prices resulted in a gross profit that was satisfactory to him or her. Because of this and because the work on the separate phases would be performed in a relatively common time frame, he or she signed the contracts as they were prepared. Before signing the contracts, though, the contractor told the developer that it would not be practical to separate costs between the two projects because the same work crew and same machinery would be used jointly on the two phases. The contractor concluded that it would be appropriate to account for the two projects on a combined basis and report his or her financial results accordingly.

Estimated total contract revenues and costs for the two contracts are as follows:

	<i>Apartment Project</i>	<i>Shopping Center</i>	<i>Total</i>
Estimated contract revenue	\$5,000,000	\$2,000,000	\$7,000,000
Estimated contract costs	<u>4,000,000</u>	<u>1,800,000</u>	<u>5,800,000</u>
Estimated gross profit	<u>\$1,000,000</u>	<u>\$200,000</u>	<u>\$1,200,000</u>
Gross profit rate	<u>20.00%</u>	<u>10.00%</u>	<u>17.14%</u>

For purposes of this illustration, it is assumed that there are no changes in estimates of contract revenues or costs for the duration of the contracts and that the contractor uses the labor-hours method in determining percentage of completion. At the end of the first year relating to the two contracts, the following is their status:

	<i>Apartment Project</i>	<i>Shopping Center</i>	<i>Total</i>
Labor hours incurred to date	<u>45,000</u>	<u>15,000</u>	<u>60,000</u>
Estimated total contract labor hours	<u>80,000</u>	<u>20,000</u>	<u>100,000</u>
Measure of progress	<u>56.25%</u>	<u>75.00%</u>	<u>60.00%</u>
Actual contract costs	<u>\$2,250,000</u>	<u>\$1,350,000</u>	<u>\$3,480,000</u>

Based on the foregoing, the recognized revenue, cost, and gross profit for the combined contract for the first fiscal year and for the second fiscal year of the contract is as follows:

	<i>First Year</i>	<i>Second Year</i>	<i>Total</i>
Year 1 (60% completed)			
Earned revenue			
(60% × \$7,000,000)	\$4,200,000		\$4,200,000
Cost of earned revenue	<u>3,480,000</u>		<u>3,480,000</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$720,000</u>		<u>\$720,000</u>
Gross profit rate	<u>17.14%</u>		<u>17.14%</u>
Year 2 (100% complete)			
Earned Revenue			
(\$7,000,000 × 100%)	\$4,200,000	\$2,800,000	\$7,000,000
Cost of earned revenue	<u>3,480,000</u>	<u>2,320,000</u>	<u>5,800,000</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$720,000</u>	<u>\$480,000</u>	<u>\$1,200,000</u>
Gross profit rate	<u>17.14%</u>	<u>17.14%</u>	<u>17.14%</u>

If the contracts had not been combined, the following differences would have occurred in the revenue, costs, and gross profit reported at the end of year 1.

	<u>Earned Revenue</u>	<u>Cost of Earned Revenue</u>	<u>Gross Profit</u>
Apartment project (56.25% complete)	\$2,812,500	\$2,250,000	\$562,500
Shopping center (75% complete)	<u>1,500,000</u>	<u>1,350,000</u>	<u>150,000</u>
Total	\$4,312,500	\$3,600,000	\$712,500
Amounts reported under combining	<u>\$4,200,000</u>	<u>\$3,480,000</u>	<u>\$720,000</u>
Difference in amounts at end of first year if contracts had not been combined	<u>\$112,500</u>	<u>\$120,000</u>	<u>\$7,500</u>

Exhibit E-8—Segmenting

An entity specializes in the engineering, procurement of materials, and construction of chemical processing plants. The entity has been awarded one such contract, which is priced at cost, plus 10 percent allowances for indirect costs on engineering and procurement phases and a fixed fee of \$225,000. The scope of the contract calls for those separable phases of the work. Contract provisions state that the fixed fee was agreed to on the basis of the following rates:

	<u>Base Cost</u>	<u>Fee Rate</u>	<u>Fee</u>
Engineering	\$176,000	25.00%	\$44,000
Procurement	44,000	2.00%	880
Construction	<u>4,800,000</u>	3.75%	<u>180,120</u>
	<u>\$5,020,000</u>		<u>\$225,000</u>

Estimated total contract revenue is computed as follows:

Engineering	
8000 hours at \$20	\$160,000
Allowance for indirect costs	16,000
Procurement	
2000 hours at \$20	40,000
Allowance for indirect costs	4,000
Construction, including labor, materials, subcontract, and indirect costs	<u>4,800,000</u>
	\$5,020,000
Fixed fee	<u>225,000</u>
	<u>\$5,245,000</u>

The contractor meets the criteria for segmenting. In addition to the contract specifying the separate phases of the work, such phases are frequently contracted separately, and the contractor has a significant history of providing the engineering services to other customers separately. Such a history shows

a relatively stable pricing policy. The similarity of services and prices on the contract segments to services and the prices of such services to other customers contracted separately are documented and verifiable. In the past, the contractor's normal fees have been 15 percent on engineering, 2 percent on procurement, and 5 percent on construction. Those rates are commensurate with the different levels of risk attributable to the separate phases of the work. A comparison of the aggregate of the values of the separate phases of the contract that would have been produced from such a fee structure to the contractual fee arrangement is as follows:

	<i>Contract Revenue</i>	<i>Fee</i>
Engineering		
Direct costs	\$160,000	
Allowance for indirect costs	16,000	
	\$176,000	
Normal fee, at 15%	26,400	\$202,400
Procurement		
Direct costs	\$40,000	
Allowance for indirect costs	4,000	
	\$44,000	
Normal fee, at 2%	880	44,880
Construction (total costs)	\$4,800,000	
Normal fee, at 5%	240,000	5,040,000
		\$240,000
		\$5,287,280
Estimated total contract revenue and fee	5,245,000	225,000
Excess of the sum of the prices of the separate elements over estimated total contract revenues	\$42,280	\$42,280

This excess is attributable to cost savings incident to performance as a single project. The contractor segments revenues into the 3 profit centers in the manner set forth in the following table. Note that the contract-provision stipulating a 25 percent profit margin for engineering is not used because that margin is not supported by historical experience.

	<i>Engineering</i>	<i>Procurement</i>	<i>Construction</i>	<i>Total</i>
Normal historical fee as stated previously	\$26,400	\$880	\$240,000	\$267,280
Less reduction to reflect allocation of the excess amount in proportion to the preceding prices	(4,176)	(139)	(37,965)	(42,280)
Adjusted fee	\$22,224	\$741	\$202,035	\$225,000
Estimated total cost	176,000	44,000	4,800,000	5,020,000
Estimated total contract revenue, as adjusted	\$198,224	\$44,741	\$5,002,035	\$5,245,000

For purposes of this illustration, it is assumed that there are no changes in estimates of contract revenues, costs, and labor hours for the duration of the contract. The contractor uses the labor-hours method in determining measure of progress. Construction hours include the hours of the construction manager, the general contractor, and all subcontractors. At the end of the first year, the following is the contract status:

<u>Profit Center</u>	<u>Labor Hours Incurred to Date</u>	<u>Estimated Total Labor Hours</u>	<u>Measure of Progress</u>
Engineering	40,000	44,000	90.9%
Procurement	5,500	11,000	50.0%
Construction	75,000	600,000	12.5%
	<u>120,500</u>	<u>655,000</u>	18.4%

Recognized revenues, costs, and gross profit for the first fiscal period are as follows:

<u>Profit Center</u>	<u>Recognized Revenues</u>	<u>Cost Incurred</u>	<u>Gross Profit</u>
Engineering			
90.9% of estimated total revenues	\$180,186		
Total costs		\$159,984	\$20,202
Procurement			
50.0% of estimated total revenues	\$22,370		
Total costs		\$22,000	\$370
Construction			
12.5% of estimated total revenues	\$625,254		
Total costs	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$600,000</u>	<u>\$25,254</u>
	<u>\$827,810</u>	<u>\$781,984</u>	<u>\$45,826</u>

Assuming the contract is completed in the second fiscal period, recognized revenues, costs, and gross profit for the two fiscal periods would be as follows:

<u>Profit Center</u>	<u>Year 1</u>	<u>Year 2</u>	<u>Total</u>
<i>Engineering</i>			
Earned revenue	\$180,186	\$18,038	\$198,224
Cost of earned revenue	<u>159,984</u>	<u>16,016</u>	<u>176,000</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$20,202</u>	<u>\$2,022</u>	<u>\$22,224</u>
<i>Procurement</i>			
Earned revenue	\$22,370	\$22,371	\$44,741
Cost of earned revenue	<u>22,000</u>	<u>22,000</u>	<u>44,000</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$370</u>	<u>\$371</u>	<u>\$741</u>
<i>Construction</i>			
Earned revenue	\$625,254	\$4,376,781	\$5,002,035
Cost of earned revenue	<u>600,000</u>	<u>4,200,000</u>	<u>4,800,000</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$25,254</u>	<u>\$176,781</u>	<u>\$202,035</u>

<u>Profit Center</u>	<u>Year 1</u>	<u>Year 2</u>	<u>Total</u>
<i>Total Contract</i>			
Earned revenue	\$827,810	\$4,417,190	\$5,245,000
Cost of earned revenue	<u>781,984</u>	<u>4,238,016</u>	<u>5,020,000</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$45,826</u>	<u>\$179,174</u>	<u>\$225,000</u>

If the contract had not been segmented, recognized revenues for year 1 would have been revised as follows:

Earned revenue (18.4% complete × \$5,245,000)	\$965,080
Costs of revenue	<u>781,984</u>
Gross profit without segmenting	\$183,096
Gross profit under segmenting	<u>45,826</u>
Reduction in gross profit under segmenting year 1	<u>\$137,270</u>

Appendix F

Example of Change in Accounting Estimate

Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 250-10-45-17 states that a change in accounting estimate should be accounted for in the period of change if the change affects that period only, or in the period of the change and future periods if the change affects both. FASB ASC 250-10-50-4 provides that the effect on income from continuing operations, net income, and any related per-share amounts of the current period should be disclosed for a change in accounting estimate that affects several future periods, such as a change in service lives of depreciable assets. Disclosure of those effects is not necessary for accounting estimates made each period in the ordinary course of accounting for items such as uncollectible accounts or inventory obsolescence; however, disclosure is required if the effect of a change in the estimate is material.

An illustrative example of the calculation and disclosure of the effects of an accounting change is as follows:

Assume, at the end of year 1:	(in thousands)
Contract revenue, at 50% complete	\$50,000
Contract costs	<u>45,000</u>
Recognized profit	<u><u>\$5,000</u></u>
Assume, at the end of year 2:	
Contract revenue (cumulative), at 90% complete	\$105,000
Contract costs (cumulative)	<u>90,000</u>
Recognized profit, cumulative	<u><u>\$15,000</u></u>
Recognized profit, year 2	<u><u>\$10,000</u></u>

At the end of year 1, contract revenues at completion were estimated to be \$100,000,000 (contract price), and contract costs at completion were estimated to be \$90,000,000. However, at the end of year 2, contract revenues at completion were estimated to be \$116,667,000, and contract costs were estimated to be \$100,000,000. A change order agreed to in the second year added \$16,667,000 to estimated total revenues and \$7,000,000 to estimated total costs. Because of inefficiencies not known at the end of year 1, it was later determined that estimated total contract costs (excluding the change order) should have been \$93,000,000 and that the percentage of completion should have been 48.4 percent rather than 50 percent at the end of year 1.

	<i>Revenues</i> (in thousands)	<i>Costs</i> (in thousands)
Change order (agreed to in second year)	\$16,667	\$7,000
Revised estimate (made after change order)		3,000
Estimates of revenues and cost at completion—year 1	<u>100,000</u>	<u>90,000</u>
Estimates of revenues and costs at completion—year 2	<u><u>\$116,667</u></u>	<u><u>\$100,000</u></u>

The calculation of the effects of the changes in estimates on year 2 net income follows. The effect of the change order is excluded from the calculation because it is clearly a year 2 event. However, in most circumstances, change orders would not have to be eliminated because their effect would be immaterial.

	<u>(in thousands)</u>
At the end of year 1, using revised estimates:	
Contract revenues (original contract)	\$100,000
Contract costs (original contract)	<u>93,000</u>
Estimated total profit	\$7,000
Percent complete (revised estimate)	<u>48.4</u>
Recognizable profit	\$3,388
Profits recognized originally	<u>5,000</u>
Effect of change in estimate, before income taxes	\$1,612
Income taxes at 50%	<u>806</u>
Effect of change in estimate	<u><u>\$806</u></u>

The following is an example of disclosure of the effect of this change:

Revisions in estimated contract profits are made in the year in which circumstances requiring the revision become known. The effect of changes in estimates of contract profits was to decrease net income of 20X2 by \$806,000 (\$.12 per share, net of income tax) from that which would have been reported had the revised estimate been used as the basis of recognition of contract profits in the preceding year.

Appendix G

Sample Financial Statements Percentage Contractors, Inc.

This appendix has been removed while it undergoes a significant update. Once complete, the contents of the appendix will be made available at no additional expense on the Financial Reporting Center. Please visit www.aicpa.org/FRC and navigate to the Construction Contractors Industry Insights area for more details.

Appendix H

Sample Financial Statements Completed Contractors, Inc.

This appendix has been removed while it undergoes a significant update. Once complete, the contents of the appendix will be made available at no additional expense on the Financial Reporting Center. Please visit www.aicpa.org/FRC and navigate to the Construction Contractors Industry Insights area for more details.

Appendix I

*The Auditor's Report*¹

The objectives of an auditor, as explained in paragraph .10 of AU-C section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), are (a) to form an opinion on the financial statements based on an evaluation of the audit evidence obtained and (b) to express clearly that opinion on the financial statements through a written report that also describes the basis for that opinion.

In order to meet the first objective of forming an opinion, the auditor should evaluate whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable reporting framework based on the evidence obtained. Paragraphs .15–.18 of AU-C section 700 describe that as part of this evaluation, the auditor should take into consideration whether sufficient appropriate evidence has been obtained, if uncorrected misstatements are material, individually or in the aggregate, and the following:

- Whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the requirements of the applicable reporting framework, considering the qualitative aspects of the entity's accounting practices, including possible bias in management's judgments
- Whether the financial statements adequately disclose the significant accounting policies, the accounting policies are consistent with the applicable reporting framework and are appropriate, management's accounting estimates are reasonable, the information in the financial statements is relevant, reliable, comparable, and understandable, the financial statements provide adequate disclosure, and the terminology used in the financial statements, including the title of each financial statement, is appropriate
- Whether the financial statements achieve fair presentation by considering the overall presentation, structure, and content of the financial statements and whether the financial statements, including related notes, represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation
- Whether the financial statements adequately refer to or describe the applicable financial reporting framework

Once the first objective, forming an opinion, is met, then the second objective, expressing the opinion, can be met. If the auditor concludes that the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, the auditor should express an unmodified opinion. The guidance related to the basic form of the auditor's report resides in paragraphs .22–.41 of AU-C section 700 and is explained throughout the remainder of this appendix. The unmodified opinion should be in writing and include the following sections:

Title. The title should include the word *independent* to clearly indicate that it is the report of an independent auditor. The reference to

¹ For more examples of other types of auditor's reports, as well as situational guidance, please refer to the AICPA online tool *The Auditor's Report: Comprehensive Guidance and Examples*.

independent affirms that the auditor has met all the relevant ethical requirements regarding independence.

Addressee. The auditor's report should be addressed as required by the circumstances of the engagement. The addressee is normally those for whom the report is prepared. It may be addressed to the entity whose financial statements are being audited or those charged with governance. Occasionally, an auditor may be retained to audit the financial statements of an entity that is not a client; in such a case, the report may be addressed to the client and not to those charged with governance of the entity whose financial statements are being audited.

Introductory paragraph. The introductory paragraph should (a) identify the entity whose financial statements have been audited, (b) state that the financial statements have been audited, (c) identify the title of each statement that comprises the financial statements, and (d) specify the date or period covered by each financial statement.

The auditor's report covers the complete set of financial statements, as defined by the applicable financial reporting framework. For example, in the case of many general purpose frameworks, the financial statements include a balance sheet, an income statement, a statement of changes in equity, and a cash flow statement, including related notes.

The identification of the title for each statement that the financial statements comprise may be achieved by listing them individually or by referencing the table of contents.

Management's responsibility for the financial statements. This section should be identified with the heading "Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements" and should include an explanation that management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, which includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud.

In some instances, a document containing the auditor's report may include a separate statement by management regarding its responsibility for the preparation of the financial statements. Generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) do not permit including a reference to any separate statement by management about such responsibilities because this may lead users to erroneously believe that the auditor is providing assurances about representations made by management discussed elsewhere in the document.

Auditor's responsibility. The section with this heading should describe that it is the auditor's responsibility to express an opinion on the financial statements based on the audit. This section should also include a statement that the audit was conducted in accordance with GAAS, should identify the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards, and that those standards require the auditor to plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. The audit should be described by stating

- an audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements.
- the procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In assessing those risks, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control, and, accordingly, no such opinion is expressed. (If the auditor has a responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of the internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, the auditor should omit the phrase "the auditor's consideration of internal control is not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control, and accordingly, no such opinion is expressed.")
- an audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of the accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as the overall presentation of the financial statements.

The auditor's report should include a statement about whether the auditor believes that the audit evidence he or she has obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for the auditor's opinion.

Auditor's opinion. The auditor's report should include a section with the heading "Opinion." This, when expressing an unmodified opinion, states the auditor's opinion that the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in accordance with the applicable reporting framework and identifies the applicable reporting framework.

The auditor's opinion includes the identification of the financial statements as indicated in the introductory paragraph in order to describe the information that is the subject of the auditor's opinion.

Other reporting responsibilities. If the auditor addresses other reporting responsibilities in the auditor's report on the financial statements that are in addition to the auditor's responsibility under GAAS to report on the financial statements, these reporting responsibilities should be addressed in a separate section subtitled "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" or otherwise, as appropriate.

If this section is included, all the sections discussed earlier should be under the subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" and this section should follow it.

Signature of the auditor. The signature should include the manual or printed signature of the auditor's firm. In certain situations, the auditor's report may be required by law or regulation to include the personal name and signature of the auditor, in addition to the auditor's firm.

Auditor's address. The auditor's report should include the name of the city and state where the auditor practices or the issuing office, if different. Note that this requirement may be met by placing the report on firm letterhead that includes the firm's address.

Date of the auditor's report. The auditor's report should be dated no earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the auditor's opinion on the financial statements, including evidence that the audit documentation has been reviewed, all the financial statements and notes have been prepared, and management has taken responsibility for the financial statements.

Additional Considerations

Auditor's Report for Audits Conducted in Accordance With Both GAAS and Another Set of Auditing Standards

The preceding reporting requirements include a requirement to indicate that the audit was conducted in accordance with GAAS and identify the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards. However, an auditor may indicate that the audit was also conducted in accordance with another set of auditing standards (for example, International Standards on Auditing, the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, or *Government Auditing Standards*). Paragraphs .42–.43 of AU-C section 700 address these situations. If the audit was conducted under GAAS and another set of auditing standards, the auditor's report should identify the other set of auditing standards, as well as their origin. The auditor should not refer to having conducted an audit in accordance with another set of auditing standards in addition to GAAS unless the audit was conducted in accordance with both sets of standards in their entirety.

Information Presented in the Financial Statements

In some circumstances, the entity may be required by law, regulation, or standards, or may voluntarily choose, to include in the basic financial statements information that is not required by the applicable financial reporting framework. If the information cannot be clearly differentiated from the financial statements because of its nature and how it is presented, the auditor's opinion should cover this information as required by paragraph .58 of AU-C section 700.

If the information included in the basic financial statements is not required by the applicable financial reporting framework and is not necessary for fair presentation but is clearly differentiated, then such information may be identified as "unaudited" or as "not covered by the auditor's report."

Exhibit—An Auditor's Report on Consolidated Comparative Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Accounting Principles Generally Accepted in the United States of America²

Circumstances include the following:

- Audit of a complete set of general purpose consolidated financial statements (comparative).
- The financial statements are prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Independent Auditor's Report

To the Board of Directors of XYZ Construction Contractors

Report on the Financial Statements³

We have audited the accompanying consolidated financial statements of XYZ Construction Contractors and its subsidiaries, which comprise the consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the related consolidated statements of income, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the years then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these consolidated financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of consolidated financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these consolidated financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair

² For an illustrative sample of an auditor's report containing an other-matter paragraph applicable when the auditor is issuing an unmodified opinion on the financial statements and an unmodified opinion on included supplementary information, such as backlog information, see appendix J, "Reporting on Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole." For additional exhibits and illustrative sample auditor's reports which meet the requirements of AU-C section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), refer to the AICPA online tool *The Auditor's Report: Comprehensive Guidance and Examples*.

³ The subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

presentation of the consolidated financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.⁴ Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of XYZ Construction Contractors and its subsidiaries as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for the years then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Form and content of this section of the auditor's report will vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities.]

[Auditor's signature]

[Auditor's city and state]

[Date of the auditor's report]

⁴ In circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the consolidated financial statements, this sentence would be worded as follows: "In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the consolidated financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances." In addition, the next sentence, "Accordingly, we express no such opinion," would not be included.

Appendix J

Reporting on Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole

This appendix has been removed while it undergoes a significant update. Once complete, the contents of the appendix will be made available at no additional expense on the Financial Reporting Center. Please visit www.aicpa.org/FRC and navigate to the Construction Contractors Industry Insights area for more details.

Appendix K

International Financial Reporting Standards

Introduction

The following information provides a brief overview of the ongoing globalization of accounting standards, International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs) as a body of accounting literature, the status of convergence with IFRSs in the United States, and the related issues that accounting professionals need to consider today.

Globalization of Accounting Standards

As the business world becomes more globally connected, regulators, investors, audit firms, and public and private companies of all sizes are expressing an increased interest in having common accounting standards among participants in capital markets and trading partners around the world. Proponents of convergence with, or adoption of, IFRSs for financial reporting in the United States believe that one set of financial reporting standards would improve the quality and comparability of investor information and promote fair, orderly, and efficient markets.

Many critics, however, believe that accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (U.S. GAAP) are the superior standards and question whether the use of IFRSs will result in more useful financial statements in the long term and whether the cost of implementing IFRSs will outweigh the benefits. Implementing IFRSs will require a staggering effort by management, auditors, and financial statement users, not to mention educators.

The increasing pressure to globalize accounting standards, both in the United States and around the world, means that now is the time to become knowledgeable about these changes. The discussion that follows explains the underpinnings of the international support for a common set of high quality global standards and many of the challenges and potential opportunities associated with such a fundamental shift in financial accounting and reporting.

The international standard setting process began several decades ago as an effort by industrialized nations to create standards that could be used by developing and smaller nations. However, as cross-border transactions and globalization increased, other nations began to take interest, and the global reach of IFRSs expanded. More than 100 nations and reporting jurisdictions permit or require IFRSs for domestic listed companies and most have fully conformed to IFRSs as promulgated by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) and include a statement acknowledging such conformity in audit reports. Several countries, including Argentina and Canada, adopted IFRSs on January 1, 2011, and many other countries have plans to converge (or eliminate significant differences between) their national standards and IFRSs in the future.

For many years, the United States has been a strong leader in international efforts to develop globally accepted standards. Among other actions in support of IFRSs, the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) removed the requirement for foreign private issuers registered in the United States

to reconcile their financial reports with U.S. GAAP if their accounts complied with IFRSs as issued by the IASB. In addition, the SEC continues to analyze and evaluate appropriate steps toward, and challenges related to, incorporating IFRSs into the U.S. financial reporting system, as subsequently described.

In addition to the support received from certain U.S. based entities, financial and economic leaders from various organizations have announced their support for global accounting standards. Most notably, in 2009, the Group of Twenty Finance Ministers and Central Bank Governors (G20), a group from 20 of the world's industrialized and developing economies (with the 20th member being the European Union, collectively), called for standard setters to redouble their efforts to complete convergence in global accounting standards.

Acceptance of a single set of high quality accounting standards may present many significant opportunities, including the improvement in financial reporting to global investors, the facilitation of cross-border investments, and the integration of capital markets. Further, U.S. entities with international operations could realize significant cost savings from the use of a single set of financial reporting standards. For example, U.S. issuers raising capital outside the United States are required to comply with the domestic reporting standards of the foreign country and U.S. GAAP. As a result, additional costs arise from the duplication and translation of financial reporting information.

Many multinational companies support the use of common accounting standards to increase comparability of financial results among reporting entities from different countries. They believe common standards will help investors better understand the entities' business activities and financial position. Large public companies with subsidiaries in multiple jurisdictions would be able to use one accounting language company-wide and present their financial statements in the same language as their competitors. In addition, some believe that in a truly global economy, financial professionals, including CPAs, will be more mobile, and companies will more easily be able to respond to the human capital needs of their subsidiaries around the world.

Although certain cost reductions are expected, the initial cost of convergence with IFRSs is expected to be one of the largest obstacles for many entities, including accounting firms and educational institutions. Substantial internal costs for U.S. corporations in the areas of employee training, IT conversions, and general ledger software have been predicted. In addition, the time and effort required from various external functions, including the education of auditors, investors, lenders, and other financial statement users, will be significant factors for consideration.

Although the likelihood of acceptance of IFRSs may lack clarity for the time being, U.S. companies should consider preparing for the costly transition to new or converged standards, which likely will include higher costs in the areas of training and software compliance.

Who Is the IASB?

The IASB is the independent standard setting body of the IFRS Foundation, formerly, the International Accounting Standards Committee Foundation. As a private sector organization, the IFRS Foundation has no authority to impose funding regimes on countries. However, a levy system and national contribu-

tions through regulatory and standard-setting authorities or stock exchanges have been introduced in a number of countries to fund the organization. Although the AICPA was a founding member of the International Accounting Standards Committee, the IASB's predecessor organization, it is not affiliated with the IASB.

The IASB, founded on April 1, 2001, in London, England, is responsible for developing IFRSs and promoting the use and application of these standards. In pursuit of this objective, the IASB cooperates with national accounting standard setters to achieve convergence in accounting standards around the world.

The structure includes the following primary groups: (a) the IFRS Foundation, an independent organization having two main bodies: the IFRS Foundation trustees and the IASB; (b) the IFRS Advisory Council; and (c) the IFRS Interpretations Committee, formerly the International Financial Reporting Interpretations Committee (IFRIC). The trustees appoint the IASB members, exercise oversight, and raise the funds needed, but the IASB itself has responsibility for establishing IFRSs.

The IFRS Foundation is linked to a monitoring board of public authorities, including committees of the International Organization of Securities Commissions, the European Commission, and the SEC. The monitoring board's main responsibilities are to ensure that the trustees continue to discharge their duties as defined by the IFRS Foundation Constitution, as well as approving the appointment or reappointment of trustees. In addition, through the monitoring board, capital markets authorities that allow or require the use of IFRSs in their jurisdictions will be able to more effectively carry out their mandates regarding investor protection, market integrity, and capital formation.

The IASB board members are selected chiefly upon their professional competence and practical experience. The trustees are required to select members so that the IASB will comprise the best available combination of technical expertise and international business and market experience and to ensure that the IASB is not dominated by any particular geographical interest or constituency. The IASB has members from several different countries, including the United States. The members are responsible for the development and publication of IFRSs, including *International Financial Reporting Standard for Small- and Medium-sized Entities (IFRS for SMEs)*, and for approving the interpretations of IFRSs as developed by the IFRS Interpretations Committee.

The IFRS Interpretations Committee, founded in March 2002, is the successor of the previous interpretations committee, the Standing Interpretations Committee (SIC), and is the interpretative body of the IASB. The role of the IFRS Interpretations Committee is to provide timely guidance on newly identified financial reporting issues not specifically addressed in IFRSs or issues in which interpretations are not sufficient.

IFRSs are developed through a formal system of due process and broad international consultation, similar to the development of U.S. GAAP.

Readers are encouraged to become involved in the standard-setting process by responding to open calls from the standard setting organizations.

What Are IFRSs?

The term *IFRSs* has both a narrow and broad meaning. Narrowly, IFRSs refers to the numbered series of pronouncements issued by the IASB, collectively

called *standards*. More broadly, however, IFRSs refer to the entire body of authoritative IASB literature, including the following:

1. Standards, whether labeled IFRSs or International Accounting Standards (IASs)¹
2. Interpretations, whether labeled IFRIC (the former name of the interpretive body) or SIC (the predecessor to IFRIC)²

The preface to the IFRS *2011 Bound Volume* states that IFRSs are designed to apply to the general purpose financial statements and other financial reporting of all profit-oriented entities, including commercial, industrial, and financial entities, regardless of legal form or organization. IFRSs are not designed to apply to not-for-profit entities or those in the public sector,³ but these entities may find IFRSs appropriate in accounting for their activities.

The IASB's *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* (conceptual framework) establishes the concepts that underlie the preparation and presentation of financial statements for external users. The IASB is guided by the conceptual framework in the development of future standards and in its review of existing standards. The conceptual framework is not an IFRS, and when there is a conflict between the conceptual framework and any IFRS, the standard will prevail. The conceptual framework is an overall statement of guidance for those interpreting financial statements, whereas IFRSs are issue and subject specific.

When an IFRS specifically applies to a transaction, other event, or condition, the accounting policy or policies applied to that item shall be determined by applying the IFRS and considering any relevant implementation guidance issued by the IASB for the IFRS.

Further, if an IFRS does not address a specific transaction, event, or condition explicitly, IAS 8, *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors*, states that management should use its judgment in developing and applying an accounting policy that results in information that is relevant and reliable. With respect to the reliability of financial statements, IAS 8 states that the financial statements (a) represent faithfully the financial position, financial performance, and cash flows of the entity; (b) reflect the economic substance of transactions, other events, and conditions; (c) are neutral; (d) are prudent; and (e) are complete in all material respects. When making this type of judgment, management should refer to, and consider the applicability of, the following in descending order:

1. The requirements and guidance in IFRSs dealing with similar and related issues
2. The definitions, recognition criteria, and measurement concepts for assets, liabilities, income, and expenses in the conceptual framework

Management may also consider the most recent pronouncements of other standard setting bodies that use a similar conceptual framework (for example, U.S. GAAP), other accounting literature, and accepted industry practices to the extent that these do not conflict with IFRSs.

¹ See www.ifrs.org for a current listing of International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs) and International Accounting Standards (IASs).

² See www.ifrs.org for a current listing of International Financial Reporting Interpretations Committee and Standing Interpretations Committee interpretations.

³ Generally speaking, *public* means government-owned entities, and *private* means nongovernment-owned entities.

IFRS for SMEs

IFRS for SMEs is a modification and simplification of full IFRSs aimed at meeting the needs of private company financial reporting users and easing the financial reporting burden on private companies through a cost-benefit approach. *IFRS for SMEs* is a self-contained, global accounting and financial reporting standard applicable to the general purpose financial statements of entities that, in many countries, are known as small- and medium-sized entities (SMEs). Full IFRSs and *IFRS for SMEs* are promulgated by the IASB.

SMEs are entities that publish general purpose financial statements for external users and do not have public accountability. An entity has public accountability under the IASB's definition if it files its financial statements with a securities commission or other regulatory organization or it holds assets in a fiduciary capacity (for example, banks, insurance companies, brokers and dealers in securities, pension funds, and mutual funds). It is not the IASB's intention to exclude entities that hold assets in a fiduciary capacity for reasons incidental to their primary business (for example, travel agents, schools, and utilities) from utilizing *IFRS for SMEs*.

The needs of users of SME financial statements often are different from the needs of users of public company financial statements and other entities that likely would use full IFRSs. Whereas full IFRSs were designed specifically to meet the needs of equity investors in the public capital markets, *IFRS for SMEs* was developed with the needs of a wide range of users in mind. Users of the financial statements of SMEs may be more focused on shorter-term cash flows, liquidity, balance sheet strength, interest coverage, and solvency issues. Full IFRSs may impose a burden on SME preparers in that full IFRSs contain topics and detailed implementation guidance that generally are not relevant to SMEs. This burden has been growing as IFRSs have become more detailed. As such, a significant need existed for an accounting and financial reporting standard for SMEs that would meet the needs of their financial statement users while balancing the costs and benefits from a preparer perspective.

Practically speaking, *IFRS for SMEs* is viewed as an accounting framework for entities that do not have the capacity or resources to use full IFRSs. In the United States, the term SME would encompass many private companies.

In May 2008, the AICPA Governing Council voted to recognize the IASB as an accounting body for purposes of establishing international financial accounting and reporting principles and amended appendix A, "Council Resolution Designating Bodies to Promulgate Technical Standards," of Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 202 par. .01), and Rule 203, *Accounting Principles* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 203 par. .01). This amendment gives AICPA members the option to use IFRSs as an alternative to U.S. GAAP. Accordingly, IFRSs are not considered to be an other comprehensive basis of accounting. Rather, they are a source of generally accepted accounting principles.

As such, a key professional barrier to using IFRSs and, therefore, *IFRS for SMEs*, has been removed. Any remaining barriers may come in the form of unwillingness by a private company's financial statement users to accept fi-

financial statements prepared under *IFRS for SMEs* and a private company's expenditure of money, time, and effort to convert to *IFRS for SMEs*.⁴

The AICPA has developed a resource that compares *IFRS for SMEs* with corresponding requirements of U.S. GAAP. This resource is available in a Wiki format, which allows AICPA members and others to contribute to its development. To learn more about the resource, view available sections, and contribute to its content, visit the Wiki at <http://wiki.ifrs.com/>.

The Financial Accounting Standards Board and IASB Convergence Efforts⁵

To address significant differences between IFRSs and U.S. GAAP, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) and the IASB agreed to a "Memorandum of Understanding" (MoU), which was originally issued in 2006 and subsequently updated. Readers are encouraged to monitor the FASB and IASB websites for additional developments regarding the convergence efforts, such as discussion papers, exposure drafts, and requests for comments.

Comparison of U.S. GAAP and IFRSs

One of the major differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRSs lies in the conceptual approach: U.S. GAAP is based on principles, with heavy use of rules to illustrate the principles; however, IFRSs are principles based, without heavy use of rules.

In general, a principles-based set of accounting standards, such as IFRSs, is broad in scope. The standards are concise, written in plain language, and provide for limited exceptions and bright lines. Principles-based standards typically require a higher level of professional judgment, which may facilitate an enhanced focus on the economic purpose of a company's transactions and how the transactions are reflected in its financial reporting.

A noticeable result of these differences is that IFRSs provide much less overall detail. In developing an IFRS, the IASB expects preparers to rely on core principles and limited application guidance with fewer prescriptive rules. In contrast, FASB often leans more toward providing extensive prescriptive guidance and detailed rules. The guidance provided in IFRSs regarding revenue recognition, for example, is significantly less extensive than U.S. GAAP. IFRSs also contain relatively little industry-specific guidance.

An inherent issue in a principles-based system is the potential for different interpretations of similar transactions across jurisdictions and entities, which may affect the relative comparability of financial reporting.

Because of long-standing convergence projects between the IASB and FASB, the extent of the specific differences between IFRSs and U.S. GAAP is decreasing. Yet, significant differences remain, which could result in significantly different reported results, depending on a company's industry and in-

⁴ CPAs are encouraged to consult their state boards of accountancy to determine the status of reporting on financial statements prepared in accordance with *International Financial Reporting Standard for Small- and Medium-sized Entities* within their individual state.

⁵ Because the convergence projects discussed are active and subject to change, updates will be posted periodically to www.journalofaccountancy.com. Readers also are encouraged to monitor the progress of these projects at the respective boards' websites: www.ifrs.org and www.fasb.org.

dividual facts and circumstances. For example, some differences include the following:

- IFRSs do not permit last in, first out (LIFO) inventory accounting.
- IFRSs allow for the revaluation of assets in certain circumstances.
- IFRSs use a single-step method for impairment write-downs rather than the two-step method used in U.S. GAAP, making write-downs more likely.
- IFRSs have a different probability threshold and measurement objective for contingencies.
- IFRSs generally do not allow net presentation for derivatives.

U.S. GAAP also addresses some specific transactions not currently addressed in IFRSs, such as accounting for reorganizations, including quasi reorganizations; troubled debt restructuring; spin-offs; and reverse spin-offs. In addition, U.S. GAAP is designed to apply to all nongovernmental entities, including not-for-profit entities, and includes specific guidance for not-for-profit entities, development stage entities, limited liability entities, and personal financial statements.

The difference in the amount of industry-specific guidance also illustrates the different approaches. Currently, IFRSs include only several standards (for example, IAS 41, *Agriculture*)⁶ that might be regarded as primarily industry-specific guidance. However, the scope of these standards includes all entities to which the scope of IFRSs applies. In contrast, U.S. GAAP has considerable guidance for entities within specific industries. For example, on liability recognition and measurement alone, U.S. GAAP contains specific guidance for entities in the following industries, which is not found in IFRSs:

- Health care
- Contractors and construction
- Contractors and the federal government
- Entertainment, with separate guidance for casinos, films, and music
- Financial services, with separate guidance for brokers and dealers and depository and lending, insurance, and investment companies

For nonmonetary transactions, U.S. GAAP provides specific guidance for the airline, software, and entertainment industries.

SEC Work Plan

The SEC continues to affirm its support for a single set of high-quality, globally accepted accounting standards; however, no decision has been made on whether or not to adopt IFRSs. In May 2011, the SEC staff produced a work plan outlining how such a possible transition might happen.

In November 2011, the SEC released a staff paper that summarizes the current status of convergence projects, which are grouped by both short-term and long-term, as well as by level of priority (greater priority versus lower

⁶ In addition to IAS 41, *Agriculture*, the other IFRSs that address issues specific to certain industries are IFRS 4, *Insurance Contracts*, and IFRS 6, *Exploration for and Evaluation of Mineral Resources*.

priority). Currently, the three projects that are of greater priority are financial instruments, revenue recognition, and leases.

In July 2012, the SEC published its final staff report on the work plan, which focuses on the arguments for and against various forms of adoption of global accounting standards. When assessing the implications of incorporating IFRSs in the U.S. financial reporting system, the SEC concluded that although international standards have improved in comprehensiveness, there are still some gaps, especially in the areas of insurance, extractive industries, and rate-regulated industries. The report also states that the costs of full IFRS adoption remain to be among the most significant costs required from an accounting perspective, and that companies questioned whether the benefits would justify such a full-scale transition. Although the report does not contain information leading to any decision the SEC has made regarding incorporation of IFRSs, the staff expects that the SEC and others in the United States will remain involved with the development and application of IFRS.

Refer to www.sec.gov for the full version of the staff paper.

AICPA

In response to an SEC staff paper issued in May 2011, the AICPA issued a comment letter in August 2011 stating the AICPA's agreement with the SEC that FASB should continue to have an active role in the international financial reporting arena to ensure that U.S. interests are suitably addressed in the development of IFRSs. Results from an IFRS Readiness Survey conducted by the AICPA in September 2011 show that a majority of CPAs support optional adoption of IFRSs. This would allow publicly traded U.S. companies to use IFRS while the SEC decides whether to incorporate the standards into U.S. reporting requirements. In response to the SEC's final staff report on the work plan, the AICPA applauds the SEC's efforts in performing a detailed review of IFRSs and stresses the importance of high-quality, transparent, and comparable financial information for the world's capital markets to make sound investment decisions.

Additional Resources

<i>Website</i>	<i>URL</i>
AICPA	www.aicpa.org
AICPA International Financial Reporting Standards Resources	www.ifrs.com
International Accounting Standards Board and IFRS Foundation	www.ifrs.org
Comparison Wiki of <i>International Financial Reporting Standard for Small- and Medium-sized Entities</i> and U.S. generally accepted accounting principles	http://wiki.ifrs.com
Financial Accounting Standards Board	www.fasb.org

Appendix L

Information Sources

Further information on matters addressed in this guide is available through various publications and services listed in the table that follows. Many non-government and some government publications and services involve a charge or membership requirement.

Fax services allow users to follow voice cues and request that selected documents be sent by fax machine. Some fax services require the user to call from the handset of the fax machine, others allow the user to call from any phone. Most fax services offer an index document, which lists titles and other information describing available documents.

Recorded announcements allow users to listen to announcements about a variety of recent or scheduled actions or meetings.

All telephone numbers listed are voice lines, unless otherwise designated as fax (f) lines.

Information Sources

Organization	General Information	Fax/Phone Services	Website	Recorded Announcements
AICPA	<i>Order Department</i> 220 Leigh Farm Road Durham, NC 27707-8110 <i>Member Service Center</i> 888.777.7077 <i>Technical Hotline</i> 877.242.7212	<i>General Information</i> 919.402.4500	www.aicpa.org www.cpa2biz.com	
Financial Accounting Standards Board	<i>Order Department</i> 401 Merritt 7 P.O. Box 5116 Norwalk, CT 06856-5116 203.847.0700 (ext. 10)	<i>General Information</i> 203.847.0700	www.fasb.org	<i>Action Alert Telephone Line</i> 800.462.0393
U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission	<i>Publications Unit</i> 100 F Street NE Washington, DC 20549 202.551.4040 <i>SEC Public Reference Room</i> 202.551.8090	<i>Information Line</i> 800.732.6585	www.sec.gov	<i>Information Line</i> 800.732.6585
U.S. Department of Commerce	1401 Constitution Avenue NW Washington, DC 20230	<i>General Information</i> 202.482.2000 Bureau of Economic Analysis 1441 L Street NW Washington, DC 20230 202.606.9900	www.commerce.gov www.bea.gov	
Associated General Contractors of America	2300 Wilson Boulevard Suite 400 Arlington, VA 22201	<i>General Information</i> 703.548.3118 703.548.3119 (f)	www.agc.org	
Professional Construction Estimators Association	P.O. Box 680336 Charlotte, NC 28216	<i>General Information</i> 704.489.1494 704.489.1495 (f)	www.pcea.org	
Construction Financial Management Association	100 Village Blvd. Suite 200 Princeton, NJ 08540	<i>General Information</i> 609.452.8000 609.452.0474 (f)	www.cfma.org	

Appendix M

Schedule of Changes Made to the Text From the Previous Edition

As of May 1, 2013

This schedule of changes identifies areas in the text and footnotes of this guide that have been changed from the previous edition. Entries in the table of this appendix reflect current numbering, lettering (including that in appendix names), and character designations that resulted from the renumbering or reordering that occurred in the updating of this guide.

<i>Reference</i>	<i>Change</i>
General	Guidance related to the clarified auditing standards (Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 122–127 [AICPA, <i>Professional Standards</i>]) has been incorporated throughout this guide. See appendix B, <i>Mapping and Summarization of Changes—Clarified Auditing Standards</i> , for a mapping of the extant standards to the clarified AU-C sections.
General	Information related to standards issued but not yet effective on or before the "as of" date of this guide has been placed in shaded "Guidance Update" boxes, with a reference to appendix A, "Guidance Updates." See appendix A for more information.
Preface	Updated.
Former paragraph 1.01	Deleted.
Paragraph 1.02	Revised for clarification.
Paragraph 3.18	Updated due to Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2011-04, <i>Fair Value Measurement (Topic 820): Amendments to Achieve Common Fair Value Measurement and Disclosure Requirements in U.S. GAAP and IFRSs</i> .
Paragraph 3.20	Revised for clarification.
Paragraph 3.26	Revised for clarification.
Paragraph 4.02	Added for clarification.
Paragraphs 5.02–.29	Updated due to FASB ASU No. 2011-04.

(continued)

<i>Reference</i>	<i>Change</i>
Paragraphs 5.39–.45	Updated due to FASB ASU No. 2010-28, <i>Intangibles—Goodwill and Other (Topic 350): When to Perform Step 2 of the Goodwill Impairment Test for Reporting Units with Zero or Negative Carrying Amounts (a consensus of the FASB Emerging Issues Task Force)</i> .
Paragraph 5.51	Added for clarification.
Paragraph 6.02	Revised for clarification.
Footnote 1 in paragraph 6.18	Added for clarification.
Paragraph 6.28	Revised for clarification.
Former footnote 2 in paragraph 6.37	Deleted.
Paragraphs 6.42–.51 and footnote 2	Updated due to FASB ASU No. 2011-09, <i>Compensation—Retirement Benefits—Multiemployer Plans (Subtopic 715-80): Disclosures about an Employer's Participation in a Multiemployer Plan</i> .
Chapters 7–12	Updated due to the Clarified Auditing Standards.
Appendix A	Revised.
Appendix B	Revised.
Appendix G	Deleted while undergoing a significant update.
Appendix H	Deleted while undergoing a significant update.
Appendix I	Added.
Appendix J	Deleted while undergoing a significant update.
Appendix K	Revised for the passage of time.
Index of Pronouncements and Other Technical Guidance	Added.
Subject Index	Updated.

Glossary

The following terms can be found in the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) glossary:

contractor. A person or entity that enters into a contract to construct facilities, produce goods, or render services to the specifications of a buyer either as a general or prime contractor, as a subcontractor to a general contractor, or as a construction manager.

cost-type contracts. Contracts that provide for reimbursement of allowable or otherwise defined costs incurred plus a fee that represents profit. Cost-type contracts usually only require that the contractor use his best efforts to accomplish the scope of the work within some specified time and some stated dollar limitation.

expected losses. In the context of consolidations (chapter 3, "Accounting for and Reporting Investments in Construction Joint Ventures," of this guide and FASB ASC 810-10), a legal entity that has no history of net losses and expects to continue to be profitable in the foreseeable future can be a variable interest entity (VIE). A legal entity that expects to be profitable will have expected losses. A VIE's expected losses are the expected negative variability in the fair value of its net assets exclusive of variable interests and not the anticipated amount or variability of the net income or loss.

expected losses and expected residual returns. In the context of consolidations (chapter 3 of this guide and FASB ASC 810-10), expected losses and expected residual returns refer to amounts derived from expected cash flows as described in FASB Concepts Statement No. 7, *Using Cash Flow Information and Present Value in Accounting Measurements*. However, expected losses and expected residual returns refer to amounts discounted and otherwise adjusted for market factors and assumptions rather than to undiscounted cash flow estimates. The definitions of expected losses and expected residual returns specify which amounts are to be considered in determining expected losses and expected residual returns of a variable interest entity.

expected residual returns. In the context of consolidations (chapter 3 of this guide and FASB ASC 810-10), a variable interest entity's expected residual returns are the expected positive variability in the fair value of its net assets exclusive of variable interests.

expected variability. In the context of consolidations (chapter 3 of this guide and FASB ASC 810-10), expected variability is the sum of the absolute values of the expected residual return and the expected loss. Expected variability in the fair value of net assets includes expected variability resulting from the operating results of the legal entity.

fixed-price contract. A contract in which the price is not subject to any adjustment by reason of the cost experience of the contractor or his or her performance under the contract.

joint venture. An entity owned and operated by a small group of businesses (the joint venturers) as a separate and specific business or project for the mutual benefit of the members of the group. A government may also be a member of the group. The purpose of a joint venture frequently is to share

risks and rewards in developing a new market, product, or technology; to combine complementary technological knowledge; or to pool resources in developing production or other facilities. A joint venture also usually provides an arrangement under which each joint venturer may participate, directly or indirectly, in the overall management of the joint venture. Joint venturers thus have an interest or relationship other than as passive investors. An entity that is a subsidiary of one of the joint venturers is not a joint venture. The ownership of a joint venture seldom changes, and its equity interests usually are not traded publicly. A minority public ownership, however, does not preclude an entity from being a joint venture. As distinguished from a corporate joint venture, a joint venture is not limited to corporate entities.

percentage-of-completion method. A method of recognizing profit for time-sharing transactions under which the amount of revenue recognized (based on the sales value) at the time a sale is recognized is measured by the relationship of costs already incurred to the total of costs already incurred and future costs expected to be incurred.

profit center. The unit for the accumulation of revenues and costs and the measurement of income. For business entities engaged in the performance of contracts, the profit center for accounting purposes is usually a single contract. However, under some specified circumstances it may be a combination of two or more contracts, a segment of a contract, or of a group of combined contracts.

subcontractor claims. Those obligations of a contractor to a subcontractor that arise from the subcontractor's costs incurred through transactions that were related to a contract terminated but did not result in the transfer of billable materials or services to the contractor before termination.

time-and-material contract. Contracts that generally provide for payments to the contractor on the basis of direct labor hours at fixed hourly rates (that cover the cost of direct labor and indirect expenses and profit) and cost of materials or other specified costs.

unit-price contract. Contracts under which the contractor is paid a specified amount for every unit of work performed. A unit-price contract is essentially a fixed-price contract with the only variable being units of work performed. Variations in unit-price contracts include the same type of variations as fixed-price contracts. A unit-price contract is normally awarded on the basis of a total price that is the sum of the product of the specified units and unit prices. The method of determining total contract price may give rise to unbalanced unit prices because units to be delivered early in the contract may be assigned higher unit prices than those to be delivered as the work under the contract progresses.

The following is a list of additional terms that have been used in this guide:

back charges. Billings for work performed or costs incurred by one party that, in accordance with the agreement, should have been performed or incurred by the party to whom billed. Owners bill back charges to general contractors, and general contractors bill back charges to subcontractors. Examples of back charges include charges for cleanup work and charges for a subcontractor's use of a general contractor's equipment.

- backlog.** The amount of revenue that a contractor expects to be realized from work to be performed on uncompleted contracts, including new contractual agreements on which work has not begun.
- bid.** A formal offer by a contractor, in accordance with specifications for a project, to do all or a phase of the work at a certain price in accordance with the terms and conditions stated in the offer.
- bid bond.** A bond issued by a surety on behalf of a contractor that provides assurance to the recipient of the contractor's bid that, if the bid is accepted, the contractor will execute a contract and provide a *performance bond*. Under the bond, the surety is obligated to pay the recipient of the bid the difference between the contractor's bid and the bid of the next lowest responsible bidder if the bid is accepted and the contractor fails to execute a contract or to provide a performance bond. (See the "Bonding and the Surety Underwriting Process" section in chapter 1, "Industry Background.")
- bid security.** Funds or a *bid bond* submitted with a bid as a guarantee to the recipient of the bid that the contractor, if awarded the contract, will execute the contract in accordance with the bidding requirements and the contract documents.
- bid shopping.** A practice by which contractors, both before and after their bids are submitted, attempt to obtain prices from potential subcontractors and material suppliers that are lower than the contractors' original estimates on which their bids are based or, after a contract is awarded, seek to induce subcontractors to reduce the subcontract price included in the bid.
- bidding requirements.** The procedures and conditions for the submission of bids. The requirements are included in documents such as the notice to bidders, advertisement for bids, instructions to bidders, invitations to bid, and sample bid forms.
- bonding capacity.** The total dollar value of construction bonds that a surety will underwrite for a contractor, based on the surety's predetermination of the overall volume of work that the contractor can handle.
- bonding company.** A company authorized to issue *bid bonds*, *performance bonds*, *labor and materials bonds*, or other types of surety bonds.
- bonus clause.** A provision in a construction contract that provides for payments to the contractor in excess of the basic contract price as a reward for meeting or exceeding various contract stipulations, such as the contract completion date or the capacity, quality, or cost of the project.
- broker.** A party that obtains and accepts responsibility as a *general contractor* for the overall performance of a contract but enters into *subcontracts* with others for the performance of virtually all construction work required under the contract.
- builders' risk insurance.** Insurance coverage on a construction project during construction, including extended coverage that may be added for the contractor's protection or required by the contract for the customer's protection.
- building codes.** The regulations of governmental bodies specifying the construction standards that buildings in a jurisdiction must meet.

- building permit.** An official document issued by a governing body for the construction of a specified project in accordance with drawings and specifications approved by the governing body.
- change orders.** Modifications of an original contract that effectively change the provisions of the contract without adding new provisions. They include changes in specifications or design, method or manner of performance, facilities, equipment, materials, site, and period for completion of work. (See paragraphs 25–27 of FASB ASC 605-35-25.)
- claims.** Amounts in excess of the agreed contract price that a contractor seeks to collect from customers or others for customer-caused delays, errors in specifications and designs, unapproved change orders, or other causes of unanticipated costs. (See paragraphs 30–31 of FASB ASC 605-35-25.)
- completed and accepted.** A procedure relating to the time for closing jobs for tax purposes under the completed-contract method of accounting that allows closing a job when construction is physically completed and the customer has formally accepted the project as defined in the contract.
- completion bond.** A document providing assurance to the customer and the financial institution that the contractor will complete the work under the contract and that funds will be provided for the completion.
- construction loan.** Interim financing for the development and construction of real property.
- construction management contractor.** A party who enters into an agency contract with the owner of a construction project to supervise and coordinate the construction activity on the project, including negotiating contracts with others for all the construction work. (See the "Nature and Significance of the Industry" section in chapter 1.)
- contract bond.** An approved form of security executed by a contractor and a surety for the execution of the contract and all supplemental agreements, including the payment of all debts relating to the construction of the project.
- contract cost breakdown.** An itemized schedule prepared by a contractor after the receipt of a contract showing in detail the elements and phases of the project and the cost of each element and phase.
- contract item (pay item).** An element of work, specifically described in a contract, for which the contract provides either a unit or lump-sum price.
- contract overrun (underrun).** The amount by which the original contract price, as adjusted by *change orders*, differs from the total cost of a project at completion.
- contract payment bond.** The security furnished by the contractor to guarantee payment for labor and materials obtained in the performance of the contract. (See **payment (labor and materials) bond**.)
- contract performance bond.** The security furnished by the contractor to guarantee the completion of the work on a project in accordance with the terms of the contract. (See **performance bond**.)
- critical path method.** A network scheduling method that shows the sequences and interdependencies of activities. The critical path is the se-

- quence of activities that shows the shortest time path for completion of the project.
- draw.** The amount of *progress billings* on a contract that is currently available to a contractor under a contract with a fixed payment schedule.
- escalation clause.** A contract provision that provides for adjustments of the price of specific items as conditions change (for example, a provision that requires wage rates to be determined on the basis of wage levels established in agreements with labor unions).
- estimate (bid function).** The amount of labor, materials, and other costs that a contractor anticipates for a project, as summarized in the contractor's bid proposal for the project.
- estimated cost to complete.** The anticipated additional cost of materials, labor, and other items required to complete a project at a scheduled time.
- extras (customer's extras).** Additional work, not included in the original plan, requested of a contractor that will be billed separately and will not alter the original contract amount. (See the "Contract Modifications and Changes" section in chapter 1.)
- final acceptance.** The customer's acceptance of the project from the contractor on certification by an architect or engineer that the project is completed in accordance with contract requirements. The customer confirms final acceptance by making final payment under the contract unless the time for making the final payment is otherwise stipulated.
- final inspection.** The final review of the project by an architect or engineer before issuance of the final certificate for payment.
- front-end loading.** A procedure under which *progress billings* are accelerated in relation to costs incurred by assigning higher values to contract portions that will be completed in the early stages of a contract than to those portions that will be completed in the later stages so that cash receipts from the project during the early stages will be higher than they otherwise would be.
- general contractor.** A contractor who enters into a contract with the owner of a project for the construction of the project and who takes full responsibility for its completion, although the contractor may enter into *subcontracts* with others for the performance of specific parts or phases of the project. (See the "Nature and Significance of the Industry" section in chapter 1.)
- incentives.** (See **bonus clause** and **penalty clause**.)
- letter agreement (letter of agreement).** A letter stating the terms of an agreement between addressor and addressee, usually prepared for signature by the addressee as indication of acceptance of those terms as legally binding.
- letter of intent.** A letter signifying an intention to enter into a formal agreement and usually setting forth the general terms of such an agreement.
- lien.** An encumbrance that usually makes real or personal property the security for payment of a debt or discharge of an obligation.
- liquidated damages.** Construction contract clauses obligating the contractor to pay specified daily amounts to the project owner as compensation

for damages suffered by the owner because of the contractor's failure to complete the work within a stated time.

loss contract. A contract on which the estimated cost to complete exceeds the contract price.

maintenance bond. A document given by the contractor to the owner guaranteeing to rectify defects in workmanship or materials for a specified time following completion of the project. A one-year bond is normally included in the performance bond.

mechanics lien. A lien on real property, created by statute in many areas, in favor of persons supplying labor or materials for a building or structure, for the value of labor or materials supplied by them. In some jurisdictions, a mechanics lien also exists for the value of professional services. Clear title to the property cannot be obtained until the claim for the labor, materials, or professional services is settled. Timely filing is essential to support the encumbrance, and prescribed filing dates vary by jurisdiction.

negotiated contract. A contract for construction developed through negotiation of plans, specifications, terms, and conditions without competitive bidding.

payment (labor and materials) bond. A bond executed by a contractor to protect suppliers of labor, materials, and supplies to a construction project.

penalty clause. A provision in a construction contract that provides for a reduction in the amount otherwise payable under a contract to a contractor as a penalty for failure to meet targets or schedules specified in the contract or for failure of the project to meet contract specifications.

performance bond. A bond issued by a surety and executed by a contractor to provide protection against the contractor's failure to perform a contract in accordance with its terms. (See the "Bonding and the Surety Underwriting Process" section in chapter 1.)

prequalification. The written approval of an agency seeking bids on a project that authorizes a contractor to submit a bid on the project in circumstances in which bidders are required to meet certain standards.

prime contract. A contract between an owner of a project and a contractor for the completion of all or a portion of a project under which the contractor takes full responsibility for the completion of the work.

prime contractor. A contractor who enters into a contract with the owner of the project for the completion of all or a portion of the project and who takes full responsibility for its completion. (See **general contractor**.)

progress (advance) billings. Amounts billed in accordance with the provisions of a contract on the basis of progress to date under the contract.

punch list. A list made near the completion of work indicating items to be furnished or work to be performed by the contractor or subcontractor in order to complete the work as specified in the contract.

quantity takeoffs. An itemized list of the quantities of materials and labor required for a project, with each item priced and extended, which is used in preparing a bid on the project.

- retentions.** Amounts withheld from progress billings until final and satisfactory project completion.
- specifications (specs).** A written description of the materials and workmanship required on a project (as shown by related working drawings), including standard and special provisions related to the quantities and qualities of materials to be furnished under the contract.
- stop order.** A formal notification to a contractor to discontinue some or all work on a project for reasons such as safety violations, defective materials or workmanship, or cancellation of the contract.
- subcontract.** A contract between the *prime contractor* and another contractor or supplier to perform specified work or to supply specified materials in accordance with plans and specifications for the project.
- subcontractor bond.** A bond executed by a subcontractor and given to the *prime contractor* to assure the subcontractor's performance on the *subcontract*, including the payment for all labor and materials required for the *subcontract*.
- substantial completion.** The point at which the major work on a contract is completed and only insignificant costs and potential risks remain. Revenue from a contract is recognized under the completed-contract method when the contract is substantially completed. (See paragraphs 96–97 of FASB ASC 605-35-25.)
- surety.** (See **bonding company**.)
- turnkey project.** A project for which a contractor undertakes under contract to deliver a fully operational and tested facility before being entitled to payment.
- unbalanced bid.** A bid proposal under which the contract price is allocated to phases or items in the contract on a basis other than that of cost plus overhead and profit for each bid item or phase. A common practice is to *front-end load* a bid proposal to obtain working capital to finance the project. Another form of unbalanced bid on unit-price contracts assigns higher profits to types of work for which the quantities are most likely to be increased during the performance of the contract.
- waiver of lien.** An instrument by which the holder of a *mechanics or materials* lien against property formally relinquishes that right.
- warranty (maintenance) period.** A specified period, which is normally specified in the contract, after the completion and acceptance of a project, during which a contractor is required to provide maintenance construction, and for which the contractor is required to post a *maintenance bond*.
-

Index of Pronouncements and Other Technical Guidance

A

<i>Title</i>	<i>Paragraphs</i>
<i>AT Section 501, An Examination of an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting That Is Integrated With an Audit of Its Financial Statements</i>	9.02
<i>AU Section 560, Subsequent Events</i>	9.93
<i>AU-C Section</i>	
<i>200, Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i>	9.01, 9.20, 12.01
<i>210, Terms of Engagement</i>	9.05
<i>220, Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</i>	9.05
<i>230, Audit Documentation</i>	9.87, 9.93, 9.96
<i>240, Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit</i>	9.18, 9.40, 12.01, 12.13–14, 12.24–25, 12.29, 12.34
<i>250, Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements</i>	11.27
<i>260, The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance</i>	9.07, 9.08–12, 9.15, 9.18–19, 11.25
<i>265, Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit</i>	9.18, 11.25
<i>300, Planning an Audit</i>	9.04–05
<i>315, Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement</i>	7.04, 7.05, 8.02, 9.33, 9.35, 9.38–39, 9.41, 9.44, 9.49, 9.62, 9.68, 12.04, 12.10
<i>330, Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained</i>	9.48, 9.68, 9.73, 10.01, 10.05–06, 10.59
<i>450, Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit</i>	9.32, 9.84

<i>Title</i>	<i>Paragraphs</i>
500, <i>Audit Evidence</i>	11.17
501, <i>Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items</i>	11.09
505, <i>External Confirmations</i>	10.09–.10
530, <i>Audit Sampling</i>	9.81
540, <i>Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures</i>	7.03, 10.36
550, <i>Related Parties</i>	11.10
560, <i>Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts</i>	10.58, 11.24
570, <i>The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern</i>	11.17
580, <i>Written Representations</i>	10.65
600, <i>Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)</i>	11.08, 11.11, 11.13
620, <i>Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist</i>	10.02, 10.40
700, <i>Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements</i>	9.94, Appendix I
705, <i>Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report</i>	11.09
706, <i>Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report</i>	10.61
725, <i>Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole</i>	10.61, 11.18
800, <i>Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks</i>	11.29

F

<i>Title</i>	<i>Paragraphs</i>
FASB ASC	
210, <i>Balance Sheet</i>	6.01, 6.06
210-10	6.01, 6.08–.09, 6.16, 6.34
225, <i>Income Statement</i>	

<i>Title</i>	<i>Paragraphs</i>
225-20	3.20
250, <i>Accounting Changes and Error Corrections</i>	2.25, 5.14, 5.35, 6.27
250-10	5.36, 6.27, Appendix F
275, <i>Risks and Uncertainties</i>	6.38
275-10	6.38
310, <i>Impairment of a Loan</i>	
310-10	6.36–.37, 6.39
310-40	6.36
320, <i>Equity Method Investments</i>	
320-10	3.07, 6.08
323, <i>Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures</i>	3.03, 6.26
323-10	3.03–.06, 3.08, 3.17, 3.20, 3.22, 3.37, 3.44, 3.47–.48, 4.02
323-30	3.37, 3.44
325, <i>Investments—Other</i>	
325-20	3.06, 3.20, 3.48
350, <i>Intangibles—Goodwill and Other</i>	5.35
350-20	5.38–.40, 5.46
350-30	5.47–.49
360, <i>Property, Plant, and Equipment</i>	5.36, 5.49, 8.24
360-10	5.32–.37, 5.48–.49, 5.52
410, <i>Asset Retirement and Environmental Obligations</i>	
410-20	5.50–.55
410-30	5.52
450, <i>Contingencies</i>	6.42, 8.26
450-30	6.31
470, <i>Debt</i>	
470-10	6.09
480, <i>Redeemable Financial Instruments</i>	5.57, 5.59
480-10	5.57–.58
605, <i>Revenue Recognition</i>	

<i>Title</i>	<i>Paragraphs</i>
605-25	2.19
605-35	1.01, 1.09, 1.35, 2.01–.07, 2.09–.12, 2.16–.18, 2.20–.27, 6.10, 6.19–.20, 6.27, 6.29, 6.31, 6.38, 10.03, 10.15, 10.39, 10.42–.45, 10.47, 10.53–.54, 12.21–.22, Appendix D, Appendix E
<i>715, Compensation—Retirement Benefits</i>	
715-80	6.42–.51
<i>720, Other Expenses</i>	
720-15	2.20, 6.26
<i>740, Income Taxes</i>	5.63, 5.65
740-10	4.10, 5.64–.65, 6.18, 6.35
<i>805, Business Combinations</i>	3.29
805-50	3.08
<i>810, Consolidations</i>	3.05, 4.04
810-10	3.05, 3.20, 3.24–.28, 3.30–.31, 3.35–.36, 3.39, 3.43–.44, 3.48, 4.04–.06
810-20	3.39, 3.41, 3.43
<i>815, Derivatives and Hedging</i>	
815-10	5.28
815-45	6.40
<i>820, Fair Value Measurements</i>	5.01, 5.18–.19, 5.25
820-10	3.18, 5.02–.13, 5.15–.22, 5.27
<i>825, Fair Value Option</i>	5.01
825-10	4.01, 5.10, 5.19, 5.28, 5.31, 6.39
<i>845, Nonmonetary Transactions</i>	
845-10	3.10

<i>Title</i>	<i>Paragraphs</i>
850, <i>Related Party Disclosures</i>	11.02, 11.10
850-10	4.09, 4.10–.11, 6.34–.35
910, <i>Contractors—Construction</i>	6.26
910-10	1.07–.08
910-20	2.28–.30
910-235	6.03
910-310	6.04, 6.12, 6.32–.33
910-330	2.31
910-360	2.31
910-405	6.05, 6.23
912, <i>Contractors—Government</i>	
912-20	2.18
912-405	6.24
946, <i>Financial Services Investment Companies</i>	5.26
FASB ASU No. 2011-04, <i>Fair Value Measurement (Topic 820): Amendments to Achieve Common Fair Value Measurement and Disclosure Requirements in U.S. GAAP and IFRSs</i>	5.02

I

<i>Title</i>	<i>Paragraphs</i>
IASB	Appendix K
IFRS	Appendix K

P

<i>Title</i>	<i>Paragraphs</i>
PCAOB AS No. 5, <i>An Audit of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting That Is Integrated with An Audit of Financial Statements</i>	9.02

Subject Index

A

ACCOUNTING CONSIDERATIONS. *See also* specific topics

- Asset retirement obligations 5.50–56
- Fair value measurements 5.01–31
- Financial vs. income tax accounting 5.60–67
- Impairment of long-lived assets 5.32–49
- On job site 8.11–14
- Joint ventures 3.01–49
- Mandatorily redeemable stock 5.57–59

ACCOUNTING ESTIMATES. *See estimates*

ACCOUNTING METHODS

- Accrual method of accounting 5.68, 5.71
- Cash method of accounting 5.68–70
- Completed-contract. *See* completed-contract method of accounting
- Financial statement disclosures 6.26
- Income recognition 10.42–48
- Income tax purposes 5.68–70
- Joint ventures 3.03–07, 3.20–21
- Percentage-of-completion. *See* percentage-of-completion method of accounting

ACCOUNTS PAYABLE 10.29

ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE

- Auditing procedures 10.08–26
- Cancellation provisions 10.21–23
- Collectability 10.14, 10.18, 10.25–26
- Contract guarantees 10.20
- Contract scope changes 10.19
- Financial statement presentation 6.29–35
- Generally 10.08–11
- Postponement provisions 10.21–22, 10.24
- Retentions 10.13–14
- Sample confirmation request Exhibit 10-1 at 10.10
- Unbilled receivables 10.12
- Unproved change orders and claims 10.15–18

ACCRETION EXPENSE, DEFINED 5.56

ACCRUAL METHOD OF

ACCOUNTING 5.68, 5.71

ACTIVE MARKET, DEFINED 5.19

ADVANCES 3.47, 6.23–24

AFFILIATED ENTITIES

- Auditing considerations 11.02–10
- Defined 4.01
- Financial reporting 4.01–11
- Financial statement presentation 6.26
- Joint ventures 11.03–09
- Partnerships 11.05–07
- Related party transactions 11.10

AFFILIATES, DEFINED 4.08

AMORTIZATION, INTANGIBLE

ASSETS 5.49–51

ARM'S-LENGTH TRANSACTIONS 3.18

ASSERTION LEVEL, IDENTIFY RISKS OF

MATERIAL MISSTATEMENT DUE TO FRAUD 9.23–24, 12.14

ASSERTIONS

- Auditing procedures 10.13
- Categories of Table at 9.33
- Generally 9.33–34

ASSET GROUP, DEFINED 5.32

ASSET RETIREMENT COST 5.53

ASSET RETIREMENT

OBLIGATIONS 5.50–56

ASSETS

- Contract-related assets 6.10
- Current assets 6.08, 6.10
- Fair value measurements. *See* fair value measurements
- Impairment of long-lived assets 5.32–49
- Intangible assets 5.38–49
- Monetary vs. nonmonetary 3.10
- Nonfinancial assets 5.08–09

ATTITUDES AND RATIONALIZATION, AS

FRAUD RISK FACTOR 12.02, 12.05, 12.09, 12.12

AUDIT DOCUMENTATION 9.87–96,

12.35–37

AUDIT EVIDENCE

- Assertions used in obtaining 9.33–34
- Evaluation of 11.17
- Interim periods 10.05
- Material misstatements due to fraud 12.29

AUDIT FILES, ASSEMBLY 9.92

AUDIT PLANNING

- Generally 9.03–06
- Material misstatements due to fraud 12.11
- Materiality 9.25

AUDIT RISK 9.20–32

- Defined 9.20
- Detection risk 9.21
- Material misstatements 9.20–32

AUDIT TEAMS, DISCUSSION OF FRAUD

RISKS 9.40, 12.04–09, 12.35

AUDITING CONSIDERATIONS 9.01–34,

11.01–30

- Affiliated entities 11.02–10
- Assertions used in obtaining audit evidence 9.33–34
- Audit evidence 9.33–34, 10.05, 12.29

AUDITING CONSIDERATIONS—continued

- Audit of internal controls integrated with audit of financial statements 9.02
- Audit planning 9.03–06, 12.11
- Audit risk 9.20–24
- Auditor's communications among team members regarding fraud 12.05
- Auditor's communications with those charged with governance ... 9.07–19, 11.25, 12.34
- Auditor's reports 9.93, 11.17, 11.28–30, Appendix I
- Capitalization 11.14–16
- Cash flow 11.14–16
- Control deficiencies 9.97–101
- Documentation 9.87–96, 12.35–37
- Documenting auditor's consideration of fraud 12.35–37
- Focus of audit 7.02–07
- Generally 7.01
- Governmental prequalification reporting 11.28–30
- Group audits engagements 11.11–13
- Guidance, scope of 7.08, 9.01–02
- Internal audit function 8.28–29
- Internal control, auditor's communication related to 9.18, 11.25
- Joint ventures 11.03–09
- Legal issues 11.26–30
- Material misstatement risk assessment 9.61–83
- Materiality 9.25–32
- Partnerships 11.05–07
- Procedures 10.01–65
- Regulatory issues 11.26–30
- Reporting on supplementary information in relation to financial statements as a whole 11.18–24, Appendix J
- Scope of guidance in this guide 7.08
- Understanding the entity, its environment, and its internal control 9.35–60

AUDITING PROCEDURES 10.01–65

- Accounts receivable 10.08–26
- Backlog information on signed contract and letters of intent 10.60–64
- Contract costs 10.32–38
- Contract-related liabilities 10.27–31
- Further audit procedures 9.68–83
- Generally 10.01
- Income recognition 10.39–59
- Interim audit procedures 10.05–06
- Job site visits 10.02–07
- Management representations 10.65

AUDITING STANDARDS

- Clarity mapping and summarization of changes Appendix B
- Guidance updates Appendix A

AUDITING STANDARD'S BOARD (ASB)

- CLARITY PROJECT Appendix B

AUDITORS

- Audit teams' discussion of fraud risks 9.40, 12.04–09, 12.35
- Auditor reports 9.93, 11.17, 11.28–30, Appendix I
- Auditor's response to misstatements that may be result of fraud 12.30–33
- Auditor's response to risk assessment 12.25–28, 12.36
- Communication with those charged with governance 9.07–19, 11.25, 12.34
- Professional judgment 9.26, 9.37, 9.66
- Professional skepticism 12.03, 12.05
- Risk assessment, design and implement responses to 9.68–83
- Withdrawal from engagement 12.33

B**BACK CHARGES 2.21–22, 8.26****BACKLOG 6.28, 10.60–64****BALANCE SHEET CLASSIFICATION. See classified balance sheets****BANK LOANS 1.23, 1.26****BID BONDS 1.13, 1.14****BID SPREAD, AUDIT RISK FACTORS Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24****BIDDING**

- Auditor's consideration of fraud 12.09
- Controls 8.04–07
- Front-end loading 1.29–30
- Governmental prequalification reporting 11.28
- Preparation of bids 1.39–45

BILLING

- Excess billings, balance sheet classification 6.17
- Industry practices 1.27–28
- Procedures 8.15–18
- Progress billing 1.26, 1.45

BONDING 1.13–19, 12.09**BONDS**

- Bid bonds 1.13, 1.14
- Labor-and-materials bonds 1.16
- Payment bonds 1.13, 1.16
- Performance bonds 1.13, 1.15

BOOT 3.10**BUREAU OF ECONOMIC ANALYSIS 1.02****BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT,****FEATURES OF 1.06–37**

- Billing 1.27–28
- Bonding and surety underwriting process 1.13–19
- Characteristics common to contractors 1.07–08
- Contract modifications and changes 1.11–12

BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT, FEATURES**OF—continued**

- Contract types 1.09–11
- Financing considerations 1.22–30
- Front-end loading 1.29–30
- Generally 1.06
- Joint ventures 1.31–34
- Lien, rights of 1.20–21
- Project ownership 1.20–21
- Reporting 1.35–37
- Surety underwriting process 1.17–19

C**CANCELLATION PROVISIONS 10.21–23****CAPITAL CONTRIBUTIONS, JOINT VENTURES 3.08–15****CAPITAL (WORKING) 1.23–24****CAPITALIZATION 11.14–16****CARRYING AMOUNTS, DEFINED 3.31****CASH FLOW**

- Auditing considerations 11.14–16
- Present value techniques 5.16–17

CASH METHOD OF ACCOUNTING 5.68, 5.69–70**CHANGE ORDERS**

- Accounts receivable 10.15–18
- Fixed-price contracts 1.09
- Impact of 2.13–14
- Unapproved 10.15–18

CHANGES

- To accounting estimate Appendix F
- To construction-type contracts 1.11
- To contract scope 10.19
- To text, schedule of Appendix M

CHattel LOANS 1.23**CLAIMS**

- Audit risk factors Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24
- Contract costs attributable to 2.19
- Contract modifications and changes 1.12
- Impact on revenue, performance of construction-type contracts 2.15–16
- Internal controls 8.26
- Unapproved 10.15–18

CLARITY PROJECT, AUDITING STANDARD'S BOARD Appendix B**CLASSIFIED BALANCE SHEETS 6.01–18**

- Defined 6.01
- Distinguished from unclassified balance sheets 6.02, 6.03
- Generally 6.01–05
- Guidelines 6.06–18

CLOSELY-HELD ENTITIES, FINANCIAL REPORTING 4.02**COLLECTABILITY**

- Of accounts receivable 10.14, 10.18, 10.25–26
- Auditors reports on financial statements 11.17

COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS 4.04–06**COMBINING CONTRACTS 10.54, Appendix E****COMMUNICATION**

- Effective two-way 9.08–09, 9.12–13
- Inadequate 9.13
- With person(s) with management responsibilities 9.11, 9.17
- Regarding financial statement audit 9.14
- Regarding uncorrected misstatements ... 9.16
- Related to internal controls 9.18, 11.25
- On significant findings or issues 9.15
- With those charged with governance 9.07–19, 11.25, 12.34

COMPLETED-CONTRACT METHOD OF ACCOUNTING

- Acceptability of 10.43–46
- Auditing procedures ... 10.43–46, 10.52–53
- Auditor's consideration of fraud 12.22
- Income recognition 10.52–53
- Performance of construction-type contracts 2.07–08
- Profit recognition 10.33
- Use of 2.07

COMPLETION OF CONTRACT, MEASUREMENT OF PROGRESS TOWARD 2.09–10**COMPONENTS, GROUP AUDIT ENGAGEMENTS 11.12****CONDITIONAL ASSET RETIREMENT OBLIGATION, DEFINED 5.51****CONFIRMATION REQUESTS 10.27**

- Sample Exhibit 10-1 at 10.10
- To subcontractors Exhibit 10-2 at 10.27
- Unbilled receivables 10.12

CONSIDERATION OF FRAUD IN FINANCIAL STATEMENT AUDIT. See fraud in financial statement audit**CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS 4.06****CONSOLIDATIONS 3.05, 3.20****CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTORS**

- Characteristics 1.03
- Described 1.04–05
- Identify risks of material misstatement due to fraud 12.15

CONSTRUCTION INDUSTRY

- BACKGROUND 1.01–52
- Business environment features 1.06–37
- Generally 1.01
- Methods of operation, variations in 1.51

CONSTRUCTION INDUSTRY**BACKGROUND—continued**

- Nature of industry 1.02–05
- Project management 1.52
- Significance of industry 1.02–05
- Size of operations, variations in 1.51
- Typical industry operations 1.38–50

CONSTRUCTION INDUSTRY**OPERATIONS 1.38–50**

- Cost estimates and bids 1.39–45
- Entering into contract 1.46
- Generally 1.38
- Project planning and initiation 1.47–50
- Significant risk identification 9.67
- Understanding the entity, its environment, and its internal control 9.41
- Variations in methods 1.51

CONSTRUCTION MANAGEMENT ENTITIES.

See also management 1.48

CONSTRUCTION MANAGER,

DEFINED 1.04

CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS

- Backlogs 6.28
- Ownership 1.20–21
- Planning and initiating 1.47–50
- Project management 1.47–48, 1.52

CONSTRUCTION-TYPE CONTRACTS. See**also specific topics**

- Assets related to 6.10
- Audit risk factors and types of contracts Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24
- Cancellation provisions 10.21–23
- Combining contracts 10.54
- Defined 2.02
- Entering into 1.46
- Evaluation for profitability 8.08–10
- Guarantees 10.20
- Liabilities related to 6.10, 10.27–31
- Modification and changes to 1.11
- Performance 2.01–31
- Postponement provisions . . . 10.21–22, 10.24
- Revenues 8.22–23
- Review of 9.42–43
- Scope changes 10.19
- Target penalties and incentives 12.15
- Troublesome or unusual contracts 10.03–04
- Types 1.09

CONTRACT COSTS

- Accounting for 2.18
- Auditing procedures 10.32–38
- Auditor's consideration of fraud 12.09, 12.11
- Back charge adjustments 2.21–22
- Controls 8.19–21
- Cost attributable to claims 2.19
- Costs incurred to date 10.35
- Equipment and small tools 2.28–31

CONTRACT COSTS—continued

- Estimated cost to complete 2.23, 10.36–38
- Financial statement presentation 6.26
- Income determination 2.17–23
- Precontract costs 2.20

CONTRACT-RELATED ASSETS,

DEFINED 6.10

CONTRACT-RELATED LIABILITIES 6.10,

..... 10.27–31

CONTRACT REVENUES 8.22–23**CONTRACTS, GENERALLY. See**

construction-type contracts

CONTROL ACTIVITIES, COMMON. See also

internal controls 8.21

CONTROL ENVIRONMENT 9.50**CORPORATE JOINT VENTURES,**

MEASUREMENT AND PRESENTATION OF

INVESTMENTS 3.22–24

CORRUPTION 12.07, 12.09**COST APPROACH, FAIR VALUE**

MEASUREMENT 5.12

COST ESTIMATES, PREPARING 1.39–45**COST METHOD OF ACCOUNTING 3.20****COST-PLUS CONTRACTS 1.09, 6.23,**

..... 10.35

COST RECORDS 11.17**COST REPORTING SYSTEM 1.49, 8.20****COST TO COMPLETE, ESTIMATED 2.23,**

..... 10.36–38

COST-TO-COST METHOD, INCOME EARNED

COMPUTATION Appendix E

COST-TYPE CONTRACTS 1.09**COSTS. See contract costs****COSTS INCURRED TO DATE 10.35****CREDIT LINES 1.24****CREDITORS, ACCOUNTING BY, FOR**

IMPAIRMENT OF LOANS 6.36–37

CURRENT ASSETS, DEFINED 6.08, 6.10**CURRENT LIABILITIES, DEFINED 6.10****CUSTOMERS (OWNERS)**

- Advances on contracts 1.28
- As audit risk factor Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24
- Performance and payment bond requirements 1.08
- Rights of lien 1.20–21

D**DAVIS-BACON ACT 12.15****DEFERRED COSTS 6.26****DEFERRED INCOME TAXES 6.18**

DERIVATIVES	6.40
DESIGN-BUILD CONTRACTS	1.10
DETECTION RISK	9.21
DISBURSEMENTS, TIMING OF	1.45
DISCLOSURES	
· Accounting estimate changes	Appendix F
· Backlog on existing contracts	6.28
· Fair value measurement	5.27, 5.31
· Financial statement presentation	6.25–49
· Joint ventures	3.48–49
· Multiemployer pension plan	6.41–49
· Receivables	6.29–35
· Related party transactions	6.34–35
· Revised estimates	6.27
· Risks and uncertainties	6.38–39
· Segregating contracts, billings and cost	6.22
· Significant accounting policies	6.26
DOCUMENTATION, AUDIT	9.87–96, 12.35–37
DOUBLE-BREASTING, DEFINED	12.06

E

EARNED INCOME	
· Computation of	2.24, Appendix D, Appendix E
· Review for recognition	10.55–57
EARNED REVENUE, REVIEW OF ...	10.55–57
EARNINGS MANAGEMENT, RISK OF MATERIAL MISSTATEMENT DUE TO FRAUD	12.05
EMPHASIS OF MATTER, GOVERNMENTAL PREQUALIFICATION REPORTING	11.29
EMPLOYEE LOYALTY, FRAUD OPPORTUNITIES AND EVIDENCE	12.09
ENTERING INTO THE CONTRACT	1.46
ENTITY AND ITS ENVIRONMENT, UNDERSTANDING. See understanding the entity, its environment, and its internal control	
ENTRY PRICE, FAIR VALUE	5.06
ENVIRONMENTAL REMEDIATION LIABILITY	5.52
EQUIPMENT	
· Auditor's consideration of fraud	12.09, 12.20
· Balance sheet classification	6.15
· Bidding impact	1.42
· Controls	8.24–25
· Costs, performance of construction-type contracts	2.28–31
EQUITY METHOD OF ACCOUNTING ...	3.04, 3.20

ESTIMATES

· Controls	8.04–07
· Estimated cost to complete	2.23, 10.36–38
· Key estimates for construction industry	12.23
· Markup	1.44
· Preparation	1.39–45
· Review for bias, management override of controls	12.28
· Revisions	2.25, 6.27

EVIDENCE. See audit evidence

EXCESS BILLINGS, BALANCE SHEET CLASSIFICATION	6.17
EXCHANGE OR EXCHANGE TRANSACTION, DEFINED	3.10
EXIT PRICE, FAIR VALUE	5.06
EXPANDED EQUITY METHOD OF ACCOUNTING	3.20
EXPECTED CASH FLOWS, DEFINED	5.17
EXTENT OF PROGRESS, MEASURES OF	2.10–11, 2.27

F

FAIR VALUE HIERARCHY	5.18–21
FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENTS	5.01–31
· Asset retirement obligations	5.50–56
· Assets, application to	5.08–09
· Decrease in market activity	5.22–23
· Definitions	5.04–06
· Disclosures	5.27, 5.31
· Fair value hierarchy	5.18–21
· Fair value option	5.28–31
· Generally	5.01–03
· Investments in entities that calculate net asset value per share	5.22, 5.26
· Joint ventures	3.17
· Liabilities, application to	5.10–11
· Mandatorily redeemable stock	5.57–59
· Present value techniques	5.15–17
· Quoted prices provided by third parties	5.22, 5.25
· Transactions that are not orderly	5.22, 5.24
· Valuation techniques	5.12–14
FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING, VS. INCOME TAX ACCOUNTING	5.60–67
FINANCIAL REPORTING	
· By affiliated entities	4.01–11
· Business environment, features of ...	1.35–37
FINANCIAL STATEMENT AUDIT, FRAUD IN	12.01–37
· Audit evidence evaluation	12.29
· Audit risk factors	Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24
· Audit team's discussion of risk	9.40, 12.04–09, 12.35

FINANCIAL STATEMENT AUDIT, FRAUD**IN—continued**

- Auditor's response to misstatements that may be result of fraud 12.30–33
- Auditor's response to risk assessment 12.25–28, 12.36
- Communicating auditor's responsibilities regarding financial statement audit 9.14
- Communication about 12.34
- Documenting auditor's consideration of fraud 12.35–37
- Fraud risk factors 12.02, 12.05, 12.09, 12.12–13
- Generally 12.01–02
- Identification of risk 12.10–23
- Improper revenue recognition 12.16–22, 12.37
- Key estimates 12.23
- Management override of controls 12.05, 12.28
- Professional skepticism, importance of exercising 12.03, 12.05
- Risk assessment after evaluation of entity's programs and controls 12.24, 12.31

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS 6.01–51

- Audit of, integrated with audit of internal controls 9.02
- Audit risk factors Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24
- Auditors reports on 11.17
- Balance sheet classification 6.01–18
- Combined financial statements 4.04–06
- Disclosures 6.25–49
- Fraud in audit of 12.01–37
- Guidelines for classified balance sheets 6.06–18
- Impairment of loan, accounting by creditors for 6.36–37
- Joint ventures 3.48–49
- Mandatorily redeemable stock 5.57–59
- Multiemployer pension plan disclosures 6.41–49
- Offsetting or netting amounts 6.19–24
- Reporting on supplementary information in relation to financial statements as a whole 11.18–24, Appendix J
- Sample for completed contractors Appendix H
- Sample for percentage contractors Appendix G
- Separate financial statement presentation of members of affiliated group 4.07–11
- Weather derivatives, accounting for 6.40

FINANCING OPTIONS 1.22–30**FIXED-PRICE CONTRACTS 1.09, 10.59****FIXED-PRICE CONTRACTS IN PROCESS Exhibits 10-3 and 10-4 at 10.59****FRAUD**

- In financial statement audit 12.01–37
- Fraud risk factors 12.02, 12.05, 12.08–09, 12.12–13
- Material misstatements due to fraud 12.01–37

FRONT-END LOADING 1.29–30, 11.15**G****GAAP. See generally accepted auditing principles****GAAS. See generally accepted auditing standards****GENERAL CONTRACTOR, DEFINED 1.04****GENERAL PARTNERSHIPS 3.37–38****GENERALLY ACCEPTED ACCOUNTING STANDARDS (GAAS), ESTIMATED COST TO COMPLETE 10.36****GENERALLY ACCEPTED AUDITING PRINCIPLES (GAAP)**

- Fair value 3.17, 5.02–03
- Joint ventures 3.46

GENERALLY ACCEPTED AUDITING STANDARDS (GAAS)**ASB CLARITY PROJECT Appendix B**

- Audit documentation 9.87–88
- Audit planning 9.03, 9.05
- Audit risk 9.22
- Auditing procedures, accounts receivable 10.09
- Auditor's reports on financial statements 11.17
- Estimated cost to complete 10.36
- Governmental prequalification reporting, auditing 11.29
- Illegal acts by clients 11.27
- Purpose 9.01

GOODWILL 5.38–46**GOODWILL IMPAIRMENT TESTING 5.40–46****GOVERNMENT CONTRACTS, TERMINATION OF 6.24****GOVERNMENT-SPONSORED FINANCING PROGRAMS 1.25****GOVERNMENTAL PREQUALIFICATION REPORTING, AUDITING 11.28–30****GROSS PROFIT MARGINS 10.58–59, 12.11****GROUP AUDIT, DEFINED 11.11****GROUP AUDIT ENGAGEMENTS 11.11–13****GROUP ENGAGEMENT PARTNER 11.12****GUARANTEES 10.20****GUIDELINES FOR CLASSIFIED BALANCE SHEETS 6.06–18**

H

- HIGHEST AND BEST USE, FAIR VALUE** 5.08–09
- HIGHWAY CONSTRUCTION** 1.42

I

- ILLEGAL ACTS BY CLIENTS** 11.27
- IMPAIRMENT, DEFINED** 5.32
- IMPAIRMENT OF LOANS, ACCOUNTING BY CREDITORS FOR** 6.36–37
- IMPAIRMENT OF LONG-LIVED ASSETS** 5.32–49
- Goodwill 5.38–46
 - Intangibles 5.38–49
 - Property, plant, and equipment 5.32–37
- IMPROPER REVENUE RECOGNITION** 12.16–22, 12.37
- IN-SUBSTANCE COMMON STOCK, DEFINED** 3.03
- INCENTIVES, AS FRAUD RISK FACTOR** 12.02, 12.05, 12.09, 12.12
- INCOME APPROACH, FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENT** 5.12
- INCOME DETERMINATION** 2.12–23
- Contract costs 10.33
 - Cost elements 2.17–23
 - Revenue 2.12–16
- INCOME EARNED.** *See earned income*
- INCOME RECOGNITION** 10.39–59
- Acceptability of accounting methods 10.42–48
 - Combining contracts 10.54
 - Completed-contract method 10.52–53
 - Earned income review 10.55–57
 - Fixed-price contracts in process Exhibits 10-3 and 10-4 at 10.59
 - Generally 10.39–41
 - Gross profit margin analysis 10.58–59
 - Percentage-of-completion method 10.49–51
 - Segmenting contracts 10.54
- INCOME TAXES**
- Accounting for vs. financial accounting 5.60–67
 - Accounting methods 5.68–71
 - Deferred income taxes, balance sheet classification 6.18
 - Reporting 1.35–37
- INDUSTRY BACKGROUND.** *See construction industry background*
- INDUSTRY OPERATIONS.** *See construction industry operations*

INFORMATION

- Backlog information on signed contracts, review of 10.60–64
 - Obtaining information needed to identify risks of material misstatement due to fraud 12.10–13
 - Sources of auditing Appendix L
 - Supplementary information, reporting on 11.18–24, Appendix J
- INTANGIBLE ASSETS** 5.38–49
- INTEGRATED AUDITS**
- Affiliated entities 11.08
 - Job site visits 10.06
 - Management representations 10.65
- INTERIM AUDIT PROCEDURES** 10.05–06
- INTERNAL AUDITS** 8.28–29
- INTERNAL CONTROLS** 8.01–29
- As audit focus 7.06
 - Audit of, integrated with audit of financial statements 9.02
 - Auditor's communications related to 9.18, 11.25
 - Back charges 8.26
 - Bidding 8.04–07
 - Billing procedures 8.15–18
 - Claims 8.26
 - Common control activities 8.21
 - Components of 9.49
 - Contract costs 8.19–21
 - Contract evaluation 8.08–10
 - Contract revenues 8.22–23
 - Control activities 9.54–57
 - Control environment 9.50
 - Deficiencies 9.97–101
 - Defined 9.44
 - Equipment 8.24–25
 - Estimates 8.04–07
 - Evaluating design of a control 9.46
 - Extras 8.26
 - Generally 8.01–03
 - Information technology use 9.53
 - Interim audit procedures 10.05
 - Internal audit function 8.28–29
 - Job site 8.11–14
 - Joint ventures 8.27
 - Management override of controls 12.05, 12.28
 - Monitoring controls 9.58–60
 - Project administration 8.08–10
 - Retentions 10.13
 - Risk assessment process 9.47, 9.51–52
 - Test of operating effectiveness 9.48, 9.76–79
 - Tests of controls 9.74–81
 - Understanding the entity and its environment and 9.44–60
- INVENTORY** 2.31, 12.09

INVESTMENTS

- In entities that calculate net asset value per share 5.22, 5.26
- In joint ventures 3.08–15, 3.20–44, 3.47, 6.14, 6.26
- Presentation of 3.20–21

INVESTORS, AS AUDIT RISK

FACTOR **Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24**

INVOICES, AS CONTRACT-RELATED

LIABILITIES **10.28–30**

J**JOB SITES**

- Accounting and controls 8.11–14
- Visits, auditing procedures 10.02–07

JOINT VENTURES

- Accounting considerations 3.01–49
- Auditing considerations for affiliated entities 11.03–09
- Controls 8.27
- Corporate joint ventures 3.22–24
- Defined 1.31
- Design-build contracts 1.10
- Double-breasting 12.06
- Fair value 3.17
- Features of business environment ... 1.31–34
- Financial statements, disclosures in 3.48–49
- Initial consolidation when earlier consolidation lacked information 3.30
- Investments 6.14, 6.26
- Loss recognition 3.13–14
- Losses in excess of venturer's investment, loans, and advances 3.47
- Measurement and presentation of investments 3.20–44
- Ownership forms 1.32
- Partnerships 3.37–43
- Percentage ownership, determining 3.45
- Profit recognition 3.11–12, 3.19
- Public-private partnership (P3) 1.34
- Rights and obligations 1.33
- Sales to a venture 3.16–19
- Subsidiaries 3.23–24
- Undivided interests in ventures 3.44

JOINT VENTURES, ACCOUNTING

CONSIDERATIONS **3.01–49**

- Capital contributions 3.08–15
- Corporate joint ventures 3.22–24
- Defined 3.01
- GAAP conformance 3.46
- General partnerships 3.37–38
- Generally 3.01–02
- Income tax vs. financial accounting 5.66
- Initial measurements of investments in 3.08–15
- Limited partnerships 3.39–43
- Measurement and presentation of investments 3.20–44

JOINT VENTURES, ACCOUNTING**CONSIDERATIONS—continued**

- Methods 3.03–07, 3.20–21
- Ownership forms 3.02
- Partnerships 3.37–43
- Sales to a venture 3.16–19
- Undivided interests in ventures 3.44
- Variable interest entities 3.25–36

JOURNAL ENTRIES, TEST APPROPRIATENESS

OF **12.28**

JV. See joint ventures

K

"KNOW-HOW, "CONTRIBUTION OF **3.15**

L

LABOR-AND-MATERIALS BONDS **1.16**

LABOR-HOURS METHOD, INCOME EARNED COMPUTATION **Appendix E**

LEASED PROPERTY **5.52**

LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS

- Auditing 11.26–30
- Government prequalification reporting 11.28–30
- State statutes affecting construction contractors 11.26–27

LEGAL OBLIGATION, DEFINED **5.51**

LETTERS OF INTENT, REVIEW OF BACKLOG INFORMATION ON **10.60–64**

LIABILITIES

- Contract-related liabilities ... 6.10, 10.27–31
- Fair value measurements 5.10–11
- Financial statement presentation 6.05
- Monetary vs. nonmonetary liabilities 3.10

LIEN LAWS **11.26**

LIENS **1.20–21**

LIMITED PARTNERSHIPS **3.39–43**

LINES OF CREDIT **1.24**

LIQUIDITY, FINANCIAL STATEMENT PRESENTATION **6.03**

LOANS

- Bank loans 1.23, 1.26
- Impairment of, accounting by creditors for 6.36–37
- Joint ventures, losses in excess of 3.47
- Risks and uncertainties, financial statement disclosure 6.39

LOCATION OF PROJECT, AS AUDIT RISK FACTOR **Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24**

LOSS CONTRACT, INCOME EARNED COMPUTATION **Appendix E**

LOSSES

- Anticipated losses on contracts 2.26, 10.41, 12.09
- Capitalization and cash flow 11.15
- Income earned computation Appendix E
- Income tax accounting vs. financial accounting 5.66
- Joint ventures 3.13–14, 3.47

LUMP-SUM CONTRACTS. See fixed-price contracts**M****MANAGEMENT**

- Agreement from, on supplementary information in relation to financial statements as a whole 11.21–22
- Communication about possible fraud 9.07–19, 11.25, 12.34
- Communication with person(s) with management responsibilities 9.11, 9.17
- Construction management entities 1.48
- Construction managers 1.04
- Construction project management 1.47–48, 1.52
- Income earned computation Appendix E
- Override of controls 12.05, 12.28
- Representations by 10.65

MANDATORILY REDEEMABLE**STOCK 5.57–59****MARKET ACTIVITY DECREASES, AND FAIR VALUE 5.22–23****MARKET APPROACH, FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENT 5.12****MARKET PARTICIPANTS, ARM'S LENGTH TRANSACTIONS 3.18****MARKUP 1.44****MATERIAL COSTS, AS AUDIT RISK FACTOR Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24****MATERIAL MISSTATEMENT DUE TO FRAUD**

- Audit risk factors Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24
- Fraud risk factors 12.02, 12.05, 12.09, 12.12–13
- Internal control deficiencies 9.97–101

MATERIAL MISSTATEMENT RISK ASSESSMENT

- After evaluation of entity's programs and controls 12.24, 12.31
- As audit focus 7.04–05, 7.07
- Auditor's response to 12.25–28, 12.36
- Design and implement responses 9.68–83
- Evaluation of misstatements 9.84–86
- Further audit procedures 9.68–83
- Generally 9.61–63
- Job site visits and interim audit procedures 10.06
- Significant risk identification 9.64–67

MATERIAL MISSTATEMENTS

- Audit risk considerations 9.20–32
- Fraud due to 12.01–37
- Performance materiality 9.30
- Risk assessment 7.04–05, 7.07, 9.61–83

MATERIAL MISSTATEMENTS DUE TO**FRAUD 12.01–37**

- Audit evidence evaluation 12.29
- Audit team's discussion of risks 9.40, 12.04–09, 12.35
- Auditor's response to misstatements that may be result of fraud 12.30–33
- Auditor's response to risk assessment 12.25–28, 12.36
- Communication about 12.34
- Conditions present 12.02
- Documenting auditor's consideration of fraud 12.35–37
- Generally 12.01–02
- Identification of risk 12.10–23
- Improper revenue recognition 12.16–22, 12.37
- Key estimates 12.23
- Management override of controls 12.05, 12.28
- Professional skepticism importance 12.03, 12.05
- Risk assessment after evaluation of entity's programs and controls 12.24
- Types of misstatements 12.02

MATERIAL PURCHASES AT JOB SITES, AUTHORIZED 8.13**MATERIALITY**

- Auditing considerations 9.25–32
- Determination 9.25–28
- Performance 9.30
- Performance materiality 9.30
- Qualitative aspects 9.31–32
- Revised 9.29

MEASURES OF EXTENT OF**PROGRESS 2.10–11, 2.27****MILLER ACT OF 1935 1.21****MISSTATEMENTS. See also material misstatements**

- Evaluation 9.84–86
- From fraudulent financial reporting. See also material misstatements, fraud due to 12.02
- From misappropriation of assets 12.02
- Uncorrected 9.16, 9.27, 9.85–86

MONETARY ASSETS AND LIABILITIES, DEFINED 3.10**MONITORING**

- Billing procedures 8.18
- Internal control 9.58–60

MORE LIKELY THAN NOT, USE OF TERM 5.33

MOST ADVANTAGEOUS MARKET, DEFINED	5.04
MULTIEMPLOYER PLAN DISCLOSURES	
· Pension plans	6.41–49
· For plans that provide postretirement benefits other than pensions	6.50–51

N

NET ASSET VALUES PER SHARE, FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENTS	5.22, 5.26
NONFINANCIAL ASSETS, FAIR VALUE OF	5.08–09
NONMONETARY ASSETS AND LIABILITIES, DEFINED	3.10
NONROUTINE TRANSACTIONS, SIGNIFICANT RISK RELATED TO	9.65
NONUNION CONTRACTORS, RISKS OF MATERIAL MISSTATEMENT DUE TO FRAUD	12.15
NORTH AMERICAN INDUSTRY CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM (NAICS)	1.02
NOT-FOR-PROFIT ENTITIES	5.64
NOTES RECEIVABLE	4.10, 6.29–35

O

OFFSETTING OR NETTING AMOUNTS	
· Financial statements	6.19–24
· Percentage-of-completion method of accounting	6.20–21
ON-SITE PAYMENTS, JOB SITE	8.12
OPERATING CYCLE	6.07, 6.26
OPERATIONS. See construction industry operations	
OPINIONS	
· Auditor's communications related to internal controls	9.18, 11.25
· On supplementary information in relation to financial statements as a whole	11.20, 11.23
OPPORTUNITY, AS FRAUD RISK FACTOR	12.02, 12.05, 12.09, 12.12
OTHER-MATTER, GOVERNMENTAL PREQUALIFICATION REPORTING	11.29
OVERBILLINGS, AUDITOR'S CONSIDERATION OF FRAUD	12.11
OWNERS. See customers	

P

P3. See public-private partnership	
PARTIAL CONSOLIDATION	3.20

PARTNERSHIPS	3.37–43
· Auditing considerations	11.05–07
· General partnerships	3.37–38
· Limited partnerships	3.39–43

PASS-THROUGH ENTITIES	5.64
------------------------------------	-------------

PAYMENT BONDS	1.13, 1.16
----------------------------	-------------------

PENALTY CLAUSES, RISKS OF MATERIAL MISSTATEMENT DUE TO FRAUD	12.15
---	--------------

PENSION PLAN DISCLOSURES, MULTIEMPLOYER PLANS	6.41–49
--	----------------

PERCENTAGE-OF-COMPLETION METHOD OF ACCOUNTING	
--	--

· Acceptability of auditing procedures	10.43–46
· Audit risk factors	Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24
· Auditing procedures ...	10.43–46, 10.49–51
· Fraud opportunities and evidence	12.09
· Income earned under	Appendix D
· Income recognition	10.49–51
· Loss contracts	12.09
· Offsetting or netting amounts	6.20–21
· Performance of construction-type contracts	2.04–06
· Profit recognition	10.33
· Revenue recognition	12.17–18
· Unbilled receivables	10.12
· Use of	2.04–06

PERCENTAGE OWNERSHIP DETERMINATION	3.45
---	-------------

PERFORMANCE BONDS	1.13, 1.15
--------------------------------	-------------------

PERFORMANCE MATERIALITY	9.30
--------------------------------------	-------------

PERFORMANCE OF CONSTRUCTION-TYPE CONTRACTS, ACCOUNTING FOR	2.01–31
---	----------------

· Anticipated losses on contracts	2.26, 10.41, 12.09
· Auditor's consideration of fraud	12.09
· Basic accounting policy	2.03–07
· Completed-contract method	2.07–08
· Cost elements in income determination	2.17–23
· Earned income, computation of	2.24, Appendix D, Appendix E
· Equipment, costs of	2.28–31
· Generally	2.01–02
· Income determination	2.12–23
· Percentage-of-completion method ...	2.04–06
· Profit center, determining	2.09
· Progress toward completion, measuring extent of	2.10–11, 2.27
· Revenue in income determination ...	2.12–16
· Revised estimates	2.25
· Small tools, costs of	2.30–31

PERSONAL CONTRACTOR COSTS	12.09
--	--------------

PHASES OF THE JOB, ESTIMATES AND	1.43
---	-------------

- PHYSICAL CONTROLS OVER JOB SITE MATERIALS** 8.14
- POSTPONEMENT PROVISIONS, CONSTRUCTION-TYPE CONTRACTS** 10.21–22, 10.24
- PRECONTRACT COSTS** 2.20
- PRESENT VALUE TECHNIQUES** 5.15–17, 5.55
- PRESENTATION OF INVESTMENTS** 3.20–21
- PRESSURES, AS FRAUD RISK FACTOR** 12.02, 12.05, 12.09, 12.12
- PRIMARY BENEFICIARIES, OF VARIABLE INTEREST ENTITIES** 3.26
- PRINCIPAL MARKET, DEFINED** 5.04
- PROBABLE, DEFINED** 6.36
- PRODUCTION UNITS, INCOME EARNED COMPUTATION** Appendix E
- PROFESSIONAL JUDGMENT** 9.26, 9.37, 9.66
- PROFESSIONAL SKEPTICISM** 12.03, 12.05
- PROFIT CENTER, DETERMINATION** 2.09
- PROFIT FADE** 12.09, Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24
- PROFIT MARGINS** 10.58–59, 12.11
- PROFIT RECOGNITION** 3.11–12, 3.19, 10.33
- PROGRESS BILLING** 1.26, 1.28, 1.45
- PROGRESS TOWARD COMPLETION, MEASURING EXTENT OF** 2.10–11, 2.27
- PROJECT MANAGEMENT** 1.47–48, 1.52
- PROJECT MANAGERS, DEFINED** 1.47
- PROJECT OWNERSHIP** 1.20–21
- PROPERTY, PLANT, AND EQUIPMENT—IMPAIRMENT TESTING** 5.32–37
- PROPORTIONATE CONSOLIDATION** 3.20
- PUBLIC-PRIVATE PARTNERSHIP (P3)** ... 1.34
- Q**
- QUALITATIVE ASPECTS OF MATERIALITY** 9.31–32
- QUOTED PRICES PROVIDED BY THIRD PARTIES** 5.22, 5.25
- R**
- RATIONALIZATION, AS FRAUD RISK FACTOR** 12.02, 12.05, 12.09, 12.12
- RECEIVABLES. See also accounts receivable**
- Financial statement presentation 6.29–35
 - Notes receivable, affiliated entities, financial reporting 4.10
 - Retentions payable 6.13
 - Retentions receivable 6.12, 8.17
 - Unbilled receivables 10.12
- REGULATORY CONSIDERATIONS, AUDITING** 11.26–30
- RELATED PARTIES**
- Defined 4.01
 - Examples of transactions 4.08
 - Receivables, financial statement presentation 6.34–35
 - Transactions, auditing considerations ... 11.10
- REPORTING**
- By affiliated entities 4.01–11
 - Auditor's reports 9.93, 11.17, 11.28–30, Appendix I
 - Business environment, features of ... 1.35–37
 - Financial reporting 1.35–37, 4.01–11
 - Government prequalification reporting 11.28–30
 - On supplementary information in relation to financial statements as a whole 11.18–24, Appendix J
- REPORTING UNIT, DEFINED** 5.39
- RETENTION OF DOCUMENTS** 9.92
- RETENTIONS, AUDITING PROCEDURES** 10.13–14
- RETENTIONS PAYABLE** 6.13
- RETENTIONS RECEIVABLE** 6.12, 8.17
- RETIREMENT, DEFINED** 5.51
- RETIREMENT OBLIGATIONS, FAIR VALUE** 5.50–56
- REVENUE**
- Contract 8.22–23
 - Impact of change orders on 2.13–14
 - Impact of claims on 2.15–16
 - Income determination, performance of construction-type contracts 2.12–16
- REVENUE RECOGNITION**
- Financial statement presentation 6.26
 - Improper revenue recognition as fraud risk 12.16–22, 12.37
 - Segmenting criteria Appendix C
- REVIEW OF CONTRACTS** 9.42–43
- REVISED ESTIMATES** 2.25, 6.27
- RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS, JOINT VENTURES** 1.33
- RISKS AND UNCERTAINTIES**
- Assessment procedures 9.38–39
 - Assessment process for internal controls 9.47, 9.51–52
 - Disclosures, financial statement presentation 6.38–39

RISKS AND UNCERTAINTIES—continued

- Material misstatements 9.61–83
- Significant risk 6.38–39, 9.64–67

RISKS AND UNCERTAINTIES, MATERIAL**MISSTATEMENTS 9.61–83**

- After evaluation of entity's programs and controls 12.24
- Audit team's discussion of risks 9.40, 12.04–09, 12.35
- Auditor's response to risk assessment 12.25–28, 12.36
- Evaluation of misstatements 9.84–86
- Further audit procedures 9.68–83
- Generally 9.21, 9.61–63
- Identification of risk 12.10–23
- Procedures 9.61–83
- Risk assessment after evaluation of entity's programs and controls 12.24, 12.31
- Significant risk identification 9.64–67
- Substantive procedures, design of further audit procedures 9.72–73, 9.82–83
- Tests of controls 9.74–81

ROAD BUILDING 1.42**S****SARBANES OXLEY ACT OF 2002 8.01****SCHEDULE OF CHANGES Appendix M****SCHEDULING, AS AUDIT RISK****FACTOR Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24****SCOPE OF AUDITING GUIDANCE IN THIS GUIDE 7.08****SEGMENTING CONTRACTS 10.54, Appendix C, Appendix E****SEGREGATING CONTRACTS, BILLINGS AND COST 6.22****SIGNED CONTRACTS, REVIEW OF BACKLOG INFORMATION ON 10.60–64****SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES, FINANCIAL STATEMENT PRESENTATION 6.26****SIGNIFICANT INFLUENCE, DEFINED 3.04, 4.01****SIGNIFICANT RISK 6.38–39, 9.64–67****SIZE OF OPERATIONS, VARIATIONS IN 1.51****SIZE OF PROJECT, AUDIT RISK FACTORS Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24****SMALL TOOLS, COSTS OF 2.30–31****SPECIALISTS 10.02, 10.40****STATE STATUTES AFFECTING CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTORS 11.26–27****STOCK**

- Mandatorily redeemable 5.57–59
- Voting stock 3.04

SUBCONTRACTORS

- Audit risk factors Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24
- Bids 1.43
- Confirmation request Exhibit 10-2 at 10.27
- Controls over costs 8.10
- Defined 1.04
- Invoices, auditing procedures 10.28–30
- Unit-price contracts 1.09

SUBORDINATED FINANCIAL SUPPORT, DEFINED 3.25**SUBSEQUENT EVENTS 11.24****SUBSIDIARIES 3.23, 3.24****SUBSTANTIVE PROCEDURES**

- Assessment of risks of material misstatements 9.72–73, 9.82–84
- Interim audit procedures 10.06

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION, REPORTING ON 11.18–24, Appendix J**SURETY COMPANIES 1.13****SURETY UNDERWRITING PROCESS 1.17–19****T****TAX POSITION, DEFINED 5.64****TAXES. See income taxes****TERMINATION OF GOVERNMENT CONTRACT 6.24****TESTS OF CONTROLS 9.74–81****THIRD PARTIES, QUOTED PRICES PROVIDED BY, FAIR VALUE 5.22, 5.25****THOSE CHARGED WITH GOVERNANCE, AUDITOR'S COMMUNICATIONS WITH 9.07–19, 11.25, 12.34****TIME-AND-MATERIALS CONTRACTS 1.09****TIMING OF PROJECTS, AS AUDIT RISK FACTOR Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24****TOTAL COSTS 12.11****TOTAL COSTS RECOGNITION 12.20****TRANSACTION PRICE, FAIR VALUE 5.06–07****TRANSACTIONS THAT ARE NOT ORDERLY, FAIR VALUE 5.22, 5.24****TROUBLESOME CONTRACTS 10.03–04****TYPE OF PROJECT, AS AUDIT RISK FACTORS Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24****U****UCC. See Uniform Commercial Code****UNAPPROVED CHANGE ORDERS AND CLAIMS 10.15–18****UNBILLED RECEIVABLES 10.12**

UNCERTAINTIES. See risks and uncertainties	
UNCLASSIFIED BALANCE SHEETS	6.02, 6.03
UNCOMPLETED CONTRACTS, CAPITALIZATION AND CASH FLOW	11.16
UNCORRECTED MISSTATEMENTS	9.16, 9.27, 9.85–86
UNDERBILLINGS	12.11, Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24
UNDERCAPITALIZATION	11.17
UNDERSTANDING THE ENTITY, ITS ENVIRONMENT, AND ITS INTERNAL CONTROL	9.35–60
· Audit team discussion of fraud risks	9.40
· Contract review	9.42–43
· Entity and environment	9.41–43
· Generally	9.35–37
· Internal control	9.44–60
· Risk assessment procedures	9.38–39
UNDERWRITING, SURETY UNDERWRITING PROCESS	1.17–19
UNDIVIDED INTERESTS IN VENTURES, MEASUREMENT AND PRESENTATION OF INVESTMENTS	3.44
UNIFORM COMMERCIAL CODE (UCC)	10.31
UNIT PRICE, INCOME EARNED COMPUTATION	Appendix E
UNIT-PRICE CONTRACTS	1.09
UNITS OF PRODUCTION [DP PRODUCTION UNITS], INCOME EARNED COMPUTATION	Appendix E
UNUSUAL CONTRACTS	10.03–04
UNUSUAL TRANSACTIONS, MANAGEMENT OVERRIDE OF CONTROLS	12.28
V	
VARIABLE INTEREST ENTITIES (VIE)	
· Financial reporting	4.03
· Joint ventures	3.25–36
VENTURE SALES	3.16–19
VIE. See variable interest entities	
VOLUME OF ACTIVITY, SIGNIFICANT DECREASE IN	5.22–23
VOTING STOCK	3.04
W	
WEATHER CONDITIONS, AS AUDIT RISK FACTOR	Exhibit 9-1 at 9.24
WEATHER DERIVATIVES, ACCOUNTING FOR IN FINANCIAL STATEMENT PRESENTATION	6.40
WORKING CAPITAL	1.23–24

